

*New*

**HELLO**  
Second Term

**ENGLISH**  
2022

**LANGUAGE**

**2<sup>nd</sup>** Secondary



## مذاكرتك ديجيتال

استمتع بتجربة التعلم التفاعلي مع الأضواء.

### معلم

- تابع مستوى طلابك الدراسي من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- كون مجموعة من طلابك وتواصل معهم.

### ولي أمر

- تابع مستوى أولادك الدراسي من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- تعزف أهم مستجدات العملية التعليمية.

### طالب

- اختبارات تفاعلية
- شرح الدروس
- تقارير وإحصائيات
- هدايا ومخافات
- اسأل الأضواء
- تحدى الأصدقاء

# User's Guide

عرض الكلمات المهمة والجديدة بالترجمة والترتيب الأبجدي.

**Vocabulary**

**Key Vocabulary**

discouragement (ك)    encouragement (ج)    independent (ك)    pick up (ج)    struggle (ك)

get used to (ك)    last family (ك)    activity (ك)    pick up (ج)    family (ك)

جدول بأهم التعريفات الواردة في دليل المعلم مع الترجمة.

**Focus on Vocabulary**

**determination (ك)**    **discouragement (ك)**

- the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult
- when you encourage someone or something to do things that encourage them

**encouragement (ج)**    **independent (ك)**

- a family that can host a foreigner or a stranger in their country or house
- confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way

**last family (ك)**    **pick up (ج)**

- to collect something from a place

جدول بالمترادفات والمتضادات لبعض الكلمات تماشيًا مع توجهات النظام التعليمي الجديد.

**Focus on Vocabulary**

**determination (ك)**    **discouragement (ك)**

- the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult
- when you encourage someone or something to do things that encourage them

**encouragement (ج)**    **independent (ك)**

- a family that can host a foreigner or a stranger in their country or house
- confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way

**last family (ك)**    **pick up (ج)**

- to collect something from a place

شرح الملاحظات اللغوية على الكلمات من خلال الترجمة وعمل أمثلة توضيحية عليها.

**Notes on Vocabulary**

**explains (يشرح)**    **discovers (يكشف)**

**explains (يشرح)**    **discovers (يكشف)**

- Maria Peto was the first European woman to **discover** China.
- Thomas Edison **invented** many devices in the field of electricity.
- The pharaohs were able to **discover** many metals such as iron and gold.

**drought (يشتد)**    **drought (يشتد)**

عرض لنصوص القراءة والاستماع بالصوت وترجمة الكلمات الجديدة.

**Reading Test**

**Pre-reading questions: - In your opinion, how is an orphan's life?**

**The Secret Garden**

The Secret Garden is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is three years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first. Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a **raft** had come into her room.

تمارين على الكلمات مطابقة للمواصفات الوزارية.

**Vocabulary Exercises**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) allowance    b) encouragement    c) reflection    d) divert
- The young actress was full of \_\_\_\_\_ to achieve her goals.  
a) consumption    b) conservation    c) appliance    d) determination
- Secondary school students should be trained to become more \_\_\_\_\_ of their teachers.  
a) independent    b) helpful    c) depressed    d) stressed
- Our friends will book our tickets but we have to \_\_\_\_\_ them up an hour before the show.  
a) pick    b) get    c) pick    d) grow
- At the summer camps, the children were encouraged to take part in several different \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) inventions    b) labour    c) activities    d) experiences
- My cousin's brother's constant joking was beginning to \_\_\_\_\_ all his friends.  
a) pick    b) get    c) pick    d) grow

شرح وافٍ ومتدرج للقواعد من خلال أمثلة توضيحية وخرائط ذهنية.

**Language**

**Present Continuous**

am + verb + ing	They are <b>visiting</b> the beach now.
are + verb + ing	The <b>city</b> <b>isn't looking</b> great now.
is/are + verb + ing	He <b>isn't working</b> well.
is/are + verb + ing + ing	What <b>are you doing</b> ?
is/are + being + V	Look! She <b>isn't being</b> careful.

تمارين على القواعد مطابقة للمواصفات الوزارية.

**Language Exercises**

Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

- Where's Ned? He's ... a message.
  - A) played
  - B) is playing
  - C) has played
  - D) plays
- My father ... as an engineer & he has abandoned that work.
  - A) worked
  - B) works
  - C) is working
  - D) had worked
- Mariam & Khaled ... the market. She ... a basket.
  - A) went
  - B) are going
  - C) is working
  - D) has worked
- The reading course is four months, but my students ... speak.
  - A) can
  - B) are trying
  - C) can't
  - D) has tried
- Could you tell me how to ... ?
  - A) go
  - B) work
  - C) go on
  - D) going
- They're hungry. They ... something to eat.
  - A) want
  - B) are wanting
  - C) want
  - D) were wanting

تمارين عامة مقسمة على حسب الدروس.

**General Exercises**

Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

- ... and hard work but the businessmen have priority to success and wealth.
  - A) achievement
  - B) determination
  - C) determination
  - D) determination
- Something is very old and needs very well but still.
  - A) entertainment
  - B) fitness
  - C) training
  - D) education
- The new student was disappointed ... all friends he had no friends.
  - A) friendly
  - B) lonely
  - C) friendly
  - D) lonely
- For a holiday ... you need a valid passport and a visa from the destination country.
  - A) travel
  - B) travel
  - C) abroad
  - D) abroad
- Sheep that make progress ... than their own work.
  - A) achieving
  - B) achieving
  - C) achieving
  - D) achieving
- Charlotte has a view ... the mountains ... of all other that takes the local economy.
  - A) ...
  - B) ...
  - C) ...
  - D) ...

**Advanced & Open General Exercises**

Choose the correct answer out of the three options given.

- Most of our knowledge is specific to the company we work for. The synonym of the word "specific" is ...
  - A) particular
  - B) imaginary
  - C) peculiar
  - D) general
  - E) public
- The office is a mess. He needs someone to help him organize his papers. The synonyms of the word "organize" are ...
  - A) train
  - B) support
  - C) arrange
  - D) stand
  - E) disturb
- The company's financial situation is not good, so they will apply for a bank loan.
  - A) past
  - B) present
  - C) future
  - D) present
  - E) popular
- My grandfather can't ... many activities as he is very old.
  - A) repeat
  - B) do
  - C) perform
  - D) make
  - E) perform
- Hard work makes Mohamed ... (for rest of the students).
  - A) ...
  - B) ...
  - C) ...
  - D) ...
  - E) ...
- Two of the following verbs can work as both stative and dynamic (action):
  - A) drive
  - B) read
  - C) have
  - D) love
  - E) believe

تمارين متقدمة على الكلمات والقواعد تتماشى مع النظام التعليمي الجديد.

عرض مهارات التواصل بشكل واضح وعمل أمثلة عليها.

**Life Skills**

**Critical Thinking: Showing respect for people from different cultures**

One of the best things about people is that some are different. Each person you meet is their own individual self, complete with their own thoughts, opinions, and beliefs. We're all part of a multicultural world, full of exciting and often surprising differences. With such diversity, helps when we all respect and understand other people's cultures. Here are some tips on how to do just that:

- Know your own culture in order to fully appreciate others.
- Read books by authors from other countries can expand your cultural understanding.
- Watch movies.
- Listen to radio shows and podcasts.
- Talk with individuals from different cultures.
- Travel to other countries.
- Appreciate the differences.

**Test 1**

**Based on Unit 7**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The president made a speech expressing his ... to rebuild the economy.
  - A) appearance
  - B) determination
  - C) awareness
  - D) facilitation
- Agora became fully ... from France in 1962.
  - A) dependent
  - B) noisy
  - C) independent
  - D) facilitated
- There were so many people talking that I couldn't ... on the music.
  - A) duplicate
  - B) replicate
  - C) investigate
  - D) concentrate
- The secretary put the conference date in the manager's ...
  - A) diary
  - B) book
  - C) article
  - D) title

اختبار على كل وحدة.

- عرض نص المسرحية الموجود في كتاب الطالب.  
- تمارين على كل جزء لتقييم مدى فهم الطالب للأحداث.

**Reading Text**



By Mohammed Caidi (journalist with Al Jazeera)

... (text continues) ...

# Contents

Unit 7: Living abroad.....	6
Test (1) .....	55
Unit 8: High-tech transport .....	58
Test (2) .....	111
Unit 9: Conservation .....	114
Test (3) .....	165
Revision 3: (Units 7-9).....	168
Test (Based on Revision 3) .....	175
Unit 10: The News.....	182
Test (4) .....	231
Unit 11: What a performance! .....	234
Test (5) .....	285
Unit 12: Achievements and goals .....	288
Test (6) .....	343
Revision 4: (Units 10-12).....	346
Test (Based on Revision 4) .....	357
<b>King Lear</b>	
Introduction .....	361
Act III, Scenes v-vii .....	365
Act IV, Scenes i-iii .....	374
Act IV, Scenes iv-vi .....	383
Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii .....	391
Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii .....	397
Act V, Scene iii .....	404
قاموس بمعانى الكلمات الواردة فى قطع الفهم .....	414

# جديد الأضواء



## كود الأضواء

1234567890

استمتع بتجربة **التعلم التفاعلي** مع الأضواء

حمل الآن **تطبيق الأضواء**

ابحث عن كودك الشخصي الموجود في ظهر الفلاف  
واستمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق.

# Warm up



List five countries you would like to travel to. Mention their significant **touristic sites**.



I would like to travel to .....

Countries

Significant touristic sites





# Unit 7

## Living abroad

### Objectives

- Reading : An extract from the novel *The Secret Garden* by Frances Hodgson Burnett
- Writing : A diary entry by a student who is living abroad
- Listening : Voice messages from students who are studying abroad
- Language : Present continuous; Stative verbs
- Speaking : Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad
- Life skills : Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures







## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

determination (n)	تصميم / عزيمة
encouragement (n)	تشجيع
get used to	يعتاد على
host family (n)	أسرة مضيضة

independent (adj)

pick ... up (v) (ed)

struggle (v) (d)

يستقل  
يخصر (شخصاً) من مكان

يكافح / يناضل / يعاني

### Vocabulary on Reading

activity (n)	نشاط
annoy (v) (ed)	يزعج / يضايق
bell (n)	جرس
character (n)	شخصية
course (n)	برنامج دراسي
creature (n)	مخلوق
current (adj)	حالي / جاري
die (v) (d)	يموت
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح / يفسر
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
extract (n)	مقتطف / جزء مقتبس
gardener (n)	بستاني / جنائني

lonely (adj)

maid (n)

main (adj)

publish (v) (ed)

ring (v)

secret (n) (adj)

servant (n)

specific (adj)

temporary (adj)

understandable (adj)

whistle (v) (d)

وحيد

مذيضة / خادمة

السي / الرئيسي

ينشر

ينق

سر لسري

خادم

محدد

مؤقت

يمكن فهمه

يسفر

## Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
accommodation (n)	إقامة/مكان إقامة
afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك
biology (n)	علم الأحياء
celebration (n)	احتفال
certificate (n)	شهادة
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدى/يتحدى
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
confident (adj)	واثق

confused (adj)	مرتبك
degree (n)	درجة جامعية
distract (v) (ed)	يشتت الذهن
experience (n)	تجربة/خبرة
instead of (prep)	بدلاً من
noisy (adj)	صاخب
normal (adj)	طبيعي
stressed (adj)	مضغوط

## Language & Workbook Vocabulary

blog (n)	مدونة
climber (n)	متسلق
conditions (n)	ظروف/أحوال
drought (n)	جفاف
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء
harbour (n)	ميناء


helpful (adj)	معين/مساعد
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
lamb (n)	صغير الخروف/الماعز
mountain (n)	جبل
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

# Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

do/perform activity	يقوم بنشاط	have a great time	يتمتع بوقت رائع
get distracted	يصعب مشتت الذهن	have experience	لديه خبرة
have a break	لديه راحة/فسحة	on his own	بمفرده
come across	يعر ب-/يقابل (بالصدفة)	look around	ينظر حول/يتجول
come into	يأتي/يغزل إلى	look out of	ينظر من خلال
difference between	اختلاف بين	move to	ينتقل إلى
different to/from	مختلف عن	travel across	يسافر عبر

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy	يزعج / يضايق	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying	مزعج
				annoyed	مزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
confuse	يربك	confusion	إرباك / ارتباك	confused	مرتبك
determine	يصمم	determination	تصميم	determined	مصمم / عاقد العزم
distract	يشتت الذهن	distract	تشتت الذهن	distracted	مشتت الذهن
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	شجع
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافي
		explorer	مستكشف		
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالي (مبدع)
				imaginary	خيالي (بعيد عن الواقع)
publish	ينشر	publication	منشور	published	منشور
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد / تخصيص	specific	محدد
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed	مضغوط
struggle	يكافح	struggle	كفاح / معاناة	struggling	مكافح
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty	ثقال


**Reading Text**

**Pre-reading question:** - In your opinion, how is an orphan's life like?

## The Secret Garden

The Secret Garden is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a **maid**<sup>(1)</sup> had come into her room.

"Are you my servant?" she asked.

"I'm Mrs. Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?"

Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked.

"You can be **independent**<sup>(2)</sup> and go out by yourself. My brother is always exploring on his own," said Martha. "There are some gardens, but it is winter so nothing is growing now. Oh, now Mrs. Medlock's bell is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later, Mary was in the gardens when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall. When she asked an old **gardener**<sup>(3)</sup> about the bird, he whistled and the bird flew to him.

"He was lonely and we became friends," the old man explained.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will **struggle**<sup>(4)</sup> at first, but you will **get used to**<sup>(5)</sup> the people here soon," said the gardener. Suddenly, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's decided to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.

### Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Mary is happy in her new house? Why/Why not?



(1) وصيفة/الخادمة

(2) مستقل

(3) بستني اجنابي

(4) يكافح

(5) يعتاد على



## Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mohamed Salah showed great ..... to succeed and became one of the best footballers in the world.
 

a) appearance	b) determination
c) avoidance	d) facilitation
- 2 Everyone needs ..... from people who understand what they are trying to do.
 

a) discouragement	b) persistence
c) collision	d) encouragement
- 3 I quite like living alone. It made me more .....
 

a) dependent	b) nosy
c) independent	d) facilitated
- 4 The survivors were picked ..... by fishing boats from nearby villages.
 

a) up	b) on	c) away	d) for
-------	-------	---------	--------
- 5 I didn't think I could ever ..... used to living in a big city after living in the country.
 

a) grow	b) get	c) fall	d) turn
---------	--------	---------	---------



ALADWAA

تطبيق الأضواء

ذاكر دروسك

الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال

فيديوهات شرح الدروس.



حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

www.aladwaa.com



## Listening Text

### Pre-listening question:

- What difficulties would you face if you studied abroad?

#### Narrator: 1

**Teen boy:** Hi Khaled! How are you?

I'm having a great time here in Sydney. Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be shining here!

It's so wonderful! Every day – after I've finished my lessons – I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and smell the sea air. I have a few good friends here now so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to **concentrate**<sup>(1)</sup> on my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach **afterwards**<sup>(2)</sup>!



- (1) يركز
- (2) بعد ذلك
- (3) صاخب
- (4) تجربة
- (5) مرتبك

#### Speaker: 2

**Teen girl:** Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo – everything is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the time. It's always **noisy**<sup>(3)</sup> because of the cars on the roads – day and night! But the most difficult thing about this **experience**<sup>(4)</sup> is that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so I'm always feeling **confused**<sup>(5)</sup>. I hope things will get better!

#### Speaker: 3

**Teen boy:** Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day- today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch! I came home feeling really good!

### Post-listening question:

- What is the teen girl's first impression of her stay in Japan?

Video Script

Young people all over the world study at university when they finish their studies at school. They want to find out more about a subject they enjoy, or they study a specific subject to get the job they want.

Some students study at universities near to their homes so they can live with their families. However, in some countries, like the UK and the USA, it's **normal**<sup>(1)</sup> for students to leave home and live in **accommodation**<sup>(2)</sup> that belongs to their university.

Students often choose to study only one or two subjects at university, and they spend all of their time learning about that subject or subjects. That means they can find out more about specific areas. For example, **instead of**<sup>(3)</sup> studying all of **biology**<sup>(4)</sup>, they can just study the biology of plants.

Students complete a **'degree'**<sup>(5)</sup> while studying at university and this can take three or four years. At the end of their studies, they usually have a big **celebration**<sup>(6)</sup> with their families and receive their degree **certificates**<sup>(7)</sup>.

- (1) طبيعي
- (2) إقامة مؤقتة
- (3) بدلاً من
- (4) علم الأحياء
- (5) درجة جامعية
- (6) احتفال
- (7) شهادات

0:00

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The family is staying in temporary ..... until their house is rebuilt.
  - a) concentration
  - b) intention
  - c) accommodation
  - d) position
- 2 This guarantee ضمان ..... is an important document. Keep it in a safe place.
  - a) degree
  - b) research
  - c) essay
  - d) certificate
- 3 Mariam has finished university with a ..... in engineering.
  - a) medal
  - b) degree
  - c) scale
  - d) research
- 4 I think this cold weather is ..... for the time of year as it is winter.
  - a) normal
  - b) standard
  - c) abnormal
  - d) strange
- 5 ..... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.
  - a) History
  - b) Botany
  - c) Biology
  - d) Mathematics

## Focus on Vocabulary



determination (n) تصميم/عزيمة	▶ the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult
encouragement (n) تشجيع	▶ when you encourage someone or something, or the things that encourage them
host family (n) أسرة مضيضة	▶ a family that can host a foreigner or a stranger in their country or house
independent (adj) مستقل	▶ confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way
pick ... up (v) (ed) يحضر (شخصاً) من مكان	▶ to collect something from a place
struggle (v) (d) يكافح/يناضل	▶ to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المعضاد
activity	نشاط	action/movement	laziness كسل
concentrate	يركز	focus	ignore يتجاهل
confused	مرتبك	distracted	clear minded صافي الذهن
current	حالي/اجري	contemporary/ongoing	past ماضي
determination	تصميم/عزيمة	persistence/dedication	indifference/ hesitation عدم اهتمام/تردد
distract	يشتت الذهن	confuse/disturb	calm/clarify يهدئ/يوضح
drought	الجفاف	dryness	abundance غزارة
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing	discouragement عدم تشجيع
imagine	يتخيل	fancy	disregard يستبعد



Independent	مستقل	self-reliant	dependent	معتمد
secret	سر	mystery	known	معروف
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular	common/ordinary	عادي/شائع
struggle	يكافح	toil	surrender	يستسلم
temporary	مؤقت	momentary	permanent	دائم

**Notes on Vocabulary**

**explore**

**invent**

**discover**

- explore** يستكشف شيئاً أو مكاناً/يدرس معالمة
- ▶ Marco Polo was the first European sailor to **explore** China.
- invent** يخترع شيئاً أو جهازاً لم يكن موجوداً من قبل
- ▶ Thomas Edison **invented** many devices in the field of electricity.
- discover** يكتشف شيئاً كان موجوداً ولم يعرف
- ▶ The pharaohs were able to **discover** many metals such as iron and gold.

**drought**

**draught**

- drought** جفاف
- ▶ Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the **drought**.
- draught** تيار هواء يدخل إلى غرفة
- ▶ Can you close the window? I'm in a **draught**.

**current**

- ▶ In its **current** state, the car is worth 50,000 pounds.
  - ▶ Strong **currents** can be very dangerous for swimmers.
  - ▶ Some birds use warm air **currents** to help them fly.
  - ▶ Check all your wiring before switching on the **current**.
  - ▶ There was a **current** of anger within the company.
- ١- حالي/جاري  
٢- تيارات ماء  
٣- تيارات هواء  
٤- تيار كهربى  
٥- تيار سائد (رأى أو اتجاه)

## Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

- 1 Mary opened her eyes on that first morning **because** a maid **had come** into her room.  
- لاحظ استخدام العاضى التام (had come) بعد أداة الربط (because) للتعبير عن الحدث الأقدم.
- 2 ..... when she came across a small bird **singing** in some trees behind a wall.  
- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb+ing) للتعبير عن الحال بمعنى (مفنيا).
- 3 Suddenly, the small bird **started singing**.  
- يتبع الفعل (start) صيغة (verb + ing) أو (to + infinitive)
- 4 I'm **having** a great time here in Sydney.  
- لاحظ استخدام الفعل (having) فى زمن المضارع المستمر لأنه لا يعبر هنا عن الملكية.
- 5 Every day – **after I've finished** my lessons – I **go** down to the beach.  
- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع التام (I've finished) بعد أداة الربط (after) مع زمن المضارع البسيط (go) وذلك للتعبير عن تكرار الحدثين
- 6 ..... and they **spend** all of their time **learning** about that subject or subjects.  
- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend) والمعنى يقضى الوقت فى أداء عمل ما.



### Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mr. Jones spent three hours ..... the city as this was his first visit to it.
 

a) exploring	b) inventing
c) discovering	d) devising
- 2 As I was going home, I came across a little boy ..... on the street.
 

a) sleep	b) sleeping
c) slept	d) sleeps
- 3 A severe ..... has caused most of the corn crop to fail due to lack of water.
 

a) draught	b) current
c) drought	d) flood
- 4 On surfing beaches, strong ..... are common especially during competition time.
 

a) droughts	b) floods
c) currants	d) currents

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive .....  
 a) allowance                      b) encouragement                      c) reflection                      d) detest
- 2 The young actress was full of ..... to achieve her goals.  
 a) consumption                      b) conservation                      c) appliance                      d) determination
- 3 Secondary school students should be trained to become more ..... of their teachers.  
 a) independent                      b) hateful                      c) depressed                      d) stressed
- 4 Our friends will book our tickets but we have to ..... them up an hour before the show.  
 a) pack                      b) get                      c) pick                      d) grow
- 5 At the summer camp, the children were encouraged to take part in several different .....  
 a) inventions                      b) labour                      c) activities                      d) experiences
- 6 My younger brother's constant joking was beginning to ..... all his friends, so I advised him to stop.  
 a) employ                      b) deploy                      c) apply                      d) annoy
- 7 We share the earth with all living ..... and have a duty to preserve its riches.  
 a) areas                      b) creatures                      c) regions                      d) products
- 8 The hotel's ..... financial situation is not good after the corona crisis.  
 a) current                      b) past                      c) luxurious                      d) social
- 9 The collection includes ..... from the works of several well-known authors.  
 a) shapes                      b) extracts                      c) formulas                      d) recipes
- 10 I felt very ..... when I first arrived in New York to join my new university.  
 a) patient                      b) reflected                      c) lonely                      d) aspected
- 11 The ..... was changing the sheets when we got back to our hotel room.  
 a) boss                      b) coach                      c) guard                      d) maid
- 12 Public companies have to ..... an annual report and accounts.  
 a) hide                      b) devise                      c) publish                      d) forge
- 13 The message was written in a/an ..... code that only our soldiers could read.  
 a) educated                      b) secret                      c) obvious                      d) literate
- 14 The teacher gave each group in the class a ..... topic to talk about.  
 a) specific                      b) vague                      c) search                      d) product
- 15 These pills should give you ..... relief from the pain, just until you can get to a dentist.  
 a) permanent                      b) constant                      c) temporary                      d) specific

- 28 The greatest ..... facing the new government is unemployment.  
 a) challenge                      b) change                      c) plan                      d) success
- 29 I was ..... by the sound of a car alarm in the street.  
 a) noted                      b) distracted                      c) dissented                      d) disciplined
- 30 Stop shouting loudly; all that noise makes it hard to .....  
 a) duplicate                      b) replicate                      c) investigate                      d) concentrate
- 31 Both clocks are still in good working ..... although they are old.  
 a) force                      b) form                      c) condition                      d) direction
- 32 She's ..... to bring up a family alone after the death of her husband.  
 a) struggling                      b) relaxing                      c) relieving                      d) dispensing

### Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

- 33 The job interview proved to be much worse than I had imagined. The synonym of the verb "imagine" is .....  
 a) fancy                      b) explain                      c) accept                      d) apply
- 34 While tidying the room, my mother came ..... some old photographs in a drawer.  
 a) for                      b) up                      c) across                      d) about
- 35 Changing the name of the company will only lead to .....  
 a) confuse                      b) confusion                      c) confusable                      d) confused
- 36 Mohamed is currently ..... a great time at a five-star hotel in Paris.  
 a) having                      b) winning                      c) beating                      d) changing
- 37 After his ship sank, the sailor was left ..... his own, with no help from anyone.  
 a) at                      b) on                      c) for                      d) with
- 38 Although he was injured, the boxer struggled to win the fight. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is .....  
 a) suffer                      b) surrender                      c) fight                      d) gain
- 39 Experts advise young people not to ..... distracted easily and focus on their goals.  
 a) have                      b) take                      c) grow                      d) get
- 40 The young writer wrote a/an ..... story about life on the planet Mars.  
 a) imagine                      b) imagination                      c) imagined                      d) imaginative
- 41 There's no difference ..... the two houses. They look exactly the same.  
 a) on                      b) among                      c) between                      d) inside
- 42 In the difficult health situation many countries face, people are more and more .....  
 a) stress                      b) compressed                      c) stressed                      d) pressed

Language

1 Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form: التكوين	am/ is/ are + v-ing	• They <b>are watching</b> the match now.
Negative: النفي	am not /isn't/ aren't+ v-ing.	• She <b>isn't cooking</b> dinner now.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Am/Is/Are + subj + v-ing? Wh-word+am/is/are+subj+v-ing	• <b>Is he looking</b> out? • <b>What are you doing?</b>
Passive: المجهول	am/is/are + being + P.P	• Look! Dinner <b>is being cooked</b> .

Usage  
الاستخدام

- 1 For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of an action.   
يستخدم للأحداث التي تحدث الآن لنقول إننا في منتصف الحدث.  
  - ▶ I'm **waiting** for the train. (I'm in the station now.)
  - ▶ They **are playing** football. (The match is not over yet. لم تنتهي المباراة حتى الآن.)
- 2 For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking.   
يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة في وقت الكلام.  
  - ▶ She **is working** hard these days.   
نعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هي الآن تأكل أو تقرا أو تنام.
- 3 A current situation which is different to a past situation:   
موقف حالي أو حاضر ومختلف عن موقف في العاضى.  
  - ▶ Young people **aren't reading** newspapers these days.
- 4 For fixed arrangements in the near future.   
الأحداث التي تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل.  
  - ▶ Ahmed **is leaving** for Luxor in an hour. (It's been arranged.)  
يستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.
  - ▶ Ali **is meeting** Mr. Amgad next Saturday morning.
- 5 An action that people do: again and again   
يستخدم مع كلمة **always** إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث كثيرا وأحيانا يضيق.  
  - ▶ He **is always forgetting** the car keys at home.
  - ▶ She **is always asking** a lot of questions.
  - Why **is he always playing** his guitar?

- The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:  
 - Now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look! Listen! Take care, etc.  
 ▶ He is **still** working.  
 ▶ It's raining **at the moment**.



## Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Ahmed ..... squash at the moment. He is practising for a competition.  
 a) plays                      b) is playing                      c) will play                      d) has played
- 2 I ..... my uncle next week. I've arranged it.  
 a) visiting                      b) will visit                      c) am visiting                      d) visit
- 3 We ..... dinner at seven o'clock today.  
 a) are having                      b) have                      c) have had                      d) had had
- 4 Look! those boys ..... flowers from our garden.  
 a) pick                      b) are picking  
 c) were picking                      d) picked
- 5 She hasn't cooked the meal yet. This means that she .....  
 a) still cooking                      b) has cooked  
 c) still cooks                      d) is still cooking

## 2

### State/stative verbs

### أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- تصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة للشخص وليس الشيء، الذي يفعله وهي أفعال غير حركية فمثلاً الفعل go به حركة لكن الفعل own بمعنى «يملك» ليس به حركة وهذه الأفعال لا تستخدم بعد **v. to be** ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

(1) thoughts and opinions	الأراء والاعتقادات	think, know, etc.
(2) feelings and emotions	المشاعر والعواطف	like, love, etc.
(3) Perception and senses	الإدراك والحواس	hear, see, etc.
(4) possessions and measurements	الملكية والمقاييس	belong يخص, have, etc.

الأفعال الآتية لا تأتي مع صيغة المضارع المستمر (أفعال تصف الحالة):

dislike	يكره	notice	يلاحظ	feel	يشعر بـ	contain	يحتوى على
hate	يكره	remember	يتذكر	taste	يتذوق	fit	يلئم
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	understand	يفهم	look	يبصو	include	يتضمن
prefer	يفضل	realise	يدرك	smell	يشم	own	يملك
believe	يعتقد	seem	يبصو	sound	يبصو	want	يريد
mean	يقصد	need	يحتاج	imagine	يتخيل	measure	يقيس
appear	يظهر	surprise	يدهش	miss	يفقد	join	يلتحق بـ
cost	يتكلف	weigh	يزن	wish	يرتجى	owe	يلين

- فإذا استخدمنا هذه الأفعال في المضارع نستخدم المضارع البسيط ولو كانت في الماضي نستخدم الماضي البسيط.

- ▶ I **want** to visit Paris.
- ▶ That bag **belongs** to my mother.

### Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The woman who ..... this house died 30 years ago.
  - is owning
  - was owning
  - owned
  - own
- Most people ..... in the existence of magic.
  - aren't believing
  - don't believe
  - are believing
  - believes
- People all over the world ..... Mohammed Salah well.
  - knew
  - were knowing
  - are knowing
  - know
- Does this computer ..... to Ahmed?
  - belong
  - belongs
  - belonging
  - belonged
- ..... people should work in their 70s or 80s?
  - Are you think
  - Do you think
  - Are you thinking
  - Did you thought

## Advanced points

Some verbs have both a stative and an active (dynamic) meaning:

بعض الأفعال لها كلاً من المعنى الحركي والمعنى غير الحركي وإذا استخدمت في الاستمرار يكون لها معنى مختلف:

I'm **thinking** about your plan. = I'm **considering**.

يدبر أمراً / يفكر ملياً في أمر

He's **having** dinner now. = he is **eating**

يتناول العشاء وليس يملك

She is **feeling** her way in the dark. = she is **finding** her way.

تتحسس الطريق باليد أو النظر جيداً

I'm **seeing** my lawyer tonight. = I'm **visiting/meeting**.

لزور / لتقابل

I'm **loving** this holiday. = I'm **enjoying**; specific محدد.

الاستمتاع بالإجازة في وقت معين (وسط الحدث)

She's **looking** at some old photographs. = she's **examining**.

تتفقد / تفحص / تنتظر بدقة

Ramy is **being** very kind to me these days. = he's **behaving**.

يتصرف معي هذه الأيام

Why are you **smelling** your food? = **trying the smell of**.

يحاول شم رائحة شيء

ولنفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيداً نتأمل المثال الآتي:

I'm **tasting** the soup now. It **tastes** nice.

فالحالة التي عليها الشورية هي أنها جيدة ولها مذاق جميل وهنا شيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر مني حدث وليس حالة وهو أن أقوم بالتذوق لكي أعرف حالة الشورية وهنا يكون الاستمرار.



### تطبيق الأضواء

**اجتبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية**

**من خلال خاصية محاكاة الامتحانات.**

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)





## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 A: Where's Nada? B: She ..... a tennis match.  
a) played                                      b) is playing                                      c) has played                                      d) plays
- 2 My father ..... as an engineer. It is his permanent job.  
a) works                                      b) work                                      c) is working                                      d) had worked
- 3 Mariam is busy at the moment. She ..... her hair.  
a) wash                                      b) washes                                      c) is washing                                      d) has washed
- 4 I like reading science fiction stories, but my brothers ..... sport.  
a) like                                      b) are liking                                      c) likes                                      d) has liked
- 5 Look! How fast that lorry .....  
a) go                                      b) went                                      c) goes                                      d) is going
- 6 They're hungry. They ..... something to eat.  
a) want                                      b) wants                                      c) are wanting                                      d) were wanting
- 7 The girls ..... tennis at the moment.  
a) are play                                      b) playing                                      c) are played                                      d) are playing
- 8 Stress التوتر ..... high blood pressure.  
a) cause                                      b) causes                                      c) is causing                                      d) has caused
- 9 Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. It means I ..... next Saturday.  
a) travel                                      b) will travel                                      c) am travelling                                      d) was travelling
- 10 Yasser ..... very naughty these days. I need to ask a doctor about this behaviour.  
a) is being                                      b) is                                      c) will be                                      d) was
- 11 I never buy expensive mobile phones because I'm always ..... them.  
a) lose                                      b) used to lose                                      c) losing                                      d) lost
- 12 The sky ..... grey and the wind is blowing. I think it is going to rain.  
a) is looking                                      b) looks                                      c) has looked                                      d) will look
- 13 You haven't said a word all morning. What ..... about?  
a) you think                                      b) do you think                                      c) are you thinking                                      d) you do think
- 14 You ..... computer games. You should do something more active.  
a) always played                                      b) are always play                                      c) 're always playing                                      d) always playing
- 15 If you ..... at that comic book, I'd like to see it.  
a) don't look                                      b) aren't looking                                      c) looks                                      d) doesn't look
- 16 A: What does this word here .....?  
B: I don't know. You can ask our teacher.  
a) means                                      b) is meaning                                      c) meant                                      d) mean



## General Exercises (Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 ..... and hard work led the businessman from poverty to success and wealth.  
a) Affectation      b) Determination      c) Deterioration      d) Condensation
- 2 Grandma is very old and needs help with her daily .....  
a) entertainment      b) labour      c) trainings      d) activities
- 3 The new student was desperately ..... at school as he had no friends.  
a) friendly      b) lonely      c) fatherly      d) lovely
- 4 For a holiday ..... you need a valid passport and a visa from the destination embassy.  
a) broad      b) board      c) abroad      d) aboard
- 5 Stop that noise, please. You're ..... me from my work.  
a) distracting      b) dispensing      c) respecting      d) distressing
- 6 Damietta has a new fine modern ..... for all ships that helps the local economy.  
a) warehouse      b) harbour      c) store      d) complex
- 7 The charity depends on unemployed ..... who give much time and effort.  
a) facilitators      b) spectators      c) engineers      d) volunteers
- 8 My friends and family have all ..... me through my sports career; they are really helpful.  
a) endangered      b) threatened      c) supported      d) ignored
- 9 Large areas of Africa are affected by severe ..... and people suffer from starvation.  
a) drought      b) draught      c) current      d) currant
- 10 Doctors are ..... that the patient will make a full recovery after the operation.  
a) secret      b) confident      c) applied      d) replied
- 11 My sister is taking a/an ..... in Art and Interior Design.  
a) coarse      b) exercise      c) course      d) experience
- 12 "Star War" is a series of movies about wars with ..... from outer space.  
a) officers      b) clerks      c) experiments      d) creatures
- 13 Students who do studies in England sometimes live with ..... families who help them for free.  
a) guest      b) host      c) strange      d) helpless

- 14 Murdering John Kennedy is one of the 20<sup>th</sup> century secrets. The synonym of the noun "secret" is .....
- a) mystery                      b) race                      c) aspect                      d) change
- 15 One of the best educational aids is designing activities for students to .....
- a) design                      b) make                      c) do                      d) devise
- 16 My sister enjoys working with children. At the moment, she ..... to be a primary school teacher.
- a) is training                      b) trains                      c) trained                      d) has trained
- 17 ..... the capital city of Spain?
- a) Are you know                      b) Do you know  
c) Are you knowing                      d) Do you knowing
- 18 The university ..... for a qualified doctor at the moment.
- a) is advertising                      b) advertised  
c) advertises                      d) advertise
- 19 I am having a great time in Japan these days, but I ..... my friends, especially you.
- a) missing                      b) misses                      c) am missing                      d) miss
- 20 I'm angry because you ..... the door open.
- a) always left                      b) are always leaving  
c) leaving                      d) are left
- 21 Leila ..... that she was better at maths.
- a) is being wished                      b) is wishing  
c) wishes                      d) is wished
- 22 'Hurry up! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I .....
- a) am come                      b) come  
c) coming                      d) am coming
- 23 ..... people should work in their 70s or 80s?
- a) Do you think                      b) You are thinking  
c) Do you thinking                      d) Are you thinking
- 24 The famous footballer is coming to visit our village, and I ..... he's very rich.
- a) hearing                      b) hear                      c) hears                      d) will hear
- 25 They are visiting the zoo on Saturday. This means that they .....
- a) are in the zoo now                      b) haven't decided yet  
c) have arranged everything                      d) are still thinking of going there

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

host - abroad - culture - lonely - for - customs

Studying abroad may be one of the best experiences for a college student. By studying .....(1)....., students have the opportunity to study in a foreign nation and explore the .....(2)..... of a new country. Many students who choose to study abroad are leaving their home .....(3)..... the first time. When they arrive in their new .....(4)..... country, they are fascinated by the distinct cultural perspectives. When you study abroad you will find incredible new foods .....(5)....., traditions, and social atmospheres. However, being in a foreign country on your own can make the student feel .....(6)..... and have psychological problems.

3 Choose the correct answer:

My friends and I **discuss/are discussing** how to spend the next weekend. Some of us **think/are thinking** of visiting some historic places. Others **are wanting/want** to go to the countryside and **having/have** a nice time there. We haven't decided yet, but we **hope/are hoping** to have a good weekend. It **seems/is seeming** to be a difficult decision to choose a good place for our holiday.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants are important to us. All the food that we eat comes either directly or indirectly from plants. However, the question is, what do plants eat? Well, they do not actually eat the way we do but they make their own food. The process by which this takes place is called photosynthesis.

Plants make food in their leaves. The leaves contain a pigment called chlorophyll which gives the leaves their green color. Besides chlorophyll, plants also need the light from the sun to help in its food production. Besides the sun, plants can also make food with the use of other light sources such as a light bulb. For photosynthesis to take place, plants also need carbon dioxide that is found in the air. Animals and people help in **providing** carbon dioxide for the plants to make food when they breathe out.

Lastly, but just as important, plants make use of their roots to absorb the nutrients found in the soil to help them make food. When all these different things are present, plants can then make food. In the process of making food, plants release oxygen, which is beneficial to animals and people. Plants, animals and people are dependent on one another to survive, plants provide oxygen for animals and people to breathe and animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to make food.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Where does photosynthesis take place?
  - a) In the plant's leaves.
  - b) In the plant's trunk.
  - c) In the plant's roots.
  - d) In the plant's fruit.
- 2 What does the pigment in the tree do?
  - a) It gives chlorophyll.
  - b) It gives the leaves their colour.
  - c) It gives the tree its food.
  - d) It gives us oxygen.
- 3 Animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to ..... .
  - a) kill them
  - b) absorb nutrients found in the soil
  - c) colour the leaves
  - d) help them make their food
- 4 The antonym of the word "providing" is ..... .
  - a) offering
  - b) delivering
  - c) withdrawing
  - d) making available

### B) Answer the following questions:

- 5 What do plants need for photosynthesis to take place?
- 6 How do plants, animals and people help each other?
- 7 Plants give people two things which are important for our survival. Mention them.
- 8 Mention two functions of the root system. One from the passage and you can think of the other.

### 5 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The world celebrated the new vaccines for COVID-19 as much as they celebrated the New Year. It spread hope for winning the fight against this pandemic.
2. It is the right of poor countries to have their share of the corona vaccines. That's why rich countries are funding a programme for this noble mission.
3. Travelling abroad has many benefits for young people. It can help them experience a different lifestyle, modern methods of education and explore the world.
4. Learning critical thinking skills helps young people to face the challenges of modern age. It also helps them not to fall prey to misleading groups.
5. We all owe much to scientists who are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.
6. Science plays a vital role in our life. The development of medical science has added much to people's comfort and health. No one can imagine the future prospects of it.

## B) Translate into English:

- ١- يلجأ بعض الشباب لتعريض حياتهم للخطر بالهجرة غير الشرعية للوصول إلى أحد الدول الأوروبية و البحث عن حياة أفضل لكن البعض منهم يفقدون حياتهم قبل الوصول لهدفهم.
- ٢- للإعلانات أثر كبير في الكثير من قرارات الشراء لدى معظم الناس لذا ينفق المنتجون ملايين الجنيهات عليها لكسب المزيد من المال.
- ٣- لا يجب أن يصبح المال هدف الإنسان الوحيد في الحياة فالكثير من الأشياء الجميلة لا يمكن شراؤها بالمال مثل الحب والسعادة.
- ٤- يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادي الرياضية التي تسهم في توجيههم لما يفيدهم وتحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

benefits	فوائد	medical	طبي
critical thinking	التفكير النقدي	misleading	تضليل/امضلة
directing	توجيه	pandemic	جائحة
extremism	التطرف	prey	فريسة
face	يواجه	prospects	تطلعات
fatal	قاتل/مهلك	terrorism	الإرهاب
funding	تمويل	vaccines	لقاحات
Illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية		

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness."

 Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading

accent (n)	لهجة
conversation (n)	محادثة
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
diary (n)	يوميات
entry (n)	مدخل/تدوين
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب
local (adj)	محلي

Londoners (n)	اهل (ساكنوا) لندن
meal (n)	وجبة
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
phrase (n)	عبارة
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
text message (n)	رسالة نصية

## Vocabulary on Listening

celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل
culture (n)	ثقافة
Greek (adj) (n)	يوناني/لغة يونانية
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
include (v) (d)	يشمل
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر

presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
price (n)	سعر
share (v) (d)	يشارك
skill (n)	مهارة
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/ يظن
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ



## Workbook Vocabulary


amazing (adj)	منهل	passport (n)	جواز سفر
especially (adv)	بخاصة	price (n)	سعر
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	storm (n)	عاصفة
miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد	voice mail (n)	بريد صوتي
Parthenon (n)	بارثينون (معبد إغريقي في أثينا)	weather (n)	الطقس

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

all in all	علي العموم	keep in touch by	يكون على اتصال بـ
find it hard to	يجد من الصعوبة أن	make sure	يتأكد
from the beginning	من البداية	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
get better at	يتحسن في	Until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)
famous for	مشهور بـ	similar to	مشابه لـ
learn about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	stay with	يقيم مع

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش/ينهل	amazement	دهشة/نهول	amazing	مدهش/منهل
		culture	ثقافة	cultural	ثقافي
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة/تنظيم	organised	منظم
present	يقدم	presentation	عرض	presentational	تقديمي
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	مختصر


**Reading Text (1)**
**Pre-reading question:**

- How would you feel if you are studying abroad away from your family?


 28<sup>th</sup> November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been easy. When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their **accents**<sup>(1)</sup> now. I enjoy listening to



- (1) لهجات
- (2) أهل لندن
- (3) رسالة نصية
- (4) ينظم

**Londoners**<sup>(2)</sup> and trying to have conversations with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing?

Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family that I'm staying with are really nice. They really look after me! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

All in all, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss my family, but we keep in touch by text **message**<sup>(3)</sup>. I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to **organise**<sup>(4)</sup> a lot of things on my own and make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

**Heba**

**Post-reading question:**

- In your opinion, does Heba enjoy her stay in London? Why/Why not?

Dalida's Diary**Monday****Dear diary**

I'm very excited. My parents have bought our tickets to Greece, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in Athens. I'm going with Adam. He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

**Tuesday**

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always forgetting things and nearly left his passport behind! But we arrived at the airport on time. I believe the flight was longer than usual because there was a storm, but all in all the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

**Wednesday**

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the Parthenon! I think it is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Judy loves Athens now and showed us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to write more now. Until tomorrow.

**Check Point 1**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 After 9 years in London, Jack lost his French ..... and you can say he is a Londoner.
 

a) nationality	b) degree	c) accent	d) note
----------------	-----------	-----------	---------
- 2 My mother makes the most ..... and delicious cakes you can ever taste.
 

a) terrible	b) amazing	c) amazed	d) awful
-------------	------------	-----------	----------
- 3 Modern computers can ..... large amounts of data very quickly.
 

a) organise	b) dispatch	c) snatch	d) recognise
-------------	-------------	-----------	--------------
- 4 No one is allowed to read my ..... It's very personal.
 

a) diary	b) book	c) article	d) title
----------	---------	------------	----------
- 5 I tried to make a ..... with the three people around the table as I knew no one at the party.
 

a) debate	b) connection	c) question	d) conversation
-----------	---------------	-------------	-----------------



## Listening Text (1)

### Pre-listening question:

- What good things would you enjoy if you worked abroad?

**Teen girl:** Hello everyone. In this presentation, I'm going to talk about the pros and cons of working abroad.

When you first think about working abroad it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's culture.

**Imagine<sup>(1)</sup>** trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture **celebrate<sup>(2)</sup>**.

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be. Finally, I think a further argument for working abroad is that you can learn useful **skills<sup>(3)</sup>**, especially language skills and probably also **communication<sup>(4)</sup>** skills. These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and miss your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

**Unfortunately<sup>(5)</sup>**, it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

- (1) يتخيل
- (2) يحتفل
- (3) مهارات
- (4) اتصال/تواصل
- (5) لسوء الحظ

### Post-listening question:

- According to the girl, what is the serious advantage of working abroad?

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

**Judy:** Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm helping here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun **sharing**<sup>(1)</sup> a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I **suppose**<sup>(2)</sup> I'm becoming more independent though.

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing **Greek**<sup>(3)</sup> music, and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the **prices**<sup>(4)</sup> of things in the shops!

I'm trying to learn Greek but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English!

So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss my friends, especially you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

- (1) يشارك
- (2) يفترض/يظن
- (3) يوناني
- (4) أسعار

 **Check Point 2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My elder brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to .....  
 a) recuperate      b) calibrate      c) reward      d) celebrate
- 2 The report about the new project ..... that the cost is higher than expected.  
 a) remembers      b) mentions      c) improves      d) reforms
- 3 I ..... that we'll do some sightseeing while we're here in Luxor.  
 a) refuse      b) reject      c) suppose      d) recognise
- 4 During the sale on Black Friday only, all the carpets in the shop were sold at half .....  
 a) price      b) size      c) weight      d) place
- 5 Television, the internet and other forms of mass ..... have made the world a global village.  
 a) connection      b) collection      c) communication      d) affection

## Focus on Vocabulary



accent	لهجة	▶ the way someone pronounces the words of a language
culture	ثقافة	▶ the beliefs, way of life, art, and customs that are shared and accepted by people in a particular society
diary	يوميات	▶ a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day
entry	تدوين	▶ a piece of writing in a diary, or in a book containing information such as a dictionary
phrase	عبارة	▶ a group of words that have a particular meaning when used together

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
amazing (adj)	منهل	astounding/awesome	ordinary/insignificant عادي/عديم الأهمية
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	declare/name	conceal/ignore يخفي/يتجاهل
organise (v) (d)	ينظم	arrange/regulate	ruin/disturb يهدم/يزعج
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص	sum up	enlarge/expand يوسع

## Notes on Vocabulary



### diary

### dairy

diary

يوميات / مذكرات

▶ Mary kept a **diary** while she was travelling in Europe.

البن / منتجات الألبان

dairy

▶ You'll find yogurt in the **dairy** section of the grocery store.

flight

flight

▶ The air hostess of the plane helped me to enjoy my **flight** to London.

voyage

▶ The explorer's **voyage** on the ocean was amazing.

trip

▶ My father went on a business **trip** to China to buy new machines.

journey

▶ Although the train **journey** to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.

picnic

▶ City people usually enjoy **picnics** to the countryside.

رحلة جوية

رحلة بحرية

(رحلة قصيرة) لغرض معين

رحلة طويلة (غالبا برية)

نزهة

conversation

discussion

chat

**conversation:** an informal talk in which people exchange news, feelings, and thoughts.

▶ The servant overheard our **conversation** about the children.

**discussion:** a conversation about something important.

▶ The two companies have been having **discussions** about a possible takeover.

**chat:** an informal friendly conversation.

▶ I've just had a **chat** with my friend on the phone.

محادثة

مناقشة

دردشة

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

1 Everyone I've met **has** been very kind to me, .....

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة المفرد (**has**) مع (**everyone**) لكن إذا استخدمنا ضميرًا يكون ضمير جمع.

2 The host **family** that I'm staying with **are** really nice.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل في صيغة الجمع (**are**) مع (**family**) لأن المقصود أفراد العائلة، لكننا نستخدم الفعل في صيغة المفرد.

In the war, every **family** **has** its own story to tell.

إذا قصدنا العائلة ككل.

3 ..... but I'm **too tired to write** more now

- تستخدم (**too ..... to**) بمعنى جدًا لدرجة أن لا ويتبعها فعل في صيغة المصدر.

4 I've just been **really busy** in my new job ..... and most of the food tastes **really good!**

- لاحظ استخدام (**really**) قبل الصفات للتأكيد عليها بمعنى (جدًا).

## Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The plane was badly damaged during the ..... from Japan to America.  
a) voyage  
b) flight  
c) picnic  
d) expedition
- 2 There was a long ..... between my father and my mother about where the money was going to come from.  
a) conversation  
b) discussion  
c) chat  
d) research
- 3 My elder sister wastes a lot of time in her Facebook ..... with her friends.  
a) conversations  
b) discussions  
c) chats  
d) researches
- 4 The ship reached the shore after a long and dangerous .....  
a) voyage  
b) flight  
c) picnic  
d) expedition
- 5 My cousin writes her thoughts down in her personal ..... every night.  
a) essay  
b) article  
c) dairy  
d) diary



تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟  
الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة أسأل الأضواء  
وسيتم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
www.aladwaa.com





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The new coach of the team speaks English with a French ..... as he is from Switzerland.  
 a) accent                      b) language                      c) note                      d) sign
- 2 The last ..... she made in her diary was on October 10<sup>th</sup>.  
 a) enter                      b) entry                      c) place                      d) trip
- 3 My uncle's factory produces clothing, shoes and other leather goods for ..... and overseas markets.  
 a) cattle                      b) awful                      c) local                      d) prey
- 4 Students need to learn how to ..... their work well to get the best results.  
 a) puzzle                      b) perplex                      c) waste                      d) organise
- 5 My friend sent me a text ..... saying that she'll be late.  
 a) massage                      b) passage                      c) message                      d) messenger
- 6 The writer ..... the essay's main arguments in the final paragraph.  
 a) damaged                      b) summarised                      c) cut                      d) puzzled
- 7 Children should be taught to respect different ..... in order to be tolerant.  
 a) cultures                      b) economies                      c) fights                      d) disputes
- 8 A security officer's duties ..... greeting visitors and directing them to the appropriate department.  
 a) consist                      b) contain                      c) include                      d) enclose
- 9 In her speech, the young actress ..... the help of her parents, husband, and fellow actors.  
 a) reminded                      b) mentioned                      c) recommended                      d) expected
- 10 Twenty people were killed when a violent ..... struck the American Coast.  
 a) air                      b) drought                      c) breeze                      d) storm
- 11 There are only three ..... a day to New York Airport from Cairo.  
 a) flights                      b) voyages                      c) picnics                      d) fights
- 12 Many games were cancelled because of last week's bad .....  
 a) climate                      b) weather                      c) atmosphere                      d) warming

- 9 Experts say that it isn't healthy to eat between .....  
 a) mails                      b) posts                      c) cons                      d) meals
- 10 Hackers may call a company employee and reach their voice .....  
 a) mail                      b) note                      c) passage                      d) device
- 11 The conference will begin with a ..... by a leading industry company manager to show the new trends.  
 a) decision                      b) revolution                      c) presentation                      d) deviation

### Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

- 12 We suffered much at the company last year, but all ..... all it had been a success.  
 a) at                      b) in                      c) for                      d) off
- 13 My little brother ..... It hard to learn swimming although he has been training for two weeks.  
 a) finds                      b) takes                      c) gets                      d) devices
- 14 I like my colleague at the office because his ideas are quite similar ..... mine.  
 a) in                      b) of                      c) in                      d) to
- 15 France is famous ..... the Eiffel Tower and the French food.  
 a) about                      b) of                      c) for                      d) at
- 16 In the end I had to take the difficult ..... to retire early because of my health problems.  
 a) decide                      b) decided                      c) decision                      d) decisive
- 17 To live in peace, people must accept each others' ..... differences.  
 a) culture                      b) cultural                      c) manual                      d) skillful
- 18 The visit to Aswan was really amazing as I liked it much. The antonym of the adjective "amazing" is .....  
 a) ordinary                      b) fantastic                      c) puzzled                      d) accepted
- 19 The school organised the students' seats according to health measures. The synonym of the verb "organise" is .....  
 a) explain                      b) waste                      c) damage                      d) arrange
- 20 After two months at the course, my friend is ..... better at English.  
 a) having                      b) getting                      c) giving                      d) taking
- 21 At the music festival you can have fun and learn ..... music at the same time.  
 a) at                      b) out                      c) about                      d) at



1

## Present Continuous and Present simple

الموصول للفهم الحقيقي لأزمة المضارع يجب التفرقة بين زمنى المضارع البسيط و المضارع المستمر لأن الأفعال غير الحركية لا تاتى فى المضارع المستمر وتاتى فى المضارع البسيط.

Present continuous	Present simple
<p><b>Now</b> الآن</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ It's <b>raining</b> at the moment.</li> <li>▶ I'm <b>watching</b> this programme.</li> <li>▶ Look! This man <b>is taking</b> a photo of you.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Always</b> دائما</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ It <b>always rains</b> in winter.</li> <li>▶ I <b>watch</b> television most weekends.</li> <li>▶ He <b>takes</b> lots of photos. He's a photographer.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Temporary</b> مؤقت</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ I'm <b>working</b> at a sports shop for six weeks.</li> <li>▶ They <b>are living</b> in a small flat these days.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Permanent</b> دائم</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ I <b>work</b> at a sports shop. It's permanent.</li> <li>▶ They <b>live</b> in a very nice flat.</li> </ul>

2

## Stative verbs

1. Most stative verbs are not usually used in the present continuous even when they describe a situation that is happening now:

لا تُستخدم معظم أفعال الحالة عادة فى المضارع المستمر حتى عندما تصف مؤقتًا يحدث الآن:

- ▶ He **wants** fish for dinner.
- ▶ He **needs** to buy a large flat.

ويمكن تقسيم الأفعال حسب نوعها كالآتى:

Perception and senses الإبراك والإحساس	feel	يشعر بـ	see	يرى	observe	يلاحظ
	hear	يسمع	smell	يشم	perceive	يدرك
	notice	يلاحظ	taste	يتذوق		
Emotion العواطف	like	يحب	admire	يعجب بـ	detest	بغمت
	love	يحب	adore	يعشق	envy	يحسد
	hate	يكره	appreciate	يقدر	fear	يظن
	dislike	يكره	care	يهتم	trust	يثق فى
	regret	يندم	respect	يحترم	pity	يشفق

<b>Mental states</b> الحالات العقلية	agree	يوافق	expect	يتوقع	suppose	يفترض
	disagree	يعترض	guess	يخمن	suspect	يشك
	believe	يعتقد	hesitate	يتردد	think	يعتقد
	disbelieve	لا يصدق	imagine	يتخيل	understand	يفهم
	know	يعرف	mean	يعنى	wonder	يتساءل
	mind	يعانع	presume	يفترض	see	يرى
	find	يجد	realise	يدرك	doubt	يشك
	consider	يعتبر	recognise	يتعرف على	forget	ينسى
	estimate	يخمن/يقدر	remember	يتذكر		
<b>Appearance and value</b> المظهر والقيمة	appear	يظهر	resemble	يشبه	represent	يرمز
	be	يكون	seem	يبدو	look	يبدو
	cost	يكلف	signify	يشير/يفيد	matter	يهم/يؤثر
	equal	يساوى	sound	يبدو	weigh	يزن
	exist	يوجد				
<b>Possessions</b> الملكية	belong	يخص	have	يملك	possess	يملك
	contain	يحتوى على	own	يملك	include	يتضمن
	lack	ينقص				
<b>Wants and preferences</b> التفضيل والإرادة	hope	يأمل	prefer	يفضل	wish	يتمنى
	need	يحتاج	want	يريد	desire	يرغب

2. Some verbs of feeling can be used in both the simple and continuous with no change in meaning:

٢- يمكن استخدام بعض أفعال المشاعر في البسيط والمستمر دون تغيير في المعنى:

▶ My back **hurts/is hurting** again. I must go to the doctor.

▶ Do you feel/**Are you feeling** Ok. Today?

3. With verbs which describe a sense, we use the simple form or can/could + verb.

٣- مع الأفعال التي تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط أو can/could + inf.

▶ I **can smell** the fertiliser. Are we in the countryside now?

▶ I **can hear** someone screaming outside. What is happening?

## Check Point 4

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1 We always eat out because we ..... cooking.  
a) hating  
b) hate  
c) are hating  
d) don't hate
  - 2 I'll be with you in a minute. I ..... something in the living room.  
a) am just finishing  
b) finished  
c) had finished  
d) can finish
  - 3 Sohila is very clever. She ..... seven different languages.  
a) is speaking  
b) was speaking  
c) speaks  
d) has spoken
  - 4 I never have anything to write with because I'm always ..... my pens.  
a) lost  
b) loses  
c) lose  
d) losing
  - 5 This milk ..... fresh enough. I think I will throw it out.  
a) isn't smelling  
b) doesn't smell  
c) smells  
d) can't smell



## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I bought my new camera last week. I ..... a photo of you now.  
a) take                      b) took                      c) 'm taking                      d) had taken
- 2 I ..... it's too late to apply for that job now.  
a) supposes                      b) supposing                      c) am supposing                      d) suppose
- 3 Why don't you wait for Ali in the living room? He ..... a shower.  
a) had had                      b) is having                      c) have                      d) has
- 4 He can't make a sound decision as he ..... of many things.  
a) is thinking                      b) thinks                      c) was thinking                      d) thought
- 5 ..... of any good restaurants in the area?  
a) Are you knowing                      b) Do you know                      c) Are you know                      d) Do you knowing
- 6 You aren't careful; you ..... the same mistake again.  
a) are always making                      b) makes                      c) made                      d) making
- 7 I ..... to know more about the job before I decide whether to apply for it.  
a) am needing                      b) needing                      c) need                      d) needs
- 8 A: Have you found a house yet?  
B: No, I ..... with my aunt at the moment.  
a) will stay                      b) stayed                      c) stay                      d) 'm staying
- 9 More and more people ..... their rubbish nowadays.  
a) are recycling                      b) recycle                      c) recycled                      d) had recycled
- 10 I ..... him to be extremely fortunate. This is my view.  
a) am considering                      b) consider                      c) considering                      d) was considering
- 11 ..... on the phone? No, he is doing his homework right now.  
a) Does Ramy talk                      b) Has Ramy talked  
c) Is Ramy talking                      d) Can Ramy talk
- 12 I need my CD player if you ..... it at the moment.  
a) don't using                      b) use                      c) don't use                      d) aren't using
- 13 I know Hala's flat, but I ..... her phone number.  
a) don't remember                      b) remember  
c) am not remembering                      d) remembering
- 14 Hoda's little sister ..... very helpful today. That's nice!  
a) is                      b) is been                      c) is being                      d) was been
- 15 Look! The girls are running to catch the bus. They ..... in a hurry  
a) seemed                      b) seem                      c) are seeming                      d) are seemed

- 16 My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ fond of eating fast foods.  
 a) always is being      b) is always being      c) always is      d) is always
- 17 My father \_\_\_\_\_ hard these days as he needs money for our school fares.  
 a) worked      b) had worked      c) is working      d) works
- 18 The water \_\_\_\_\_; can you turn the gas off?  
 a) boils      b) is always boiling      c) boil      d) is boiling
- 19 She can't do her shopping at the moment because it \_\_\_\_\_ heavily.  
 a) is raining      b) rains      c) will rain      d) raining
- 20 Don't phone him now as he \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
 a) is having      b) has had      c) has      d) was having
- 21 Asmaa \_\_\_\_\_ very happy at the moment.  
 a) isn't seeming      b) is seeming      c) seemed      d) doesn't seem
- 22 He \_\_\_\_\_ his glasses so he can't watch the match on TV now.  
 a) can't wear      b) isn't wearing      c) doesn't wear      d) is wearing
- 23 I \_\_\_\_\_ of going to London and visiting my old friends there.  
 a) am thinking      b) think      c) am thought      d) thinks
- 24 Mona is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She \_\_\_\_\_ a really good time.  
 a) will have      b) had      c) is having      d) has
- 25 I know that our team are practising hard these days. They \_\_\_\_\_ to win the cup.  
 a) want      b) are wanting      c) wanting      d) wanted
- 26 A: I am thinking of visiting Hazem this afternoon.  
 B: Don't bother. I \_\_\_\_\_ he's on a business trip.  
 a) am thinking      b) thinking      c) thought      d) think
- 27 Which question is the best?  
 a) Is he waiting for the bus on the corner every day?  
 b) Does he usually brush his teeth after breakfast?  
 c) Is he often going to the park on Sunday?  
 d) Is he having a beautiful house by the Nile?
- 28 A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ the sauce? Does it need more pepper?  
 B: No. It \_\_\_\_\_ great the way it is.  
 a) do you taste/taste      b) do you taste/is tasting  
 c) are you tasting/tastes      d) are you tasting/is tasting
- 29 Can you go downtown with me right now?  
 a) No, I eat lunch.      b) No, I take care of my son.  
 c) No, I'm waiting for a phone call.      d) No, I'm understanding my lessons.
- 30 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?  
 a) I think it costs two hundred dollars.  
 b) I am thinking you are a nice person.  
 c) I don't think it's very expensive. It is only costing twenty dollars.  
 d) This coat is seeming really expensive.



Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad  
All over the world, people are making the decision to move to another country in terms of better opportunities for themselves and their families. There are some of the benefits and drawbacks of spending time working abroad.

### Pros:

### Cons:

#### Opportunities for Personal Growth

exposing to a new culture, new customs, and even a new language is extremely rewarding and can enrich your life in ways that can't always be quantified or anticipated.

#### Culture Shock

adaptation and change you need to fit into a new culture can be challenging, especially when it makes you feel isolated, insecure, or confused. Culture shock can also lead to depression or even antipathy to the host culture.

#### Financial Rewards

If you've been recruited to work in another country, chances are it's because the company really wants you. They may offer you financial incentives, bonuses, or paid moving and housing expenses to get you there.

#### Taxes may be higher

Some countries like USA and Canada make their citizens pay a considerable amount of money and this may be a heavy burden.

#### You Can Leave Your Old Life Behind

If you're looking for a fresh start, there's no better way to leave everything behind than to move to another country where nobody knows who you are and they have no expectations about how you should look, act, or behave.

#### You Have to Leave Everything Behind

if you have strong connections with family and friends, being thousands of miles away can be a major challenge. Not seeing family and friends regularly can be a big problem, especially if you find yourself homesick in your new country.

- References: [escapeartist.com/blog/pros-cons-working-abroad/](http://escapeartist.com/blog/pros-cons-working-abroad/)  
<https://www.unifrog.org/know-how/how-to-show-respect-towards-people-from-other-cultures>

## Practice

### Complete the following dialogue:

**Doha and Mary are talking about the pros and cons of working abroad.**

**Doha** : Hello! Mary. Are you interested in working outside Egypt?

**Mary** : Hello! Doha. Not exactly, but in the future, I hope so.

**Doha** : (1).....?

**Mary** : I think I would travel to a European country.

**Doha** : In your opinion, what is the main advantage of working in a European country?

**Mary** : (2)..... .

**Doha** : (3).....?

**Mary** : At present, I don't have plans, but after graduation I will put it into consideration.

**Doha** : I wish you a bright future.

**Mary** : Thank you.



## Life Skills

**Critical thinking: Showing respect for people from different cultures**

One of the best things about people is that we're all different. Each person you meet is their own individual self, complete with their own thoughts, opinions, and beliefs. We're all part of a multicultural world, full of exciting and often surprising differences. With such diversity, helps when we all respect and understand other people's cultures. Here are some tips on how to do just that.

- Know your own culture in order to fully appreciate others'.
- Read books by authors from other countries can expand your cultural understanding.
- Watch movies.
- Listen to radio shows and podcasts.
- Talk with individuals from different cultures.
- Travel to other countries.
- Appreciate the differences.



## Writing

**A diary entry** مقال الرأي

Imagine that you are going to visit or have just visited a place for the first time.

Write a diary entry for three days as follows:

- ▶ Write about the day before you go to the place.
- ▶ Describe the day you arrive at the place.
- ▶ Write about the next day.

**Thursday**

I'm very excited to start our holiday in France. My father has just bought the ticket to Paris. I have already packed my bag before that. I'm travelling with my parents and my brother. This is my first trip abroad and I have been looking for this trip for a long time.

**Friday**

We arrived in Paris late at night. The hotel where we are staying is very nice. Although it isn't a five-star hotel, the rooms are nice and the staffs are all friendly. Tomorrow we are starting our tour. We are going to the Eiffel Tower. I can't wait.

**Saturday**

We visited the Eiffel Tower this morning. We climbed the Tower and enjoyed the view of Paris from the top. Isn't that amazing! The lunch we had at the restaurant at the tower was marvellous. We took a lot of photos there. Until Tomorrow.

## General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 On the 6<sup>th</sup> of October, ..... to the Military Museum is free celebrating the Victory Day.  
a) enter                      b) entry                      c) exit                      d) existence
- 2 Our group has ..... two school trips in the mid-year holiday.  
a) spent                      b) called                      c) accepted                      d) organised
- 3 My grandfather's old house was damaged a lot as it was hit by a terrible ..... on the Mediterranean Coast.  
a) storm                      b) breeze                      c) air                      d) drought
- 4 The ..... recorder should help to establish why the plane suddenly crashed.  
a) voyage                      b) manual                      c) flight                      d) picnic
- 5 It is advisable to check the ..... before you make your plans for the weekend.  
a) climate                      b) change                      c) heat                      d) weather
- 6 I hung up the phone as I saw no point in continuing the ..... with the customer service clerk.  
a) intention                      b) acceptance                      c) conversation                      d) intonation
- 7 The report about the new system ..... a number of recommendations to make it better.  
a) consists                      b) includes                      c) researches                      d) encloses
- 8 In our ....., it is not proper to ask anyone how much they earn.  
a) culture                      b) adventure                      c) capture                      d) texture
- 9 My neighbour seems very proud of his son as he ..... his name in all his talks.  
a) reminds                      b) mentions                      c) calls                      d) teaches
- 10 I asked the teacher to ..... the most important points in the grammar lesson.  
a) nationalise                      b) provide                      c) summarise                      d) realise
- 11 The weather wasn't very good during our trip, but all ..... all we enjoyed it.  
a) at                      b) for                      c) about                      d) in
- 12 A meeting was held to discuss the pros and ..... of the new security safety in the company.  
a) coins                      b) cons                      c) callers                      d) recipes
- 13 Ramy ..... his music very loud. I can't sleep.  
a) plays                      b) played                      c) has played                      d) is playing
- 14 A: Why is Hamdy being so rude today?  
B: I have no idea. He ..... usually very polite.  
a) was                      b) is being                      c) is                      d) being

- 15 Hany is never satisfied. He .....  
 a) 's always complaining      b) complain  
 c) complaining      d) is complain
- 16 A: I see you ..... a new mobile phone.  
 B: Yes, but I am having trouble understanding how it works.  
 a) are having      b) having      c) has      d) have
- 17 Look! That man ..... to open the door of your car.  
 a) tries      b) is trying      c) was trying      d) trying
- 18 A: Why are you looking at the sky?  
 B: It ..... as if it's going to rain.  
 a) looks      b) looking      c) looked      d) is looking
- 19 Can you hear those people? What ..... about?  
 a) do they talk      b) did they talk      c) are they talking      d) they are talking
- 20 I ..... the meaning of that word.  
 a) not understand      b) don't understand  
 c) am not understanding      d) understanding
- 21 I must go now. It ..... late.  
 a) is getting      b) gets      c) getting      d) get
- 22 I ..... to realise how difficult it is to be a teacher.  
 a) begin      b) begins      c) 'm beginning      d) beginning

**2 Correct the verbs between brackets (if needed):**

Many people are vegetarian. This 1) (mean) that they avoid 2) (eat) meat of any kind. Some do so because they 3) (want) to prevent cruelty against animals while others 4) (hope) to improve their health. Being a vegetarian 5) (require) a lot of effort and dedication. Nowadays, my brother 6) (try) to be a vegetarian by avoiding all kinds of meat.

**3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The hall was already full. The judges had taken their places at the table in front of the stage. There was a thunderous applause as the compere walked on the stage. He announced the start of the finals in the school singing competition. Backstage, the finalists were all nervously waiting for their turn to perform.

From an initial group of 24, the judges had eliminated half and chosen these remaining contestants to take part in the finals. The competition soon began. Each contestant came out and gave his or her best performance. There were some who did not sing as well as they wanted to. When all the finalists had performed they went back on stage again, this time to perform as a group. Then they went backstage to await the results. They were all so nervous. Some of them burst into tears. The judges took quite a long time to decide. They were all so good.

Finally, the compere went on stage to announce the top three winners who will win lots of attractive prizes. There were screams of joy as well as tears of disappointment. The students filed out of the hall when it was all over. All the school staff; teachers and the headmaster congratulated the winners on their efforts and took photographs with them.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The above passage describes .....
  - a) a national singing competition
  - b) an inter-school singing competition
  - c) a school singing competition
  - d) a community singing competition
- 2 There were ..... contestants at the finals.
 

a) 12	b) 20
c) 22	d) 24
- 3 The contestant performed ..... during the finals.
 

a) with the judges	b) as a group only
c) individually only	d) individually and in a group
- 4 "Tears of disappointment" means .....
  - a) the contestants who lost cried
  - b) the contestants who won cried
  - c) the contestants were disappointed with the prizes
  - d) the contestants were disappointed with the judges

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 Why did the judges took a long time to arrive at their decision?
- 6 Find words from the passage that mean:
 

a) excluded	b) declare
-------------	------------
- 7 How did the school staff show their pleasure with the winners? Mention two things.
- 8 Why do you think the finalists were all nervously waiting for their turn to perform?

**4) A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. Before taking important decisions, one should discuss their pros and cons. This will certainly lead to good results.
2. Tolerance is the willingness to accept behaviour and beliefs that are different from your own. Thus, we all can share peace and mutual understanding.

3. Egypt will never forget its sons who work hard to build it or those who devote their lives to it. Their efforts offer us comfort and prosperity.
4. Rules and laws are made to govern people's social behaviour. They also aim at reducing harms and disorders.
5. Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists. Thus, we should make good use of them to develop this important industry.
6. The Project of the New Capital is a massive project which will move Egypt to new horizons. It also created a great number of jobs.

**B) Translate into English:**

- 1- تعمل الحكومة على تطوير الرعاية الصحية للناس، لأن ذلك يؤدي إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد. لكن ذلك قد يستغرق سنوات من أجل إصلاح النظم الصحية.
- 2- تعمل منظمة الصحة العالمية على توفير اللقاحات اللازمة للقضاء على كثير من الأمراض وخاصة في الدول الفقيرة التي لا تستطيع تحمل تكلفة مثل هذه اللقاحات.
- 3- يجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التي تناسب قدراته ومواهبه وليست التي تعتمد فقط على الدرجات التي حصل عليها، فالمنهج في العمل لا يعتمد فقط على التفوق الدراسي.
- 4- تمثل مؤتمرات الشباب فرصة جيدة للقاء الشباب بالمسؤولين والبحث عن حلول للمشكلات التي تواجههم. كما يمثل فرصة لتبادل الآراء من أجل غد أفضل.

**Enrich your Vocabulary**

beliefs	معتقدات	negotiate	يتفاوض/ يناقش
disorders	اضطرابات	prosperity	الرفاه
economy	الاقتصاد	reform	إصلاح
horizons	أفاق	talents	مواهب
mutual understanding	التفاهم/ التبادل	willingness	الاستعداد

**5** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

**"The role of women in developing societies."**

## Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the **TWO** correct answers out of the **FIVE** options given:

- 1 Most of our knowledge is specific to the company we work for. The synonyms of the word "specific" are .....
  - a) particular
  - b) imaginary
  - c) peculiar
  - d) general
  - e) public
- 2 His office is a mess. He needs someone to help him organise his papers. The antonyms of the word "organise" are .....
  - a) ruin
  - b) support
  - c) arrange
  - d) stand
  - e) disturb
- 3 The company's ..... financial situation is not good, so they will apply for a bank loan.
  - a) past
  - b) current
  - c) future
  - d) present
  - e) popular
- 4 My grandfather can't ..... many activities as he is very old.
  - a) repair
  - b) do
  - c) reform
  - d) make
  - e) perform
- 5 Hard work makes Mohamed different ..... the rest of the students.
  - a) in
  - b) at
  - c) to
  - d) from
  - e) about
- 6 Two of the following verbs can work as both stative and dynamic (action):
  - a) drive
  - b) read
  - c) have
  - d) look
  - e) believe
- 7 Which sentences of the following are grammatically correct?
  - a) I'm usually brushing my teeth at the moment.
  - b) He's learning how to drive this month.
  - c) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.
  - d) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.
  - e) I don't eat breakfast this morning.
- 8 Choose the best two answers:
  - a) They hate to get to school late.
  - b) My boss is being kind these days.
  - c) Is she liking to go shopping?
  - d) I'm hating to drink coffee.
  - e) Nader works at a hotel for a week.
- 9 Two of the following are grammatically incorrect:
  - a) The soup is tasting good.
  - b) I taste the soup now to see if it needs salt.
  - c) I'm smelling the milk now, and it doesn't smell bad.
  - d) The house smells very good when we bake cakes.
  - e) What does "terrific" mean?
- 10 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct:
  - a) I'm feeling tired these days and I want to have a rest.
  - b) I am thinking that he will come to the party next week.
  - c) What are you doing? I think about my family.
  - d) I have a bad cold and I'm seeing the doctor tonight.
  - e) The movie is looking very interesting.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 11 Dentists use ..... anaesthetic to drill into a tooth or even take it out.  
 a) local                                      b) national                                      c) international                                      d) body
- 12 Three ..... studies all arrived at the same conclusion about the virus.  
 a) dependent                                      b) independent                                      c) intuitive                                      d) imaginary
- 13 The small boat ..... against the waves and it could arrive safely.  
 a) worked                                      b) respired                                      c) struggled                                      d) expanded
- 14 The young man was ..... up by police and taken to the station for questioning.  
 a) assigned                                      b) released                                      c) arrested                                      d) picked
- 15 Cooking oils are ..... from plants such as corn and sunflower.  
 a) consumed                                      b) intended                                      c) extracted                                      d) expired
- 16 The team is desperate to end a ten-game goal ..... and they are ranked last.  
 a) draught                                      b) drought                                      c) current                                      d) tide
- 17 In the field of drug development, the ..... of secrecy is deep and strong.  
 a) culture                                      b) habit                                      c) study                                      d) costume
- 18 The government's plan for closing the village hospital provoked a ..... of protest.  
 a) tide                                      b) shore                                      c) storm                                      d) downpour
- 19 The firefighter fell down a ..... of stairs and hurt her back.  
 a) trip                                      b) flight                                      c) glider                                      d) block
- 20 In the world of work, an employee must ..... himself to arrive at work on time.  
 a) exercise                                      b) practise                                      c) aspire                                      d) organise
- 21 ..... is that book I was reading? Have you seen it?  
 a) Which                                      b) Who                                      c) Where                                      d) What
- 22 Everyone has done their homework, ..... they?  
 a) have                                      b) hasn't                                      c) hadn't                                      d) haven't
- 23 Badr found ..... information on the internet that he could use in his essay.  
 a) several                                      b) a little                                      c) a few                                      d) many
- 24 The couple chatted with ..... while they waited for the bus.  
 a) each other                                      b) the other                                      c) every other                                      d) other
- 25 The bee stung him on ..... nose.  
 a) an                                      b) a                                      c) the                                      d) no article
- 26 Help ..... to a piece of cake. You aren't a guest.  
 a) yourself                                      b) yours                                      c) you                                      d) yourselves
- 27 ..... about the bad hotel, he would have cancelled the trip.  
 a) Did he know                                      b) Shall he know                                      c) Had he known                                      d) If he knew
- 28 Despite what you think, I ..... care about the environment.  
 a) done                                      b) to do                                      c) am doing                                      d) do
- 29 I wish Amal ..... me where she was going.  
 a) tells                                      b) had told                                      c) was telling                                      d) will tell
- 30 Book your hotel room early, ..... you won't find a vacancy.  
 a) otherwise                                      b) providing                                      c) supposing                                      d) unless

الترجمة الكلمات الصعبة يردى الرجوع إلى القاموس في نهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The president made a speech expressing his ..... to rebuild the economy.  
a) appearance      b) determination      c) avoidance      d) facilitation
- 2 Algeria became fully ..... from France in 1962.  
a) dependent      b) nosy      c) independent      d) facilitated
- 3 There were so many people talking that I couldn't ..... on the music.  
a) duplicate      b) replicate      c) investigate      d) concentrate
- 4 The secretary put the conference date in the manager's .....  
a) diary      b) book      c) article      d) title
- 5 The businessman has two big flats in Sharm El Sheikh, not to ..... his villa in 6<sup>th</sup> October city.  
a) remember      b) remind      c) mention      d) study
- 6 You must read the dictionary ..... carefully to know the distinction between these two words.  
a) enters      b) entries      c) exits      d) indexes
- 7 I ..... in London for three weeks in July.  
a) stay      b) staying      c) have stayed      d) 'm staying
- 8 Aya ..... classical music to jazz and pop.  
a) preferring      b) prefer      c) prefers      d) is preferring
- 9 I'm so happy Emad! My parents and I ..... on holiday next week.  
a) have gone      b) are going      c) go      d) went
- 10 Galal ..... to go home right now.  
a) wants      b) want      c) is wanting      d) has wanted
- 11 Mr. Hossam ..... accurate. He gives the correct and true details.  
a) is always being      b) always is      c) is always      d) has always
- 12 I ..... that the situation is out of control.  
a) 'm seeing      b) will see      c) sees      d) see
- 13 Samy and Waleed ..... hard these days.  
a) study      b) are studying      c) have studied      d) will study
- 14 I ..... something outside. Are the doors locked?  
a) am hearing      b) hearing      c) hears      d) can hear



- 15 I ..... taking early retirement. This is something I'm thinking about now.
- |                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| a) 'm considering | b) considering |
| c) considered     | d) consider    |
- 16 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
- They are having a nice house.
  - She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
  - People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
  - We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone juted out. The boy was whimpering in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their head in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 17 What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?
- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| a) physics | b) English   |
| c) maths   | d) chemistry |

- 18 What caused the loud thud?  
 a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.  
 b) Some stairs fell over.  
 c) There was a fight on the stairs.  
 d) Some boys were running down the stairs.
- 19 The boys didn't follow .....  
 a) the school rules  
 b) Mrs Fareeda's advice  
 c) the traffic rules  
 d) the right stairs
- 20 The antonym of the word "sternly" is .....  
 a) firmly  
 b) severely  
 c) strictly  
 d) softly

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 21 Why did the principal call for the ambulance?  
 22 Why did the boys apologise their behaviour?  
 23 What do you think happened to the boy's arm? Why do you say that?  
 24 What lesson did the boys learn from this experience? Justify your answer.

**25 Translate into English:**

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريقة الأمثل لبناء العواطف الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

**26 Translate into Arabic:**

We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

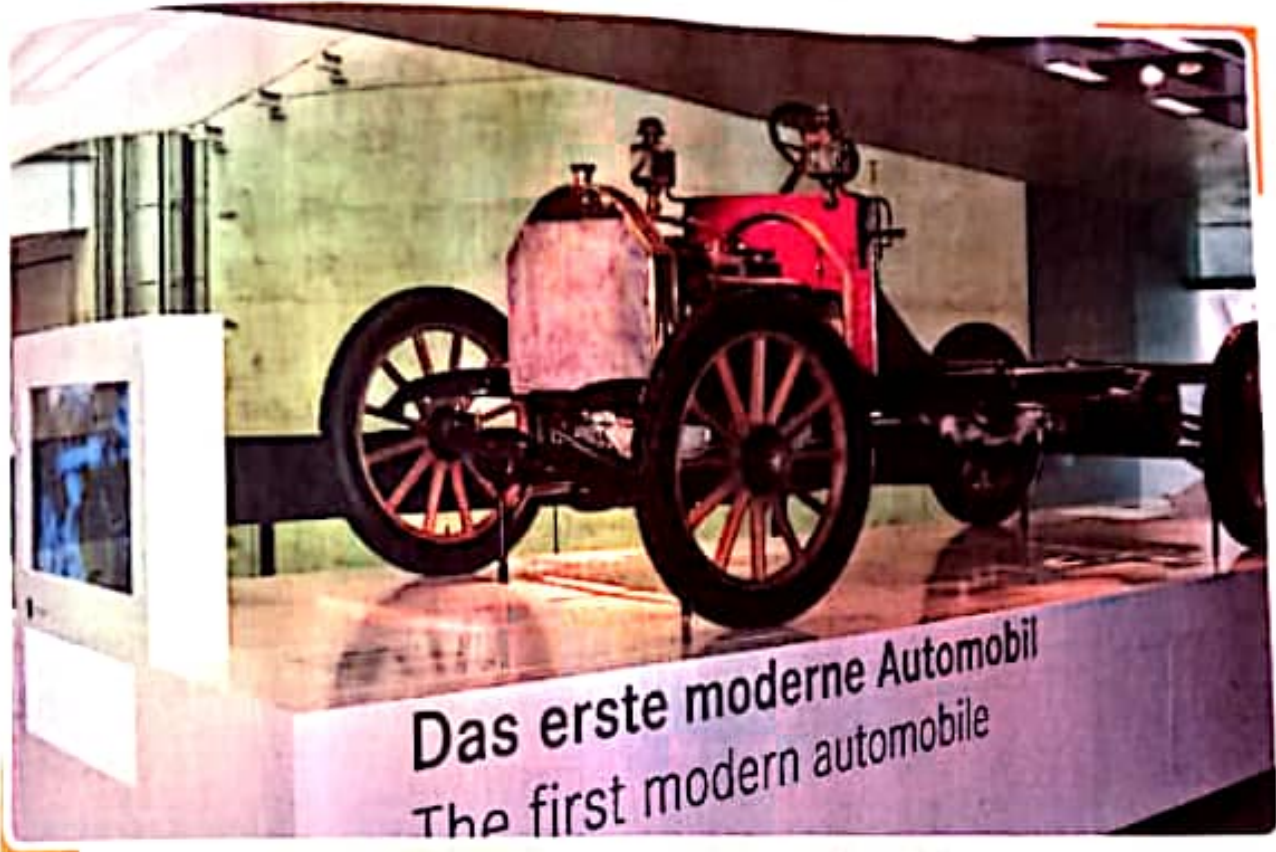
- 27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

**"The way advertisements can affect people."**

## Warm up



On January 29, 1886, Carl Benz applied for a patent for his "vehicle powered by a gas engine." The patent – number 37435 – may be regarded as the birth certificate of the automobile. In July 1886 the newspapers reported on the first public outing of the three-wheeled Benz Patent Motor Car, model no. 1.



List some specifications for the future's vehicles.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_



## Unit 8

## High-tech transport

### Objectives

- Reading** : A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network
- Writing** : A speech for or against an argument; An email to the local government about public transport
- Listening** : A talk show debate about the future of transport
- Speaking** : A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport; Asking and answering questions about a schedule
- Language** : Future perfect
- Life skills** : Critical thinking; Problem-solving; Respect for diversity





## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

expansion (n)

مد/تعميد

facilities (n)

امكانيات/تسهيلات/مرافق

high-tech (adj)

عالي التكنولوجيا

network (n)

public (adj)

transport (n)

### Vocabulary on Reading

add (v) (ed)

بضيف

addition (n)

إضافة

advantage (n)

ميزة

authority (n)

سلطة/هيئة

central (adj)

مركزي/متوسط

complete (adj) (v) (d)

كامل/يكمل

connect (v) (ed)

يربط/يصل

disadvantage (n)

عيب

equipment (n)

معدات

expect (v) (ed)

يتوقع

guess (v) (ed)

يخمن

improve (v) (d)

يحسن/يتحسن

increase (v) (d) (n)

يزيد/زيادة

length (n)

طول/مدة

line (n)

metro (n)

notice (n)

passenger (n)

persuade (v) (d)

precise (adj)

schedule (n)

size (n)

system (n)

take place (v)

total (adj)

tram (n)

underground

(adj) (adv) (n)

ملاحظة/إشعار

ركاب/مسافر

يقنع

دقيق/محدد

جدول

حجم/مقاس

نظام

حدث/يتم

إجمالي

ترام (وسيلة مواصلات)

تحت الأرض/مترو الأنفاق

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

along the coast	عبر الساحل	make notes	يبدون ملاحظات
around the world	حول العالم	over the next ten years	خلال السنوات العشر القادمة
forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	take a test	يتمتحان
agree with	يتفق مع	increase in	زيادة في
bad for	سيئ لـ	part of	جزء من
close to	قريب من	plan for	يخطط لـ
give up	يقنع عن	travel around	يتنقل
go down	ينخفض	work for	يعمل لدى
importance of	أهمية لـ		

### Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يربط/يصل	connection	صلة/ارتباط	connected	متصل
construct	ينشئ/يشيد	construction	إنشاء/تشيد	constructive	إيجابي
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	إبداع/خلق	creative	إبداعي
emphasise	يؤكد على	emphasis	تأكيد	emphatic	يؤكد
expand	يعد/يوسع	expansion	توسع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	محسن
increase	يزيد	increase	زيادة	increasing	متزايد
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	قانع/إقناعي
produce	ينتج	production product	إنتاج منتج	productive	إنتاجي
protect	يحمي/يقى من	protection	حماية/وقاية	protective	أمني
transport	ينقل	transport/transportation	نقل/مواصلات		

## Reading Text (1)

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you think the expansion of Cairo Metro will be?

## Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3. This **expansion**<sup>(1)</sup> of the **Cairo Metro**<sup>(2)</sup> adds seven kilometres and six new stations to our underground **network**<sup>(3)</sup>. Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to work faster and more easily because it connects Heliopolis and the central station of Adly Mansour. We expect that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year.



(1) مد/تمديد/ توسيع

(2) مترو القاهرة

(3) شبكة

(4) على التكنولوجيا

(5) النقل العلم

(6) يربط/يصل

(7) جدول

(8) محسن/مطور

**High-tech**<sup>(4)</sup> systems were used to build this 21<sup>st</sup> Century **public transport**<sup>(5)</sup> system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six. We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will **connect**<sup>(6)</sup> the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short periods of time.

Although we don't have a precise **schedule**<sup>(7)</sup> for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your understanding while the building work is taking place. We hope that you will enjoy using the **improved**<sup>(8)</sup> underground network.

## Post-reading question:

- Why will they close some metro stations for short periods of time?

**(Public transport) projects for the future**

**Public transport**<sup>(1)</sup> networks everywhere will improve a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans to create the first public transport connection from both New Administrative City and 6<sup>th</sup> of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

The Cairo Monorail will involve the construction of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative City to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6<sup>th</sup> of October City to the Greater Cairo area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an **expansion**<sup>(2)</sup> of the Paris underground network in France. Using the latest technology, the **underground**<sup>(3)</sup> Line 18 will **connect**<sup>(4)</sup> Orly airport to the suburb of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be **high-tech**<sup>(5)</sup>. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel in Australia's history. The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground **system**<sup>(6)</sup>. The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along the coast of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million **passengers**<sup>(7)</sup> a year.

(1) النقل العام

(2) من/تعميد/توسيع

(3) مترو الأنفاق

(4) يربط/يصل

(5) على التكنولوجيا

(6) نظام

(7) ركاب



## Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The Egyptian government is carrying out a major ..... of the underground systems.
  - a) damage
  - b) application
  - c) expansion
  - d) pressure
- 2 Our company has recently installed the latest ..... security system that cost a lot of money.
  - a) outdated
  - b) degraded
  - c) old-fashioned
  - d) high-tech
- 3 The motorway ..... in Egypt links all the cities and areas.
  - a) line
  - b) network
  - c) discipline
  - d) authority
- 4 These advertisements are intended to increase ..... awareness of the risks of smoking.
  - a) public
  - b) special
  - c) accepted
  - d) awful
- 5 Modern ..... systems have been a severe threat to the environment causing a lot of pollution.
  - a) security
  - b) computer
  - c) transport
  - d) education

تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

جمع نقاطك  
و استبدلها الآن بمجموعة من الهدايا  
الرائعة على متجر الأضواء.

حفل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
www.aladwaa.com



## Pre-listening question:

- How do you think people will be able to travel in the future?

**Talk show host :** So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two guests. We have Karima, who works for an **organisation**<sup>(1)</sup> that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes electric cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?

(1) منظمة

(2) غازات

(3) يتلف

**Karima**

: Well, I think the answer is quite clear.

Because the dangerous **gases**<sup>(2)</sup> that cars produce are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.

**Nadiya**

: I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars.

The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that **damage**<sup>(3)</sup> the environment. They're very environmentally friendly. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric vehicle.

**Karima**

: I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think that all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.

**Talk show host** : Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport **available**<sup>(4)</sup> to us will have changed completely – don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought **driverless**<sup>(5)</sup> cars. What would you say to that?

متوسط امتحان (4)

بلا سائق (5)

خاص (6)

**Nadiya**

: Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles, because they are a **private**<sup>(6)</sup> space. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally friendly.

**Talk show host** : Karima?

**Karima**

: Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

### Post-listening question:

- In your opinion, will private cars disappear in the future? Why? Why not?



## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

**Huda** : Which is the best way to travel?

**Injy** : I think the answer is quite clear. Flying.

**Huda** : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

**Injy** : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

**Huda** : Can I just say something here? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

**Injy** : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that?

**Video Script**

Will people have stopped flying in the future? Most experts believe they won't, but **airports**<sup>(1)</sup> and aeroplanes will be very different.

Many experts believe that high-tech robots will have **replaced**<sup>(2)</sup> most or all airport staff by 2050. At Changi Airport in Singapore, more and more robots are already doing jobs that people did before, for example cleaning the building and doing some **security controls**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Aeroplane passengers will use their mobile phones to do everything at the airport. They will **check in**<sup>(4)</sup> online, pay for everything online and there will be technology at the airport **gate**<sup>(5)</sup> that can tell who each passenger is.

Environmentally-friendly aeroplanes that produce little or no **polluting**<sup>(6)</sup> gases will have become normal in a few years from now. However, the cost of air travel will have gone up because these aeroplanes will be far more expensive to build.

- (1) مطارات
- (2) يستبدل
- (3) إجراءات تحكم أمنية
- (4) يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر
- (5) بوابة
- (6) ملوث



**Check Point 2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Hurry up! You must ..... in at least one hour before your flight.
  - a) get
  - b) look
  - c) apply
  - d) check
- 2 When she got off the plane, her mother was waiting for her at the airport .....
  - a) gate
  - b) hole
  - c) dock
  - d) store
- 3 Email has largely ..... the traditional business letter.
  - a) placed
  - b) positioned
  - c) replaced
  - d) reflected
- 4 One of the main disadvantages of cars is the ..... gases which damage the environment.
  - a) valuable
  - b) polluting
  - c) effective
  - d) impressive
- 5 The information about the new vaccine is freely ..... on the internet.
  - a) avoidable
  - b) secret
  - c) available
  - d) affecting

## Focus on Vocabulary



expansion (n)

مد/تعميد/توسيع

▶ when something increases in size, range, amount, etc.

facilities (n)

مرافق

▶ places or buildings used for a particular activity or industry, or for providing a particular type of service

high-tech (adj)

عالي التكنولوجيا

▶ using high technology

network (n)

شبكة

▶ a system of lines, tubes, wires, roads, etc. that cross each other and are connected to each other

public transport

النقل العام

▶ buses, trains, etc. that are available for everyone to use

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
central	مركزي/متوسط	main/basic	additional/extra إضافي
connect	يربط/يصل	link/join	disconnect/divide يفصل/يقسم
construction	إنشاء/تشيد	development/building	disarrangement/destruction عدم ترتيب/تدمير
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert	deny/ignore ينكر/يتجاهل
expansion	توسيع	growth/enlargement	decrease/reduction تقليل/خفض
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	develop/promote	deteriorate/corrupt يتدهور/يفسد
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	bother/disturb	assist يساعد
involve	يتضمن	include	exclude يستبعد
persuade	يقنع	convince	discourage يثبط (لا يشجع)
precise	دقيق/محدد	exact/accurate	Imprecise/indefinite غير دقيق/غير محدد
protect	يحمي/يقى من	defend/save	destroy/endoranger يدمر/يعرض للخطر
total	كلى/إجمالي	complete	partial جزئي

Notes on Vocabulary 

**notice**

notice

▶ This problem may not have received your **notice** so far.

تستخدم (notice) كاسم بمعانٍ مختلفة  
بالمنظرة/الانتباه/الاهتمام

notice = sign

▶ The **notice** on the wall says 'No smoking'.

شعار (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير)

notice = warning

▶ The authorities closed the factory, giving the workers only a week's **notice**.

تنبيه من شيء مستقبلي

notice = review

▶ The new play got mixed **notices** in the newspapers.

نقد أو رأي عن فيلم/قصة مطبوع في جريدة

▶ He **noticed** a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.

نظر أيضا أن (notice) يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يلاحظ)

**public**

**general**

public

▶ You now have to pay to use the **public** toilets at the park.

عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)

general

▶ They gave a **general** description of the new site of the company.

عام (غير محدد)

**take place**

**take someone's place**

take place

▶ *Treasure Island* **took place** in nineteenth century England.

حدث

take someone's place

▶ I **took my father's place** in our shop while he was abroad.

شخص يحل محل ..

- electric** (used about something that works using electricity)  
 ▶ Is your cooker **electric** or gas? كهرىبى (يعمل بالكهرباء)
- electrical** (used about things in general that use electricity, or people whose job is to make or repair these things)  
 ▶ I work for a company manufacturing **electrical** goods. كهرىبائى (يستخدم الكهرباء - يعمل بإنتاج أو تصليح الكهرباء)  
 ▶ My uncle works as an **electrical** engineer.
- electronic** (used about systems or things that work using computers or smartphones)  
 ▶ Most kids love **electronic** games. إلكترونى (خاصة بالتقنيات الحديثة)  
 ▶ Email is the short word for **electronic** mail.

### Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

- 1 By 2030, we **expect to have built** three more new lines to bring the total number to six.  
 - لاحظ استخدام (have + P.P.) بعد الفعل (expect) وليس المصدر كالمعتاد والمعنى هنا (نتوقع أن نكون أكملنا بناء)
- 2 We hope that all our passengers will **enjoy using** our new Line 3.  
 - لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (enjoy)
- 3 The **50-km-long tunnel** will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground.  
 The **270-km-line** will be finished in 2030.  
 - لاحظ استخدام المفرد بعد العدد وليس الجمع (km) بسبب استخدامه قبل اسم بمعنى الصفة
- 4 The project involves 10,000 workers **including** engineers.  
 - استخدمنا (including)  
 هنا بمعنى (مشملا على أو متضمنا) وقد تكون اختصارا لضمير وصل تبعه جملة مبنية للمعلوم فالجملة يمكن أن يكون أصلها  
 The project involves 10,000 workers **who include** engineers.
- 5 And if we **do still have** cars, we won't drive them ourselves .....  
 - لاحظ استخدام (do) مع المصدر في جملة خبرية للتأكيد على الفعل بمعنى (بالفعل - حقا)



### Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I check the hotel list to get a \_\_\_\_\_ idea of what activities to plan.  
a) general                      b) public                      c) private                      d) careful
- 2 These books are also available in an \_\_\_\_\_ form.  
a) electricity                      b) electric                      c) electrical                      d) electronic
- 3 The accident received little \_\_\_\_\_ in the national media.  
a) note                      b) notice                      c) sign                      d) signal
- 4 The satellite signals were affected by \_\_\_\_\_ storm and its lightning.  
a) electricity                      b) electric                      c) electrical                      d) electronic
- 5 There was a notice on the board saying the class had been cancelled. The word "notice" here means \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) attention                      b) review                      c) sign                      d) observation



تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

تخذ أصدقاءك

وعاش تجربة التحدي مع الأضواء

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)



## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The clothes company is planning a great ..... of its outlets in Alexandria to sell more.  
a) deterioration      b) decline      c) expansion      d) reduction
- 2 The leisure ..... in this hotel include a sauna and a gym.  
a) probabilities      b) facilities      c) accessibilities      d) availabilities
- 3 The machines which the new factory uses are very ..... which are the latest in the country.  
a) outdated      b) ancient      c) dated      d) high-tech
- 4 A ..... of veins and arteries carries the blood around the body.  
a) power      b) device      c) network      d) station
- 5 By law, smoking is no longer allowed in indoor ..... places.  
a) general      b) public      c) private      d) clear
- 6 Investment in ..... infrastructure has increased greatly in the last few years.  
a) transport      b) transfer      c) transfuse      d) transplant
- 7 The government has the ..... to regulate the economy.  
a) irresponsibility      b) authority      c) validity      d) expiry
- 8 The canal was built to ..... the city with the port.  
a) contact      b) communicate      c) connect      d) tie
- 9 Conditions in hospital have ..... greatly in Egypt in the last few years.  
a) proved      b) devised      c) interrupted      d) improved
- 10 The aeroplane was carrying over 500 ..... when it crashed and they were all killed.  
a) engines      b) passengers      c) pilots      d) crews
- 11 The president's ..... includes a two-day visit to a foreign country.  
a) column      b) speech      c) schedule      d) seminar
- 12 The ..... cost was far higher than we had expected.  
a) vague      b) avoidable      c) available      d) total
- 13 The police think that the criminals who robbed the bank were driving a stolen .....  
a) engine      b) vehicle      c) station      d) power
- 14 Vitamin B12 may have a role in ..... us from heart disease.  
a) preventing      b) infecting      c) protecting      d) healing
- 15 The report ..... the importance of improving safety standards.  
a) emphasizes      b) improvises      c) ejects      d) disrupts

- 16 While the spokesman was giving his report, a reporter in the back kept ..... him every two minutes.  
 a) noticing                      b) interrupting                      c) helping                      d) assisting
- 17 The scientists will hold a ..... of meetings over the next few weeks to discuss the new medicine.  
 a) team                      b) collection                      c) series                      d) deviation
- 18 More and more people are moving to the ..... of Cairo such as New Cairo City every year.  
 a) districts                      b) regions                      c) shores                      d) suburbs
- 19 ..... work on the new road is expected to take two years.  
 a) Construction                      b) Destruction                      c) Damage                      d) Waste
- 20 The Giza Metro line runs in a ..... under the River Nile.  
 a) funnel                      b) tunnel                      c) pipe                      d) road

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

- 21 As he read the reports, the manager ..... careful notes about them.  
 a) ran                      b) gave                      c) made                      d) invented
- 22 All candidates have to ..... a test in language and computer skills.  
 a) give                      b) make                      c) devise                      d) take
- 23 I don't agree ..... the way to discipline students with physical punishment.  
 a) at                      b) with                      c) for                      d) of
- 24 The tourist company's income went ..... as a result of the corona crisis last year.  
 a) off                      b) down                      c) in                      d) into
- 25 The metro lines made it easier to travel ..... Greater Cairo and the new suburbs.  
 a) on                      b) at                      c) around                      d) away
- 26 After a brief ..... by the manager, the staff meeting began.  
 a) introduce                      b) introduction                      c) introductory                      d) introduced
- 27 The evidence was not really ..... enough to put the accused man in prison.  
 a) persuade                      b) persuasion                      c) persuasive                      d) persuaded
- 28 Through the national projects, the government plans to ..... more jobs for young people.  
 a) create                      b) creation                      c) creator                      d) creative
- 29 Prevention also plays a central role in traditional medicine. The word "central" is similar in meaning to the word ".....".  
 a) far                      b) main                      c) partial                      d) heavy
- 30 The test will involve answering questions about a photograph. The verb "involve" can be the opposite to the verb ".....".  
 a) include                      b) invent                      c) exclude                      d) consist

## Language

## Future perfect

المستقبل التام

Form:

التكوين

will have + P.P.

- I **will have finished** this report by midday.

Negative:

النفي

won't have + P.P.

- I **won't have finished** this report until 5 o'clock.

Interrogative:

الاستفهام

Will + الفاعل + have + P.P.?

- **Will you have typed** all these letters by the time the boss arrives?

Passive:

المجهول

will have been + P.P.

- Our car **will have been repaired** by tomorrow.

1 For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- ▶ By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll **have sent** all these invitation cards.
- ▶ By next October, the new metro line **will have been built**.

2 For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future.

يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

- ▶ I **will have read** the book **before** I return it to the library.
- ▶ **By the time** my father arrives, I'll **have finished** my homework.

The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Before, by + فترة في المستقبل (2100), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time

- ▶ My wife **won't have finished** preparing the lunch **till** 4 o'clock.
- ▶ **In a week's time** we'll **have finished** our exams.

Future perfect (will have + P.P.)	before, till/until, by the time, by	Present simple Present perfect
--------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

- ▶ Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.
- ▶ By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.

ملحوظة

يستخدم by/by the time/before لنقصد قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- ▶ We will have taken the test by/before June.
- ▶ I won't have done all of my homework by the time/before you get home.
- ▶ I will have started work in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time لنقصد في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.
- ▶ In five years, I will have started work.
- ▶ How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?

Extra points

تستخدم to بعدنا نستغنى عن will وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده to have + P.P.

- ▶ want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.
- ▶ By 2030, we expect to have built flats for all people in Egypt.
- ▶ We expect to have started building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.
- ▶ The food is expected to have been prepared by 6 pm today.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 By this time next week, I ..... my test results.  
a) will have received  
b) will be receiving  
c) will receive  
d) am going to receive
- 2 In an hour's time, Ola ..... home with her father.  
a) will be reached  
b) reaches  
c) has reached  
d) will have reached
- 3 By this time next year, we ..... into our new house.  
a) will move  
b) will be moving  
c) will have moved  
d) will be moved
- 4 By the time my holiday is over, I ..... lots of interesting places.  
a) will visit  
b) will have visited  
c) visit  
d) will be visiting
- 5 What will Nour ..... by the fourth of September?  
a) have done  
b) has done  
c) do  
d) be doing



تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

العِب و تعلم...  
تواصل مع أصدقائك واستمتعوا معًا بتجربة التعلم  
الترفيهي مع مجتمع الأضواء.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال  
www.aladwaa.com

## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Wake me up by nine o'clock. I ..... long enough by then.  
a) will sleep                      b) will have slept                      c) will be sleeping                      d) will be slept
- 2 I think one day every new book ..... as an e-book.  
a) publish                      b) will publish                      c) will be published                      d) will have published
- 3 Will she ..... enough Chinese to communicate before she moves to Beijing?  
a) have learned                      b) be learning                      c) learn                      d) has learned
- 4 Rana ..... the night shift by the time you get up in the morning.  
a) won't be finished                      b) won't finished                      c) won't finish                      d) won't have finished
- 5 Mahmoud ..... a good job in Cairo by the time he's twenty-five years old.  
a) will get                      b) will have got                      c) is getting                      d) will be got
- 6 Could you please return in 10 minutes? Your room will ..... by then.  
a) have been cleaned                      b) be cleaned                      c) be cleaning                      d) have cleaned
- 7 Phone me after 8 o'clock. We ..... dinner by then.  
a) will finish                      b) will be finishing                      c) will have finished                      d) have finished
- 8 Our guests are expected to ..... by 4 o'clock this afternoon.  
a) be arrived                      b) have arrived                      c) have been arrived                      d) will arrive
- 9 We ..... all our needs in a week's time.  
a) will buy                      b) will have bought                      c) are going to buy                      d) are buying
- 10 It's a big course. We ..... it by the time the vacation begins.  
a) won't finish                      b) won't be finishing                      c) won't have finished                      d) aren't finishing
- 11 By the time your children are in university, will e-books ..... traditional books?  
a) have replacing                      b) have replaced                      c) replaced                      d) have been replaced
- 12 Call me tomorrow at eleven. I'll know more because the meeting .....  
a) will have finished                      b) will finish                      c) will be finishing                      d) won't finish
- 13 He hopes the conference ..... before he arrives because he'd like to hear final speech.  
a) will have ended                      b) will end                      c) won't have ended                      d) won't end
- 14 I hope a cure for COVID-19 ..... by the end of this month.  
a) will have been discovered                      b) will discover                      c) will be discovering                      d) will be discovered
- 15 I ..... to sleep before 8 pm.  
a) won't be going                      b) will be going                      c) will have been gone                      d) won't have gone



## General Exercises (Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 In order to finance ..... on transport, the government has relied on local investments.  
a) intention      b) expansion      c) affection      d) reduction
- 2 The hotel has special ..... for welcoming disabled people such as lifts and wheelchairs.  
a) talents      b) gifts      c) specialties      d) facilities
- 3 Like most ..... products when they first hit the market, Sony's latest offering won't be cheap.  
a) old-fashioned      b) ancient      c) high-tech      d) dirty
- 4 The oil company is establishing a ..... of pumps and pipelines to move the oil.  
a) network      b) labour      c) discipline      d) station
- 5 Levels of waste from the factory may be a danger to ..... health.  
a) general      b) public      c) special      d) clear
- 6 Buses are the safest form of road ..... in many world countries.  
a) transfer      b) labour      c) transport      d) repair
- 7 The tourist office will have a map of the surrounding ..... to guide the tourists there.  
a) environment      b) nature      c) character      d) area
- 8 The ..... date and place of birth of this famous writer are unknown.  
a) vague      b) hidden      c) precise      d) indefinite
- 9 The Olympics take ..... every four years in a different city.  
a) part      b) place      c) in      d) off
- 10 This mobile model is relatively ..... at just 800 pounds.  
a) accessible      b) unavailable      c) avoidable      d) affordable
- 11 You don't need any special sports ..... to do running, just a pair of running shoes.  
a) gadget      b) machinery      c) equipment      d) production
- 12 The military camp is surrounded by a/an ..... fence to keep away intruders.  
a) electronic      b) electric      c) flexible      d) defeated
- 13 The young writer's story has been made into a TV ..... of three parts.  
a) series      b) cast      c) channel      d) podcast
- 14 The ozone layer forms a ..... barrier against the sun's rays.  
a) protect      b) protection      c) protective      d) protected



- 15 The young architect didn't give ..... High-tech transport  
 a) in ..... work when she had the baby.  
 b) at ..... c) off ..... d) up
- 16 When he finishes his course, he thinks he ..... 2000 new English words.  
 a) will have learned ..... b) learns .....  
 c) is going to learn ..... d) will learn
- 17 You ..... enough German to communicate with the delegates by the day  
 of the conference.  
 a) will learn ..... b) learn .....  
 c) are learning ..... d) will have learnt
- 18 I think that by 2040 the price of electric cars ..... down so much that  
 a) won't go ..... b) will go .....  
 c) won't have gone ..... d) are going
- 19 By the end of this week, all the thieves will .....  
 a) have caught ..... b) have been caught ..... c) catch ..... d) be catching
- 20 By the time you get home, I ..... the house from top to bottom.  
 a) will have cleaned ..... b) will be cleaning ..... c) will clean ..... d) will be cleaned
- 21 Nancy ..... to a new apartment by this time next year.  
 a) will move ..... b) moves .....  
 c) is going to move ..... d) will have moved
- 22 They ..... a new, high-tech hospital by the end of next year.  
 a) will open ..... b) will have opened ..... c) will be opening ..... d) are opening
- 23 Whatever happens in the future, in ten years, we ..... up on driving our  
 own vehicles.  
 a) won't have given ..... b) won't be given ..... c) are giving ..... d) will be given
- 24 The writer's new story will ..... by the time the Book Fair starts.  
 a) be printed ..... b) be printing .....  
 c) have printed ..... d) have been printed
- 25 "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation to the sentence is .....  
 a) request ..... b) offer ..... c) promise ..... d) threat

## 2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

**passengers – expansion – public – suburbs – metro – high-tech**

All experts assert that improving .....(1)..... transport is one of the best ways to fight pollution. Egypt is already carrying out great plans for this reason. First, a plan has been carried out to improve buses and turning them to work with natural gas instead of petrol. Public buses also use .....(2)..... equipment to attract .....(3)..... such as free Wi-Fi. The government also has huge plans to build more line of the underground .....(4)..... in order to connect the important cities especially new cities such as the New Administrative City, 6<sup>th</sup> October City and other .....(5)..... of Greater Cairo. This .....(6)..... will surely take a lot of time and requires huge investments.

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

John is in the Siwa oasis and tomorrow he (1) (is going/will have gone) across the Western Desert by camel. He has never ridden a camel so he thinks it (2) (is/will be) a great experience! After his trip to Siwa (3) (finishes/will finish), he is going to spend a few days at El Farafra oasis. He is going there (4) (by/on) 23 July. He expects to (5) (take/have taken) a lot of photographs by the end of this trip. In two weeks' time he (6) (will have returned/will be returned) to his country.

**4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

I have lived here since I retired last year. My house has a good, clear view of a lake. It's only about a hundred metres from the lake. The road is between my house and the lake. Now I've never been interested in the lake monster, until last Tuesday. I thought it was just a good story to attract tourists. But I've had to change my mind after last Tuesday's experience.

I got up as usual at about 7 and went into my garden. Something attracted my attention to the lake. There was almost no mist that morning, and I could see there was something moving quite fast, going north, in the middle of the lake. It looked like a giant snake, with its head and part of its body above water. It was about thirty metres long. I rushed into the house to get my camera, but when I was back it had gone.

I waited and it appeared again, this time nearer the road and my house. I could see it clearly. I managed to take several photographs of it. They haven't come out very well, but one or two of them show the creature quite clearly. At one point it swam straight towards me, but then a lorry passed on the road and perhaps it heard the noise of the engine because it disappeared again. I reckon the whole incident lasted for about fifteen minutes, because it was a quarter past seven the last time I looked at my watch. I've never seen anything so strange in my life.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 How long has the writer been retired?
 

a) A week.	b) A month.	c) A year.	d) Two years.
------------	-------------	------------	---------------
- 2 What is there between the house and the lake?
 

a) Another lake.	b) A lorry.	c) A monster.	d) A road.
------------------	-------------	---------------	------------
- 3 The monster disappeared the second time because it .....
 

a) heard a lorry passing	b) saw the writer
c) saw the camera	d) saw a snake
- 4 The synonym of the word "reckon" is .....
 

a) know	b) suppose	c) realise	d) grasp
---------	------------	------------	----------

### B) Answer the following questions:

1. What can be seen from his house?
2. Why did he have a clear view of the lake that morning?
3. What happened when he ran into the house to get his camera?
4. What do you think people feel when they see monsters? Why?

### 5 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The expansion of the underground lines is one of the biggest challenges that Egypt faces nowadays. However, the Egyptians have always proved that they are able to carry out such great projects.
2. As a result of the global problems, all world countries have a responsibility to improve public transport. This will surely lead to a reduction of gas emissions and help solve the pollution problems.
3. African civilisation has always been a mystery that excites many people all over the world. Many adventurers still think of Africa as a mine of treasures.
4. Freedom of expression must have rules. It is your right to express your opinion freely, but you must respect the opinions of other people.
5. Private schools and universities can play a role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than public ones.
6. We owe a lot to the people who have made great contributions to making the world a better place. Scientists and thinkers are at the top of them.

### B) Translate into English:

- ١- تولى الحكومة أولوية كبرى لمشروعات النقل العام؛ وذلك لأنها أحد أهم الطرق لمكافحة التلوث، لكن تلك المشروعات تتطلب استثمارات كبيرة ووقتاً طويلاً لتنفيذها.
- ٢- حماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن في مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط؛ فعلياً جميعاً أن نشارك في ذلك ولو حتى بحملات التوعية.
- ٣- نحتاج جميعاً إلى فهم معنى الحرية؛ حيث يسئ الكثيرون استخدام الحرية، فالحرية أن تعبر عن رأيك ولا تهمل آراء الآخرين.
- ٤- الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم في كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية؛ لذلك يجب البحث عن حلول لها.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

awareness campaigns	حملات التوعية	investments	استثمارات
civilisation	حضارة	mystery	سر
contributions	إسهامات	obstacles	معوقات
enhancing	تعزيز	over population	الزيادة السكانية
freedom of expression	حرية التعبير	priority	أولوية
gas emissions	انبعاثات الغاز	responsibility	مسئولية

- 6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:  
"Ways to help the people with a disability or people with special needs to be useful citizens."

## Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading

consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	possible (adj)	ممکن
convenient (adj)	مناسب	provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	respond (v) (ed)	يرد/يستجيب
effect (n)	تأثير	satisfactory (adj)	مريض
governorate (n)	محافظة	solution (n)	حل
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	style (n)	لسلوب
issue (n)	قضية	timetable (n)	جدول المواعيد

## Vocabulary on Listening

alternative (n) (adj)	بديل	pause (v) (d)	يصمت/صمت
argument (n)	جدال	point (n)	نقطة/أراي
environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة	popularity (n)	شهرة/انوع
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	significant (adj)	هام/أنو مغزى
flying vehicle (n)	مركبة طائرة	stress (n) (v) (ed)	ضغط/يضغط/يؤكد على
impossible (adj)	مستحيل		

## Workbook Vocabulary

appropriate (adj)	مناسب/لائم	disability (n)	إعاققة
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	lead (v) (ed)	يقود/يؤدى
decrease (v) (d)	ينخفض/يقبل	level (n)	مستوى

planet (n)	كوكب
playground (n)	ملعب
point (n)	نقطة/راي
present (adj)	حالي

reason (n)	سبب
region (n)	إقليم
save (v) (d)	ينقذ
wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at least	على الأقل	make .... better	يجعله ... أفضل
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	on behalf of	بالنيابة
keep in mind	يتذكروا/يبقى في ذهنه	point of view	وجهة نظر
alternative to	بديل لـ	lead to	يؤدي إلى
arrive at	يصل إلى	possible for	ممكّن لـ
decrease in	تقليل في	respond to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision	تزويد		
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
satisfy	يرضى/يقنع	satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	satisfactory	مرضٍ
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed	مضغوط
conclude	يختم/يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة/استنتاج	concluding	خاتم/مستنتج

## Reading Text (1)

**Pre-reading question:** - Do you think that young people can have a role in solving transport problems? Why? Why not?

Dear Sir or Madam,

A I am writing **on behalf**<sup>(1)</sup> of myself and the other students in my class at school.

B We would be very grateful if the governorate would consider organising the expansion to our town's public transport network. The current network is not **satisfactory**<sup>(2)</sup> because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.

C I have done some research and some children arrive at school much **earlier**<sup>(3)</sup> than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.

D I would suggest that the governorate office either provides more buses at the time when students travel to school or it changes the bus timetable so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes earlier.

E I would be very happy to discuss this issue further at any time that would be **convenient**<sup>(4)</sup>. Then we could discuss which solution(s) would be possible for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please **respond**<sup>(5)</sup> to this email.

Yours faithfully,  
Sara Abdelaziz

(1) بالنيابة

(2) مرضي

(3) مبكرا

(4) مناسب لملانم

(5) يرد ايستجيب

**Post-reading question:** - What do you think of the solution Sara offered to solve the problem?

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

I'd like to make the (1) **argument** that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because there will be lots of inexpensive and (2) **environmentally friendly** forms of public transport. Another significant point I'd like to make is that because roads will be safer, there will be (3) **alternatives** to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and cycle. It's important to keep in mind that these ways of travelling will lead to a (4) **significant** decrease in levels of pollution.


**Reading Text (3) (Workbook)**
**Join us to help your community!**

- We are a group of volunteers who are working for the local government and we help out with local problems. Would you like to work with us?
- Our present project is improving the local playgrounds. These are great places for local families, but some of the equipment is not good enough.
- Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is safe and fun to use for children of all ages.
- We will be at the town hall all day on Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> July. Come and join us at a time that is good for you!


**Check Point**
**1**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The menu at this restaurant offer several vegetarian ..... for people who don't eat meat or fish.
 

a) affections	b) alternatives
c) attentions	d) attributes
- 2 Many people in Alexandria say that fish is a/an ..... part of their diet.
 

a) useless	b) poisonous
c) significant	d) valueless
- 3 The educational authority presented strong ..... for building a new school in the city.
 

a) arguments	b) articles
c) titles	d) disagreements
- 4 The teacher asked a question, but the student didn't ..... .
 

a) learn	b) refer
c) prefer	d) respond
- 5 My parents are ..... buying a new car because our old car always breaks down.
 

a) availing	b) reminding
c) considering	d) assisting



## Listening Text

## Pre-listening question:

- Is the car your favourite means of transport? Why? Why not?

**Presenter:** I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050. The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere, everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard – perhaps **impossible**<sup>(1)</sup> – to imagine that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very **significant**<sup>(2)</sup> **point**<sup>(3)</sup> that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine a good **alternative**<sup>(4)</sup> to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using **flying vehicles**<sup>(5)</sup> by 2030, but I doubt that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally friendly. Just look at the **popularity**<sup>(6)</sup> of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can **expect**<sup>(7)</sup> that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.

(1) مستحيل

(2) هام/نقطة مغزى

(3) نقطة/رأى

(4) بديل

(5) مركبات طائرة

(6) شعرة/نوع

(7) يتوقع

## Post-listening question:

- In the presenter's opinion, why aren't there alternatives to cars?



## Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Many experts warn of the bad effects of the ..... of violent video games on children and young people.  
a) ability                      b) popularity                      c) exploration                      d) avoidance
- 2 I ..... to do well on the exam. I have studied very hard.  
a) refuse                      b) accept                      c) expect                      d) reject
- 3 The spokesman ..... for some water before continuing his speech.  
a) acquired                      b) offered                      c) called                      d) paused
- 4 Mild exercises and relaxation can help you reduce the ..... of daily life.  
a) stress                      b) amusement                      c) pleasure                      d) cost
- 5 Hyundai, the famous car manufacturer, has plans to show its first ..... vehicle that could be seen in the sky in a few years.  
a) steam                      b) flying                      c) revised                      d) explored

## Focus on Vocabulary



alternatives	بدائل	▶ describing things you do or use instead of something else
argument	جدال	▶ the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	▶ when something is not bad for nature
significant	هام/ ذو مغزى	▶ important

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation الزلم
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable غير مناسب
grateful	شاكرا/ممتن	appreciative/thankful	ungrateful/rude غير ممتن/وقح
present	حالي	current/existing	distant/previous بعيد/اسبق
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply/present	conceal يخفي
respond	يرد/يستجيب	answer/reply	question/request يستجوب/ايطلب
satisfactory	مترضي	sufficient/adequate	inappropriate غير مناسب
significant	هام/انومغزى	important	minor/unimportant غير هام

### Notes on Vocabulary

#### effect

#### affect

##### effect

▶ Burning petrol and gas has a bad **effect** on the environment.

تثير (يتبعه حرف الجر on/off)

##### affect

▶ Burning petrol and gas **affects** the environment badly.

يؤثر على (لا يتبعه حرف جر)

#### pause

#### silence

#### hesitation

##### pause

▶ There was a short **pause** before the minister continued his speech.

صمت/توقف شخص عن الكلام أو فعل شيء (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)

##### silence

▶ Nothing disturbed the **silence** of the night.

صمت/اسكوت (لفترة طويلة)

##### hesitation

▶ After some minutes of **hesitation**, we continued our way through the forest.

تردد/التوقف عن الحديث/فعل شيء لعدم الاطمئنان أو التأكد

## present

present (adj)

Carbon dioxide is one of the harmful gases **present** in the Earth's atmosphere.

حاضر على موجود

present (n)

I was given this book as a **present** from my father.

هدية

present (v)

The computer centre **presented** a cheque for £500 to cancer research.

يقدم

## Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

- \_\_\_\_\_ some children arrive at school **much earlier** than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.  
- لاحظ استخدام (**much**) قبل صفة المقارنة (**earlier**) للدلالة على الدرجة الكبيرة في المقارنة بمعنى (بكثير).
- Should** you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond to this email.  
- لاحظ استخدام (**Should + Sub. + inf.**) في بداية الجملة بديلاً لأداة الربط (**if**) للتعبير عن الشرط في الحالة الأولى.
- \_\_\_\_\_, because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives to **using** trains and buses, too.  
- لاحظ استخدام (**verb + ing**) وليس المصدر بعد (**to**) لاستخدامها كحرف جر بمعنى (أ).
- Our present project **is improving** the local playgrounds.  
- لاحظ استخدام (**improving**) بعد الفعل (**is**) كمتعول بمعنى (تحسن).



## Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We do not have much information about the earthquake at the \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
a) central                      b) present                      c) presented                      d) gifted
- The group finished their meal in total \_\_\_\_\_ after hearing the bad news.  
a) rejoice                      b) pause                      c) hesitation                      d) silence
- Eating junk food will eventually have a/an \_\_\_\_\_ on your health.  
a) affect                      b) effect                      c) infect                      d) defect
- Your opinion will not \_\_\_\_\_ my decision about joining university.  
a) affect                      b) effect                      c) infect                      d) defect

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We do not ..... this film suitable for young children as it has many violent scenes.  
a) consider                      b) accept                      c) agree                      d) expect
- 2 My secretary will call you to arrange a/an ..... time to meet.  
a) intensive                      b) convenient                      c) extensive                      d) scanned
- 3 There are twenty-six ..... in Egypt and Cairo is the biggest one.  
a) governors                      b) regions                      c) governorates                      d) districts
- 4 I'm so ..... for all the help and support my family gave me.  
a) helpful                      b) useful                      c) reliable                      d) grateful
- 5 The conference discussed a number of important environmental ..... such as global warming.  
a) trials                      b) causes                      c) reasons                      d) issues
- 6 The exhibition ..... an opportunity for local artists to show their work.  
a) prohibits                      b) provides                      c) prevents                      d) proclaims
- 7 More than a hundred people ..... to the job advertisement.  
a) responded                      b) reviewed                      c) received                      d) respected
- 8 Sameer got ..... grades and was offered a place at university.  
a) awful                      b) horrible                      c) satisfactory                      d) unsuitable
- 9 There are no simple ..... to the problem of overpopulation.  
a) divisions                      b) troubles                      c) solutions                      d) expectations
- 10 The defender's aggressive ..... of play sometimes gets him in trouble.  
a) list                      b) defence                      c) attack                      d) style
- 11 We worked very hard for four hours without a ..... to complete the report.  
a) pause                      b) silence                      c) trouble                      d) state
- 12 Please inform us if there are any ..... changes in your plans.  
a) sighted                      b) available                      c) significant                      d) useless
- 13 Doctors have always ..... the importance of exercise in the prevention of diseases.  
a) presses                      b) stressed                      c) denied                      d) doubted
- 14 Many children with mild ..... are integrated in general education.  
a) capabilities                      b) imaginations                      c) skulls                      d) disabilities
- 15 The water should be treated to reduce the ..... of pollution in it.  
a) steps                      b) grades                      c) levels                      d) ranks

- High-tech transport
- 16 The rainforests are important ..... habitats for animals of many kinds.  
a) humans                      b) wildlife                      c) biology                      d) crop
- 17 The memory of her brother's death is still ..... in her mind.  
a) present                      b) current                      c) dead                      d) available
- 18 This tropical forest ..... is characterized by frequent heavy rainfall.  
a) district                      b) suburb                      c) region                      d) countryside
- 19 We are destroying the ..... with our fossil fuel lifestyle.  
a) floor                      b) planet                      c) ground                      d) star
- 20 All energy companies are seeking ..... to fossil fuels.  
a) relatives                      b) representatives                      c) preservatives                      d) alternatives

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

- 21 The drug has had no significant effect on the disease. The antonym of the adjective "significant" is .....
- a) aspired                      b) appropriate                      c) suitable                      d) unimportant
- 22 You must ..... in mind that the price does not include flights.  
a) take                      b) give                      c) keep                      d) miss
- 23 The government announced a 25% decrease ..... the price of fuel.  
a) out                      b) about                      c) for                      d) in
- 24 On ..... of the department I would like to thank you all.  
a) account                      b) behalf                      c) expense                      d) grade
- 25 Computer technology makes it possible ..... many people to work from home.  
a) for                      b) in                      c) at                      d) on
- 26 There is real ..... in helping other people to overcome their problems.  
a) satisfy                      b) satisfied                      c) satisfactory                      d) satisfaction
- 27 Michael didn't respond to any of her emails. The synonym of the verb "respond" is .....
- a) send                      b) reply                      c) receive                      d) question
- 28 Customer service department try to be ..... to the needs of the customer.  
a) respond                      b) response                      c) responsive                      d) responded
- 29 Antibiotics are still the most ..... treatment for this disease.  
a) affect                      b) effect                      c) effective                      d) affecting
- 30 Eating too much sugar can lead ..... health problems.  
a) in                      b) to                      c) at                      d) away



## Future perfect (extra points)

يمكن استخدام **be going to** بدلاً من **will** في المستقبل التام وبعدها **have + P.P**

▶ By the time the guests arrive, we **are going to (will)** have prepared everything.

**Are you going to (Will you)** have finished by the time I am ready?

الجملة التي بعد الروابط الزمنية لا يستخدم فيها المستقبل من أي نوع ولكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام.

▶ I am going to travel when I **have finished** my studies.



NOT

▶ I am going to travel when I **will have finished** my studies.



## Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 By next June, I ..... to Spain.  
a) will be going    b) will go    c) will have gone    d) am going to go
- 2 I ..... 3 languages by the time I have finished this course.  
a) will learn    b) 'm going to have learnt  
c) am learning    d) will be learning
- 3 How many cities will you have visited by the time you .....?  
a) are retiring    b) will have retired  
c) will retire    d) retire
- 4 I will have been in Tokyo for three months before you ..... us.  
a) have joined    b) joined    c) will have joined    d) will join
- 5 You ..... your English by the time you come back from the U.S.  
a) are going to perfect    b) will have been perfected  
c) are going to have perfected    d) will perfect

## ملحوظة

كان الحدث لن يقع في المستقبل بل ستكون بدايته بحلول وقت معين نستخدم المستقبل البسيط وليس التام.

▶ By 2050, most drivers **will use** solar energy in their cars.

▶ In 10 years' time, robots **will do** everything instead of man.

## Future forms (Revision)

### Will

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Future facts حقائق المستقبل	▶ Tomorrow <b>will be</b> 29 Sept. 2018.
Prediction without evidence التنبؤ بدون دليل	▶ It <b>will rain</b> tomorrow. ▶ I think you <b>will pass</b> the test.
On-the-spot decision قرار فوري	▶ This bag is nice. I'll <b>buy</b> it.
With sure, think, expect, hope, probably, perhaps, promise, predict	▶ I'm sure my father <b>will buy</b> me a new mobile. ▶ He <b>will probably come</b> early tomorrow. ▶ I promise you that I'll <b>phone</b> you tonight.
Hoped, thought + would	▶ I thought (didn't expect) that she <b>would visit</b> us.
Offer العرض يكون جملة خبرية	▶ Since you are ill, I'll <b>clean</b> the room for you.
Request الطلب	▶ <b>Will you fetch</b> me my umbrella, please?
Warning التحذير	▶ If you don't study hard, you <b>won't get</b> high marks.
Threat التهديد	▶ I'll <b>punish</b> you if you insult your friend again.
Promise + to + Inf.	▶ I have promised them <b>to come</b> early tonight.
or + will (won't) + Inf.	▶ Get up early or you <b>won't catch</b> the train.

## 2

### Be going to

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Prediction with evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شيء يري)	▶ The wall is moving. It's <b>going to fall</b> . ▶ He is driving fast. I think he <b>is going to have</b> an accident.
Decide - intend - plan	▶ She's decided that she <b>is going to buy</b> a new dress.
Ambitions الطموحات	▶ I'm <b>going to be</b> a doctor. This is my ambition.
Look out! Be careful! Watch out! دلالة على قرب حدوث الفعل	▶ Look out! The dog <b>is going to bite</b> you. ▶ Be careful! The wall <b>is going to fall</b> .
Be careful + will تحذير من شيء ربما يحدث	▶ Be careful and save money or you <b>will suffer</b> in summer.
Be careful + present cont. تحذير من شيء على وشك الحدوث	▶ Be careful! A car <b>is coming</b> .

### Future continuous

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Will (won't) + be + v.ing	
May (may not) + be + v.ing	من الاحتمال نستخدم <b>may</b> يتم عن حدث سوف يستمر لفترة في المستقبل.
At + وقت في المستقبل	▶ I'll be watching the final match at 7 pm tomorrow.
From .... to + مستقبل	▶ From 3 to 5 tomorrow, I'll be visiting my relatives.
This time + مستقبل	▶ This time next week, we will be travelling to Luxor.
In + مدة + time	▶ In a week's time, Ali will be sitting for the final exam.
All ... + مستقبل	▶ You have a lot of homework. You will be doing it all day tomorrow.
A routine in the future	▶ Don't invite Samy by phone. I'll be meeting him tomorrow. المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر للأحداث المرتبة في المستقبل
Future continuous	▶ I'll be meeting my old friends tomorrow.
Present continuous	▶ I'm meeting my old friends tomorrow. إذا كان الحدث يستمر في المستقبل ولا يكون مرتبا نستخدم المستقبل المستمر فقط
Future continuous	▶ Don't phone me after 11 pm. I'll be sleeping. النوم لا يرتب

### Present simple

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
He, she, it, + اسم مفرد + v + s, es, or ies You, we, they, + اسم جمع + inf.	التكوين
Timetables جداول المواعيد	▶ The plane reaches London at 9 pm.
بعد الروابط الدالة على المستقبل	▶ Before the police arrive, I'll leave everything as it is. ▶ After he finishes his work, he will help me. ▶ When she writes the reports, she will give them to her boss.



Am/is/are+ v-ing	Examples
Fixed arrangements أشياء تم الترتيب لها	<p>▶ I'm <b>having</b> lunch with my uncle tomorrow.</p> <p>▶ She <b>is having</b> an interview for the new job tomorrow.</p>

## Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The train from Alexandria ..... at Giza station at 12:30.
  - a) will have arrived
  - b) arrives
  - c) will arrive
  - d) will be arriving
- 2 We ..... dinner at a seaside restaurant on next Sunday.
  - a) will have had
  - b) will have been having
  - c) are going to have
  - d) have
- 3 The English lesson ..... at 8:45.
  - a) starts
  - b) is starting
  - c) will have started
  - d) won't have started
- 4 When you get off the train, I ..... for you by the ticket machine.
  - a) will be waited
  - b) will be waiting
  - c) wait
  - d) am waiting
- 5 It's arranged. Ali ..... for Paris next Friday.
  - a) leaves
  - b) will have left
  - c) will leave
  - d) is leaving

# Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 She ..... her exams by 6 o'clock, so we can go out for dinner.  
a) will finish                      b) is finishing                      c) will have finished                      d) is going to finish
- 2 Do you think you ..... children by the time you are 30?  
a) will have                      b) will have had                      c) are going to have                      d) are having
- 3 When I see you tomorrow, I ..... you my new book.  
a) show                      b) will be showing                      c) will have shown                      d) will show
- 4 By the time he gets home, she ..... the entire house.  
a) is going to have cleaned                      b) will clean  
c) is going to clean                      d) will have been cleaned
- 5 We will wait at the station room until the train .....  
a) will come                      b) came                      c) had come                      d) comes
- 6 By the time you get here, I ..... watching the movie.  
a) will have finished                      b) will finish                      c) am going to finish                      d) finish
- 7 Will lunch ..... by the time we arrive?  
a) be eaten                      b) be eating                      c) have been eaten                      d) have eaten
- 8 They ..... the new Desert City centre by 2030.  
a) will establish                      b) are establishing  
c) establish                      d) will have established
- 9 Hurry up, it's ten to six. The film ..... by the time we get to the cinema.  
a) will have started                      b) will start                      c) won't start                      d) starts
- 10 I'm going to be a very rich man. I'm sure that by the time I'm forty I ..... my first million.  
a) will be making                      b) will make                      c) will have made                      d) have made
- 11 After Ahmed finishes this game, he ..... 6 computer games.  
a) will be playing                      b) will have played                      c) will be played                      d) is playing
- 12 A new bridge will ..... over the Nile by next year.  
a) be built                      b) be building                      c) have been built                      d) have built
- 13 I ..... this test by 3 o'clock.  
a) won't finish                      b) am going to finish  
c) won't be finishing                      d) am not going to have finished
- 14 On Friday at 8 o'clock, I ..... my friend.  
a) am meeting                      b) meet                      c) will have met                      d) will be met
- 15 You're carrying too much. I ..... the door for you.  
a) won't open                      b) will open                      c) will have opened                      d) will be opening
- 16 I'm sorry but you need to stay in the office until you ..... your work.  
a) finished                      b) will finish                      c) have finished                      d) will have finished

- 21 This time next week, I ..... for my first exam!  
 a) will be sitting      b) sat      c) will sit      d) will have sat
- 22 By this time tomorrow, we ..... all the furniture in the basement.  
 a) are going to put      b) will put      c) are putting      d) will have put
- 23 Why do you think more people ..... to use public transport in twenty years' time?  
 a) will have decided      b) will be decided      c) are deciding      d) will be deciding
- 24 Experts believe that by 2050 most people ..... electric vehicles.  
 a) will buy      b) will have bought      c) will be buying      d) are buying
- 25 By the time the new product goes on sale, the company ..... over \$10 million on promotion.  
 a) will be spent      b) will spend      c) will have spent      d) will be spending
- 26 I came to live in Spain in 2012. Next year I ..... here for ten years.  
 a) won't be      b) will be      c) will be being      d) will have been
- 27 By 2050, half of the world ..... English and communicate well with each other.  
 a) will speak      b) will have been spoken  
 c) will be spoken      d) is speaking
- 28 I promise to ..... these three pages by the time you come back home.  
 a) will have translated      b) will translate  
 c) have translated      d) translate
- 29 After I have read this novel, I ..... all Charles Dickens' novels.  
 a) will read      b) will be reading      c) have read      d) will have read
- 30 Sam is probably ..... the proposal by the time he leaves this afternoon.  
 a) completing      b) going to have completed  
 c) being completed      d) going to complete
- 31 Line 4 ..... the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city.  
 a) will be connected      b) is connected  
 c) will connect      d) will have been connected
- 32 In three years' time, most cars in Egypt ..... on natural gas or solar energy.  
 a) are running      b) will have been run      c) will be run      d) will run
- 33 "Our team will probably win the game tomorrow." The right situation to the sentence is .....  
 a) prediction      b) request      c) warning      d) promise
- 34 Which one of the following sentences is correct?  
 a) This time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
 b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
 c) By yesterday, I'll have cleaned the whole house.  
 d) Before tomorrow, I've cleaned the whole house.



A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport.

**Public transport** refers to the forms of transport that are available to the public. Examples include buses, trains, etc. These forms of transport charged set fares that depend on the distance of travel and run on fixed routes. Compared to using personal cars for transport from one place to another, public transport has advantages and disadvantages.

### **Advantages of Public Transport**

- ▶ Public transport benefits the entire community financially.
- ▶ Public transport reduces air pollution. Since it moves very many people on one vehicle.
- ▶ Public transport helps reduce traffic congestion.
- ▶ It is the only means in certain areas like the central business district of most urban centres.
- ▶ It allows people who cannot afford to buy their personal cars to get to school, work, grocery or even hospital.
- ▶ It eliminates the need to identify and pay for parking spaces at the various destinations.
- ▶ It is a lot safer than other means because the vehicles must meet high safety standards to be used for public transport.
- ▶ Since public transport follows fixed time schedules, a user can easily predict his or her arrival time.

### **Disadvantages of Public Transport**

- ▶ Public transport can be slower than travelling using your personal car due to strongly prescribed speed limits.
- ▶ It may not stop at the precise address that a passenger is travelling to forcing them to look for additional means.
- ▶ Travellers are crowded and personal space may not be available.
- ▶ If special hygiene is not practised, passengers can contract some communicable diseases due to the limited space.
- ▶ Breakdown of public transport vehicles can lead to huge loss of time for a large number of people.
- ▶ Most vehicles used for this means are not modified to suit people with disabilities.
- ▶ It has a low level of comfort. Public transportation is more comfortable to seat in a personal vehicle than in a public service vehicle.

## Practice

Complete the following dialogue:

**Khaled and Samir are talking about the pros and cons of public transport.**

**Khaled** : Hi Samir, what is your opinion about public transport?

**Samir** : I think it's a good means but it has some problems.

**Khaled** : .....

**Samir** : Of course, one disadvantage is that it wastes a lot of time another one is it's not comfortable.

**Khaled** : What about the advantages?

**Samir** : .....

**Khaled** : What do you suggest for improving public transport?

**Samir** : .....

**Khaled** : Thanks, Samir.

**Samir** : You are welcome.

## Life Skills

## Communication: Problem solving

Problem-solving skills are an important part of our lives. In a managerial set up, most of the work is problem centric. Problem-solving skills are, thus, important in the workplace.

**Skills for Problem Solving**

Different problems require a different set of skills to be solved. For example, solving a problem for a client requires not just knowledge but also good verbal, listening and persuasion skills. Solving a problem within the organisation with other employees require teamwork, coordination and effective communication among them. Hence, to improve problem-solving skills there needs to be effective communication and understanding of the situation.

**Efficient Methods of Problem Solving**

Problem-solving skills can be improved in many ways. There are four basic steps to efficient problem solving in any situation. They are:

1. **Defining and understanding the problem** is the first step to problem solving. It is important to look deeper into the problem beyond what might seem like the obvious.
2. Now that the core of the problem has been identified, we need to **search for alternative solutions** to fix the problem. The aim is to find the most efficient and rational solution that is agreeable to all the parties involved.
3. Once all the alternatives are considered, we need to **evaluate each and every single alternative** so that we can come to a conclusion by selecting the most rational solution. Selecting the solution also requires the opinion of the employees and staff, what they consider to be the best option and how the executives in higher positions would react to it.
4. **Executing the solution** requires the leadership of the manager and good and efficient coordination and communication with all the employees and entities. The problem will be directly handled at this stage and efforts will be made to change it.

**References:** <https://edgearticles.com/2018/07/09/public-transport-advantages-and-disadvantages-of-public-transport/>  
<https://www.communicationtheory.org/improving-problem-solving-skills/>

## A blog post

- You work with a group of volunteers helping the society. Write a post asking for volunteers.

### Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- ▶ Say what your group does to help in the area.
- ▶ Describe what issues you want to improve.
- ▶ Say how you want to do this.

We are a group of volunteers who are working with the local authority which looks after the river and canals in our town. We also help out with other local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is removing the rubbish in the river and canals near our town. These are important to get drinking water and for agriculture. However, there is a lot of rubbish in them and this is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to clean the river. We raised enough money for the equipment we will use and for hiring special vehicles to take the rubbish to landfill sites. We just need some young men and women to help us do the work.

We will be at the town youth hostel all day on Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> March. Come and join us at a time that is convenient.

## General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Flying is the most ..... way to travel in such a large country as China.  
a) minor                      b) convenient                      c) doubtful                      d) expected
  - We would be ..... for any information you can give us about the project.  
a) rude                      b) dependent                      c) grateful                      d) accepted
  - The writer is concerned with a variety of social ..... that have spread in our society.  
a) sizes                      b) causes                      c) cases                      d) issues
  - We are hoping the enquiry will ..... an explanation for the accident.  
a) provide                      b) take                      c) protect                      d) inhibit
  - The authority was seeking the best ..... to the city's traffic problem.  
a) evolution                      b) solution                      c) devotion                      d) proportion
  - Children have different ..... of learning: some learn by seeing, some by hearing, some by doing.  
a) curricula                      b) subject                      c) styles                      d) recipes
  - Because of his ....., John depended on his wife to dress and feed him.  
a) prize                      b) skill                      c) talent                      d) disability
  - The government is taking measures to protect Sinai's ..... such as the fox.  
a) weather                      b) landscape                      c) wildlife                      d) scenery
  - All public beaches get really ..... with visitors in summer.  
a) empty                      b) crowded                      c) fresh                      d) vague
  - We had a/an ..... about what we should buy for our mother's birthday.  
a) argument                      b) treaty                      c) truce                      d) battle
  - It is believed that every new system has its good ..... and its drawbacks.  
a) paints                      b) views                      c) points                      d) revisions
  - Teachers will be giving out copies of the new ..... in the first class today.  
a) timeline                      b) timetable                      c) time paste                      d) time list
  - The old bridge is closed for ..... of safety until it can be repaired.  
a) routines                      b) recipes                      c) results                      d) reasons
  - Mona spoke on ..... of the first year student at the college party.  
a) account                      b) behalf                      c) expense                      d) grade
  - Yasser had to ..... some research to find out how many had information about the new virus.  
a) design                      b) make                      c) do                      d) have



- 16 If you don't have a car, wait and I ..... you to the station.  
a) am driving      b) drive      c) will drive      d) will have driven
- 17 After you ..... a nap, you will feel a lot better.  
a) have taken      b) took      c) will take      d) will have taken
- 18 I ..... all of the books on the list by the end of the year.  
a) will read      b) read      c) am reading      d) will have read
- 19 Do you think you ..... to drive in five years' time?  
a) will have learnt      b) will be learned      c) are learning      d) learn
- 20 Hopefully, by this time next week I ..... my driving test and I'll finally be able to get a car.  
a) will pass      b) will have passed      c) have passed      d) will be passing
- 21 Once this room is finished, we ..... six of the seven rooms in the house. Not bad for two days' work.  
a) will be painting      b) will paint      c) will have painted      d) are painting
- 22 You ..... your project by the end of this term.  
a) will finish      b) will have been finished      c) will be finishing      d) will have finished
- 23 How many countries are you ..... by the time you turn 50?  
a) going to have visited      b) visiting      c) going to visit      d) being visited
- 24 Do you think the teacher ..... our homework by Monday morning?  
a) will be marking      b) will mark      c) will have marked      d) will have been marking
- 25 Before we start our next lesson, we ..... a review.  
a) are being having      b) are going to have      c) have      d) don't have

## 2 Correct the words between brackets:

I think that life in the future 1) (be) greatly different from our life today. First of all, by 2050, new sources of energy 2) (discover). Means of transport will be much more comfortable and 3) (fast). I think People 4) (log) on the internet to get all their needs. There will be a medical revolution which 5) (enable) doctors to cure serious diseases. Scientists expect to 6) (solve) all the problems related to global energy by 2050.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people who are looking to get a pet dog get a puppy. Puppies are cute, friendly, and playful. But there are good reasons why you should consider getting an adult dog instead.

You have to teach a puppy how to **behave**. The puppy is housebroken. You have to teach the puppy not to jump up on your guests or chew on your shoes. This is a lot of work.

On the other hand, an adult dog will already know how to do all of the previously mentioned things. Many adult dogs have already been housebroken. Many adult dogs will not jump on or chew things that you do not want them to jump on or chew. Puppies also have a lot of energy and want to play all of the time. Puppies will not always sleep through the night or let you relax as you watch television.

On the other hand, most adult dogs will wait on you to play. What is more, they will sleep when you are sleeping and are happy to watch television on the couch right beside you.

There is one last reason why you should get an adult dog instead of a puppy. When most people go to the pound to get a dog, they get a puppy. This means that many adult dogs spend a lot of time in the pound, and some never find good homes. So if you are looking to get a dog for a pet, you should think about getting an adult dog. They are good pets who need good homes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The author thinks that puppies are .....
  - a) bad pets because they take too much work to own
  - b) friendly, playful, and a lot of work
  - c) not as cute as adult dogs
  - d) not as playful as adult dogs
- 2 As used in paragraph 2, which is the best synonym for **behave**?
 

a) listen	b) understand
c) train	d) act

- 3 Based on information in the passage, which of the following statements is false?
- Puppies have a lot of energy.
  - Puppies need a lot of attention.
  - Many people get a puppy as a pet.
  - Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.
- 4 The phrase "On the other hand" is used to .....
- highlight an example
  - contrast previous information
  - contradict a later statement
  - support the upcoming paragraph

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- Why should you get an adult dog instead of a puppy? Give two reasons.
- Why, do you think, most people prefer puppies to adult dogs?
- Puppies can cause troubles unless they are trained. Give evidence.
- Dogs always have names like people. Name two.

**A) Translate into Arabic:**

- Modern technology plays an important role in the way people communicate with each other. Actually, it has made the world like a small village.
- In some countries, children are banned from using social networking sites until they are eighteen. Parents have to make sure of that.
- Some governments block harmful sites to protect their citizens from the drawbacks of the internet sites.
- Modern technology is a blessing if it is well used and it is a curse if it is misused. It is our responsibility to benefit from it and avoid its harms.
- Egypt was the first country outside Europe to win the Men's Youth World Handball Championship in 2019. The team was honoured by the President.
- The government is building one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam.

## B) Translate into English:

- ١- تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذان تهددهما النزاعات التي تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأجمعها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.
- ٢- كل عام يقصد الملايين من الناس أرواحهم أثناء محاولاتهم عبور البحر المتوسط للهجرة إلى أوروبا أعلين في حياة أفضل غير مدركين أن عملهم الجاد هو ما سيوفر لهم ذلك في أي مكان.
- ٣- يختلف احتفال الناس بالعناسبات المختلفة باختلاف ثقافتهم وعاداتهم وطرق تفكيرهم لكن كل هذه الاختلافات لا يجب أن تمنعهم من التعاون والتعايش السلمي.
- ٤- يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمار في البحث العلمي لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره واستفادة المجتمع من نتائجه مما سيؤدي إلى النهضة التي تسعى لها مصر.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

banned	ممنوعين	immigration	الهجرة
blessing	نعمة	renaissance	النهضة
block	يحبب	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية
curse	نقمة	stability	الاستقرار
disputes	النزاعات		

- 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

## "Ways to solve the traffic problem in Egypt"

**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

تابع مستواك الدراسي أسبوعياً  
من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات شاملة  
لجميع المواد  
حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

# Advanced & Open General Exercises

High-tech transport

8

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- 1 Solar energy is a safe alternative of fossil fuels such as oil and gas. The word "alternative" is similar in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) mission                      b) obligation  
c) necessity                      d) option                      e) substitute
- 2 The new management plan had a significant effect on the company which became better. The adjective "significant" can be the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) minor                      b) specific  
c) unimportant                      d) effective                      e) available
- 3 The young actress's expensive dress and jewellery attracted much \_\_\_\_\_ much at the party.
- a) review                      b) notice                      c) sign                      d) attention                      e) warning
- 4 The child was badly hurt when he had a/an \_\_\_\_\_ shock from one of the sets at the kitchen.
- a) electronic                      b) electrostatic                      c) electric                      d) electrical                      e) static
- 5 My father checked the train \_\_\_\_\_ for the day before choosing the right time for our trip.
- a) diagrams                      b) schedules                      c) tables                      d) columns                      e) timetables
- 6 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
- a) By this time next year, I'll be learning Spanish at university.  
b) Next week, I'll be learning 3 languages in addition to English.  
c) In two years' time, I will be studying Spanish at university.  
d) In two years' time, I'll have learnt 2 languages.  
e) This time next year, I'll have learnt 2 languages.
- 7 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
- a) After my father comes home, I'll do my homework.  
b) After my father comes home, I'll have done my homework.  
c) After my father will come home, I will do my homework.  
d) By the time my father comes home, I'll have done my homework.  
e) I won't have done my homework until my father comes home.
- 8 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
- a) I hope I will be passing my driving test by next week.  
b) I hope I will pass my driving test next week.  
c) I hope I have passed my driving test next week.  
d) I hope I will have passed my driving test by next week.  
e) I hope to have passed my driving test by next week.
- 9 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
- a) He will have walked 3 kilometres by the time he reaches his town.  
b) When he reaches his town, he will be walking 3 kilometres.  
c) After he reaches his town, he will have been walking 3 kilometres.  
d) When he reaches his town, he will have been walked 3 kilometres.  
e) He won't have walked 3 kilometres before he reaches his town.
- 10 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
- a) This time next week, everyone will have watched the final match.  
b) This time next week, everyone will be watching the final match.  
c) By next week, everyone will be watching the final match.  
d) Everyone won't be watching the final match by next week.  
e) In a week's time, everyone will be watching the final match.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 11 The writer's new novel is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of a short story he wrote about ten years ago.  
 a) expansion                      b) repetition                      c) publication                      d) publicity
- 12 The squash player finished the tournament in \_\_\_\_\_ by winning his last match very quickly and easily.  
 a) fashion                      b) style                      c) affection                      d) skill
- 13 Drawing, like writing, can be a \_\_\_\_\_ for expressing your feelings.  
 a) system                      b) form                      c) vehicle                      d) shape
- 14 Maha's husband was always nice to her in \_\_\_\_\_ but treated her badly at home.  
 a) general                      b) private                      c) special                      d) public
- 15 My little sister has a \_\_\_\_\_ for languages. She learns them quite easily.  
 a) reward                      b) present                      c) facility                      d) disability
- 16 You should take another medicine as colds do not \_\_\_\_\_ to antibiotics.  
 a) reply                      b) respond                      c) answer                      d) respect
- 17 The film we watched at the cinema could \_\_\_\_\_ us to 18<sup>th</sup> century England.  
 a) transport                      b) transmit                      c) transplant                      d) transfuse
- 18 My uncle is the chairman of a \_\_\_\_\_ of TV sports stations.  
 a) team                      b) lab                      c) network                      d) specialty
- 19 The cost of the new bridge would be in the \_\_\_\_\_ of 5 million pounds.  
 a) district                      b) speck                      c) area                      d) region
- 20 Some economic changes are taking place at national \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.  
 a) standard                      b) level                      c) stop                      d) airway
- 21 A: Where is Judy? B: She won't be here \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock.  
 a) after                      b) until                      c) by the time                      d) on
- 22 The guide showed the tourists the house \_\_\_\_\_ Charles Dickens died.  
 a) that                      b) which                      c) where                      d) when
- 23 Someone has taken my cassette recorder. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ would do a thing like that.  
 a) who                      b) what                      c) why                      d) which
- 24 I've been working \_\_\_\_\_ all day and I'm exhausted.  
 a) the hardest                      b) hardly                      c) harder                      d) hard
- 25 \_\_\_\_\_ he is nearly eighty, he is still very active.  
 a) Even                      b) Although                      c) Despite                      d) However
- 26 I'm taking the umbrella. It \_\_\_\_\_ rain.  
 a) should                      b) must                      c) may                      d) has to
- 27 Sherlock was cooking dinner in the kitchen while Shady \_\_\_\_\_ the dog.  
 a) was feeding                      b) is feeding                      c) has been feeding                      d) had been feeding
- 28 You can't leave the table until you \_\_\_\_\_ your dinner.  
 a) had finished                      b) finished                      c) will finish                      d) finish
- 29 Don't phone me tonight. I \_\_\_\_\_ for my French exam.  
 a) study                      b) will be studying                      c) will study                      d) will have studied
- 30 Hady was sunburnt because he \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach for 6 hours.  
 a) is sitting                      b) has been sitting                      c) had been sitting                      d) has sat

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 These books are also available in an ..... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.  
a) electricity      b) electric      c) electrical      d) electronic
- 2 The Suez Canal ..... is responsible for running and developing it.  
a) Responsibility      b) Authority      c) Validity      d) Expiry
- 3 Egypt has a lot of sports ..... which make it able to host international competitions.  
a) probabilities      b) facilities      c) accessibilities      d) availabilities
- 4 The ..... number of people who took part in the experiments of the corona vaccine in Egypt was nearly three thousand.  
a) vague      b) avoidable      c) available      d) total
- 5 Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very .....  
a) general      b) private      c) special      d) public
- 6 The new clerk doesn't think that the salary for his new job is ..... So, he is considering leaving it.  
a) awful      b) horrible      c) satisfactory      d) unsuitable
- 7 I don't think you ..... any problems when you land in Cairo.  
a) have      b) won't have      c) will have      d) aren't having
- 8 By the time he graduates, Tamer ..... all the necessary classes.  
a) will take      b) is going to take      c) takes      d) will have taken
- 9 They will have lived in Maadi ..... 10 years by next March.  
a) for      b) to      c) since      d) at
- 10 In one year, I ..... my English enough to have a longer conversation with someone.  
a) improve      b) will have improved  
c) will be improved      d) am improving
- 11 By this time next month, I hope they ..... the community centre.  
a) will be building      b) have built  
c) will build      d) will have built
- 12 We are already building a new shopping centre and we will ..... it by 2024.  
a) have completed      b) be completed  
c) complete      d) be completing
- 13 You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she .....  
a) won't leave      b) will leave      c) will have left      d) is leaving

- 14 Do you think you ..... writing that report by the time I get back?  
 a) will finish  
 b) will have finished  
 c) will be finishing  
 d) are finishing
- 15 By next month, I will ..... him for five years and I think he is reliable enough.  
 a) know  
 b) be knowing  
 c) have been knowing  
 d) have known
- 16 The project is going to ..... before the deadline.  
 a) have been completed  
 b) be completing  
 c) complete  
 d) have completed

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

People of long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.

Then later people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of highway. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So they became farmers as well as trades. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learned about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transportation grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.



A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 19 All the statements are true EXCEPT
- a) as trade and transportation grew, the population of river settlements also grew
  - b) as the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisations
  - c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of great civilisations
  - d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers
- 20 The word **cultivate** can best be replaced with "\_\_\_\_\_".
- a) obtain
  - b) look for
  - c) buy
  - d) grow
- 21 The best title for this passage would be \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) River water
  - b) River cities
  - c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
  - d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers
- 22 Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) farmers
  - b) travellers
  - c) farmers and traders
  - d) sailors

B) Answer the following questions:

- 23 Why did people of long ago settle along rivers? Give two reasons.
- 24 Why were river banks suitable for farming for the early settlers?
- 25 Rafts and boats helped people to do many things. Mention two.
- 26 Why do you think the land isn't as fertile as in the past? Give two reasons.

27 Translate into English:

- قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطيبة، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه.

28 Translate into Arabic:

If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

29 Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words** on the following:

"How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"

# Warm up



Every human activity has a result, whether good or bad.  
Look at the pictures, state the action and the expected results.



Action: .....  
Results: .....



Action: .....  
Results: .....



Action: .....  
Results: .....



Action: .....  
Results: .....



# Unit 9

# Conservation

## Objectives

**Reading** / An online article about the importance of conserving water and energy in our homes.





## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

blodiversity (n)	التنوع البيئي
challenging (adj)	متحد/صعب التحقيق
expedition (n)	بعثة/رحلة استكشافية
native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليين

preserve (v) (d)
scholarship (n)
species (n)

### Vocabulary on Reading

advert (n)	إعلان
conservation (n)	حفاظ/وقاية
creature (n)	مخلوق
culture (n)	ثقافة
digital (adj)	رقمي
endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر
ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
environment (n)	البيئة
face (n) (v) (d)	وجه/يواجه
forest (n)	غابة
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل/يشكل
generation (n)	جيل
industry (n)	صناعة
involved (adj)	منخرط في/متورط/مشارك
monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب
pollution (n)	التلوث

progress (n)
project (n)
rainforests (n)
recycling (n)
rewarding (adj)
slightly (adv)
survival (n)
task (n)
threat (n)
tourist (n)
unique (adj)
variety (n)
volunteer (n) (v) (ed)
waste (n) (v) (d)
well-known (adj)

## Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

actually (adv)	بالفعل	Great Barrier Reef	الحاجز المرجاني العظيم
bay (n)	خليج	limit (n)	حد/ قيد
coast (n)	ساحل	livestock (n)	مغشية
colony (n)	مستعمرة	partly (adv)	جزئياً
colourful (adj)	زاهى الألوان	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	return (v) (ed)	يرجع/ يعود
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	rule (n)	قاعدة/ قانون
council (n)	مجلس	site (n)	موقع
crop (n)	محصول	soil (n)	تربة
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى	sports fields (n)	ملاعب رياضية
diving (n)	الغطس	starfish (n)	نجم البحر
economy (n)	اقتصاد	tourism (n)	السياحة
exotic (adj)	مثير/ غريب		

## Workbook Vocabulary

art (n)	فن	rubbish (n)	قمامة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	souvenir (n)	تذكارات/ هدية تذكارية
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	state (n)	حالة
facilities (n)	مرافق/ إمكانيات/ تسهيلات	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/ يدعم/ يساند
female (n) (adj)	أنثى	tusk (n)	ناب الفيل
male (n) (adj)	رجل	typical (adj)	أصلي/ نمونجي
original (adj)	أصلي/ أساسي	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على		

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت
go on a trip/journey	ينذهب في رحلة
apply for	يتقدم بطلب
care for	يهتم بـ
difference between	اختلاف بين
fight for	يحارب/ يناضل من أجل

have a bath
keep ... clean
make sure
happen to
interested in
involved in
ready for

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/ تصرف	behavioural
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدى	challenging
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	حفاظا/ وقاية	conservative
pollute	يلوث	pollution	تلوث	polluted
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفاظا/ وقاية	preservative
recognise	يتعرف على	recognition	تعرف/ تمييز	recognisable
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable
support	يدعم/ يساند	support	دعم/ مساندة	supportive
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various

## Pre-reading question:

- Why do you think conservation is important in our life?

**Book your conservation volunteer trip today!**

Are you interested in conservation? Are you ready for a new challenge? If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent volunteer programmes for you.



- (1) يحفظ على
- (2) التنوع البيئي
- (3) نوع/أصيلة
- (4) متجدد/صعب التحقيق
- (5) السكان الأصليين
- (6) منحة دراسية

### A - New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us **preserve**<sup>(1)</sup> the country's unique **biodiversity**<sup>(2)</sup>. You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant **species**<sup>(3)</sup> in different areas. Another slightly more **challenging**<sup>(4)</sup> task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.

**Twenty-one days/Prices with flights from \$3,799**

### B - Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're involved in caring for elephants who used to take tourists on rides around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' progress as they start their new lives in the forest to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful creatures love to play with our volunteers almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

**Fourteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599**

### C - Brazil

Brazil is well-known for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native **inhabitants**<sup>(5)</sup> of the Amazon face exactly the same threat as the rainforests – they are also fighting for their survival. You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in digital form for future generations. What is more, you can apply for a **scholarship**<sup>(6)</sup> for the costs of this rewarding trip.

**Sixteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599**

**Post-reading question:** - How can you take part in preserving the biodiversity in Thailand?



# Check Point

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The forest is part of local history and should be .....
  - a) damaged
  - b) wasted
  - c) applied
  - d) preserved
- 2 Much of the area is covered with primary rainforest that conserves the ..... of the Amazon.
  - a) activity
  - b) climate
  - c) biodiversity
  - d) similarity
- 3 Climbing Everest is ..... for even the most experienced climbers.
  - a) challenging
  - b) simple
  - c) fragile
  - d) clear
- 4 The ..... inhabitants of America are now called the "Red Indians".
  - a) modern
  - b) native
  - c) mixed
  - d) foreign
- 5 This brilliant student won a ..... to study at the American University in Cairo.
  - a) race
  - b) medal
  - c) scholarship
  - d) league

تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة أسأل الأضواء  
وسينم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

www.aladwaa.com







## Listening Text (1)

### Pre-listening question:

How does conservation help us develop tourism?

My name's Mohamed Mansour and I'm reporting from a small town on the Red Sea **coast**<sup>(1)</sup> in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago it became clear that tourism was causing damage to the local environment.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit **diving**<sup>(2)</sup> centres at the same time. Local companies didn't use to put a **limit**<sup>(3)</sup> on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one reef. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the local **council**<sup>(4)</sup> decided to take action. There are now **rules**<sup>(5)</sup> about how many divers can be in one area at the same time. Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be facilities for local people like **sports fields**<sup>(6)</sup>, cafés and a cinema there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy.

Local people used to **complain**<sup>(7)</sup> about tourists in their town because it changed the lives that they were used to, but now they realise that the tourists can help local businesses and they're a lot happier to see them. This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more and they will then **return**<sup>(8)</sup> to the area more often, helping to support the local **economy**<sup>(9)</sup> into the future.

- (1) ساحل
- (2) الغطس
- (3) حد/قيود
- (4) مجلس
- (5) قواعد
- (6) ملاعب رياضية
- (7) يشكو
- (8) يرجع/يعود
- (9) اقتصاد

**Post-listening question:** - Do you agree with the rules which the council made to preserve the Red Sea Coast?



## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

**Presenter**

: Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the **Great Barrier Reef**<sup>(1)</sup> in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing.

The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many **colourful**<sup>(2)</sup> fish that live here.

In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this?

**Interviewee**

: First, let me explain what coral and reef is for your listeners. Coral is made from millions of very small sea animals. Corals live in groups called **colonies**<sup>(3)</sup>. Very large colonies are called reefs, like the Great Barrier Reef. Now, you asked me why the coral on the Great Barrier Reef is white. Well, it's **partly**<sup>(4)</sup> because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. Global warming is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is **starfish**<sup>(5)</sup>. In the past, there used to be many species of fish that ate the starfish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have **disappeared**<sup>(6)</sup>. There is nothing to eat the starfish, so today, the starfish **actually**<sup>(7)</sup> eat the coral.

Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral either.

**Presenter**

: So life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.

- (1) المرجان الكبير
- (2) ريش الألوان
- (3) مستعمرات
- (4) جزئياً
- (5) نجم البحر
- (6) اختفى
- (7) بالفعل

# Video Script

Conservation isn't only something people do in **exotic**<sup>(1)</sup> places. We need to preserve biodiversity in our own community too.

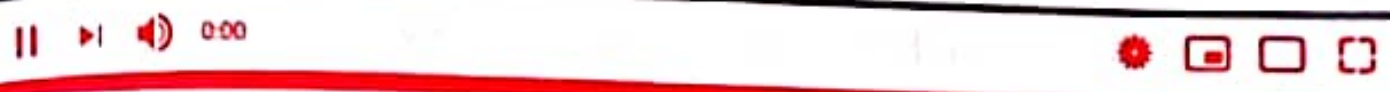
There are hundreds or even thousands of different plant species in your community. Stay on the path when you're walking outside, so you won't walk on the plants. Find out about the plant species in your area and grow them in your garden so there are more of them.

Try to buy meat, vegetables and dairy products from your area. This will help the farmers who produced them to continue to grow the same **crops**<sup>(2)</sup> and keep the same **livestock**<sup>(3)</sup> on their farms.

Try not to use too much water at home. Take a shower instead of a bath, and turn the water off while you're brushing your teeth.

Remember to recycle any rubbish that is made of glass, paper or plastic. Then it won't be added to the rubbish at a local rubbish **site**<sup>(4)</sup> which can pollute the **soil**<sup>(5)</sup> and water under it.

- (1) هئير/غريب
- (2) محاصيل
- (3) ماشية
- (4) موقع
- (5) تربة



## Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Most people in Cameron speak French as it was a former French African .....  
a) district                      b) attorney                      c) colony                      d) space
- 2 When you take any test, you'll have a time ..... to follow.  
a) border                      b) limit                      c) mark                      d) remark
- 3 Because of the lack of rain, ..... production was low last year.  
a) crop                      b) diary                      c) metal                      d) species
- 4 An increase in tourism will help the ..... of our country.  
a) research                      b) trade                      c) agriculture                      d) economy
- 5 The company has chosen a new ..... for its office building.  
a) scenery                      b) view                      c) site                      d) scene

Focus on Vocabulary

<p><b>biiodiversity (n)</b> التنوع البيئي</p>	<p>the variety of plants and animals in a particular place</p>
<p><b>challenging (adj)</b> متحد/صعب التحقيق</p>	<p>difficult in an interesting or enjoyable way</p>
<p><b>expedition (n)</b> بعثة</p>	<p>a long and carefully organised journey</p>
<p><b>native inhabitants (n)</b> السكان الأصليين</p>	<p>people who come from or have always lived in a particular place</p>
<p><b>preserve (v)</b> يحافظ على/يحفظ</p>	<p>to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed</p>
<p><b>scholarship (n)</b> منحة دراسية</p>	<p>an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organisation to help pay for their education</p>
<p><b>species (n)</b> نوع/جنس</p>	<p>a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants</p>

Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العضاد
complain	يشكو	protest	approve تحسن
conservation	حفاظ	preservation	destruction تدمير
ensure	يضمن	guarantee	deny إنكار
monitor	يراقب	observe	ignore تجاهل
preserve	يحفظ	keep	abandon يتخلى/يهاجر
rewarding	مجزي/مرضي	profitable	worthless قبيحة
support	دعم	backing	disapproval م استحسن
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility م مسؤولية
unique	متعيز	extraordinary	common عادي
variety	تنوع	diversity	similarity شبه

## Notes on Vocabulary



## Journey

## trip

## expedition

**Journey** = when you travel from one place to another – used especially about travelling a long distance, or travelling somewhere regularly  
رحلة طويلة أو معتادة.

Although the train **journey** to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.

**Trip** = a journey to visit a place or for a particular purpose  
رحلة قصيرة الغرض معين-لمكان محسباً

My father went on a business **trip** to China to buy new machines.

**Expedition** = a long and carefully organised journey, especially to a dangerous or unfamiliar place  
بعثة (رحلة منظمة خاصة إلى مكان خطر أو غير معتاد)

The soldiers were sent into a military **expedition** behind enemy lines.

## realise

## recognise

realise

١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئاً)

٢- يحقق (شيئاً كان يتمناه)

Do you **realise** you're an hour late?

She never **realised** her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise

١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصاً أو شيئاً لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)

٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء

I didn't **recognise** you in your uniform.

The new doctor tried to get his work **recognised** by the medical profession.

## coast

## shore

## beach

## bank

The government **set up** many tourist villages along the north **coast** of the Red Sea.  
ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)

The ship reached the **shore** after a long voyage.  
شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة محاذي لحافة البحر)

People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the **beach**.  
بلاج (شاطئ ممتع)

The hotel is located on the river **bank**.  
ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)

## help

### help

- ▶ My teacher **helped** me **do** my research.
- ▶ My teacher **helped** me **to do** my research.
- ▶ My teacher **helped** me **with** my research.

(I can't help + v-ing)

- ▶ I **can't help laughing** every time I see my funny neighbour.

تعليم الفعل (help) بمعنى يساعد بأكثر من صيغة بعده

نظ أيضاً الاستخدام التالي:  
تستطيع أن تمنع نفسك من:

## Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

- 1 You'll plant trees **so that** endangered birds have a **far better** environment to live in.  
تعليم أداة الربط (so that) بمعنى لكي، كما لاحظ استخدام (far) قبل صفة التفضيل بمعنى (أفضل بكثير).
- 2 Another slightly more challenging task **is cleaning** beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.  
تعليم صيغة (verb + ing) (cleaning) بعد (is) هنا ليس زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن (cleaning) هنا (التنظيف) بمثابة مفعول
- 3 ..... face exactly **the same** threat **as** the rainforests  
تعليم استخدام (as) كحرف جر بعد (the same)
- 4 Now about two **million** people visit every year.  
تعليم استخدام (million) في صيغة المفرد بعد (two) أما الشيء/الشخص المحدود هو ما يأتي في صيغة الجمع (people).

## Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Lamia took a good book to read as she knew it was a long, boring .....  
a) journey                      b) trip                      c) expedition                      d) mission
- 2 The boy jumped in and swam to the opposite ..... of the small lake.  
a) coast                      b) bank                      c) beach                      d) harbour
- 3 When he watched the TV show, he ..... he'd seen it before.  
a) forgot                      b) organised                      c) recognised                      d) realised
- 4 We always help our mother the ..... housework.  
a) by                      b) at                      c) with                      d) for
- 5 The Red Sea ..... is famous for its fish, corals and beautiful wildlife.  
a) coast                      b) beach                      c) bank                      d) ocean

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 This ..... of desert plant is becoming increasingly rare.  
a) device                      b) species                      c) spice                      d) gender
- 2 Scientists and geographers went on ..... to explore the River Nile especially in the 19th century.  
a) duties                      b) tasks                      c) expeditions                      d) picnics
- 3 The blue whale is the largest ..... that has ever lived on earth.  
a) creature                      b) feature                      c) pleasure                      d) adventure
- 4 The art, beliefs, behaviour and ideas of a particular society or group of people are their .....  
a) industry                      b) agriculture                      c) commerce                      d) culture
- 5 Chemical waste from cars and factories is harmful to the .....  
a) environment                      b) involvement                      c) excavation                      d) space
- 6 The poor child said that he ..... terrible conditions after his father's death.  
a) involved                      b) fetched                      c) faced                      d) enjoyed
- 7 The workers are working overtime to finish the engineering ..... on time.  
a) task                      b) project                      c) object                      d) process
- 8 The new factory near the river makes water ..... in the area worse.  
a) action                      b) money                      c) pollution                      d) operation
- 9 Egypt hopes to make ..... in all economic and financial fields.  
a) decrease                      b) failure                      c) effects                      d) progress
- 10 Some countries depend on ..... because it is very important for their national income.  
a) tours                      b) culture                      c) tourism                      d) terrorism
- 11 The assistant at the gallery pointed out **يلفت النظر** that not one of these paintings is ..... , but they are copied cleverly.  
a) fake                      b) original                      c) stolen                      d) normal
- 12 My parents always ..... that I waste much time chatting with my friends online.  
a) complain                      b) explain                      c) greet                      d) salute
- 13 Citizens must pay taxes **ضرائب** to ..... the services and programs of the government.  
a) report                      b) import                      c) export                      d) support
- 14 Galapagos Island has more ..... in plant life than other islands nearby.  
a) biology                      b) biodiversity                      c) biochemistry                      d) terrorism
- 15 The native ..... of the Amazon depend on the rainforests for their life.  
a) pioneers                      b) discoverers                      c) inhabitants                      d) players

- 16 We need to take action to help ..... fish stocks in the Nile.  
 a) damage                      b) pollute                      c) comply                      d) preserve
- 17 We must keep our armed forces in a constant ..... of readiness.  
 a) state                      b) statue                      c) battle                      d) training
- 18 Messi's talents make him a truly ..... footballer in the world.  
 a) common                      b) unique                      c) simple                      d) ordinary
- 19 The poor young man won a ..... and got a college education.  
 a) race                      b) fair                      c) scholarship                      d) tournament
- 20 My cousin lives in a small island off the north ..... of Australia.  
 a) coast                      b) beach                      c) bank                      d) side
- 21 The hotel has special ..... for welcoming disabled people such as stairs and  
 a) fabrics                      b) accessories                      c) abilities                      d) facilities

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** EXERCISE

- 22 The word "similarity" is an antonym to the word .....  
 a) commodity                      b) availability                      c) variety                      d) responsibility
- 23 Teaching young children is considered a/an ..... and rewarding job.  
 a) challenge                      b) challenged                      c) challenging                      d) unchallenging
- 24 It is very kind of you to care ..... your old parents.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) by                      d) for
- 25 Ali has improved his ..... since he joined the summer camp.  
 a) behave                      b) behaving                      c) behaviour                      d) behaved
- 26 Samira is very interested ..... medicine and wants to be a doctor.  
 a) to                      b) of                      c) for                      d) in
- 27 My father really agrees with the idea that women can have children and a job ..... the same time.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) with                      d) of
- 28 My mother insists that we all should ..... a bath before going to bed.  
 a) have                      b) give                      c) do                      d) devise
- 29 When Nahla finishes university, she's going to apply ..... a job abroad.  
 a) with                      b) for                      c) to                      d) at
- 30 The word "guarantee" is similar in meaning to the word .....  
 a) ensure                      b) injury                      c) health                      d) inquiry





## Language

### Comparative phrases

عند المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تبين ما إذا كان الشئين أو الشخصين متساويين أم هناك فارق كبير أو صغير في الصفة المشتركة بينهم:

**1 exactly the same (noun) as .....**

وجه المقارنة الثاني \* **exactly the same (noun) as** + وجه المقارنة الأول

- ▶ Your bag is **exactly the same as** my bag.
- ▶ Your bag is **exactly the same colour as** my bag.
- ▶ Ola is **as old as** Hala. They are **exactly the same age**.
- ▶ My father does **exactly the same job as** your father.

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شئين.

**2 almost as + adj. صفة + as**

- ▶ I'm **almost as tall as** my brother.
- ▶ We're **almost as good at maths as** you.
- ▶ The trip to New Zealand is **slightly more expensive than** the trip to Brazil.

**slightly + صفة مقارنة + than**

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيراً بين شخصين أو شئين.

**3 far + صفة مقارنة + than**

- ▶ In my opinion, working on a farm is **far more interesting than** counting plants.

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبيراً بين شخصين أو شئين.

تنبيه هام: يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية.

### Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Reham thinks that her friend is ..... than her.
  - a) slightly prettier
  - b) more pretty
  - c) more prettier
  - d) as pretty
- 2 My house is exactly ..... as my neighbour's.
  - a) wide
  - b) wider
  - c) the same width
  - d) the same wide
- 3 Toyota is ..... fast as Peugeot.
  - a) almost
  - b) almost as
  - c) exactly
  - d) slightly as
- 4 Wood is ..... than gold, but in some cases it is more useful.
  - a) as cheap
  - b) more cheaper
  - c) cheapest
  - d) far cheaper
- 5 Having water in the desert is far ..... having money, although they are both useful.
  - a) as important as
  - b) more important than
  - c) important than
  - d) important as

Past habits

يستخدم عن عادات الماضي يمكن استخدام:

2

1 Past simple

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضي المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل،

- ▶ Always, often, every day ..... etc.
- ▶ When I was young, I always **walked** to school.

2 Used to

يستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضي والروتين والحقائق التي كانت قديماً ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

- ▶ I **used to have** a bike, but now I don't.
- ▶ My father **used to be** a teacher, but now he is a manager in a big company.
- ▶ I **used to play** for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

السؤال والنفي نحذف **d** ونستخدم **use** بعد **Did/didn't**

Yes/No questions

Did	Subject	use to	base form			
Did	you	use to	have a mobile phone when	you	were	young?
	she			she	was	
	they			they	were	

Negative

Subject	didn't	use to	base form			
I	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	I	was	young
She				she	was	
They				they	were	

نضم **used to** أيضاً للأشياء التي كانت دائماً حقيقية ولم تعد الآن:

- ▶ This building is now a furniture shop. It **used to be** a cinema.
- ▶ Jeans **used to come** only in blue. Now you can buy them in any colour.

Subj. + used to + inf. , but now + present simple.

ملحوظة:

- ▶ He **used to sleep** early, but now he **sleeps** late.

**Would + inf.**

نستخدم **would + inf** للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطي المتكرر في الماضي وليس عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

At weekends, my father **would go** and buy fruit and also he **would buy** me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء مستقبلية مثل إعلانات شخص لشراء أو وظيفة لديه.

I **used to have** a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: ~~I would have a bike~~.)

Hotel companies **would buy** the best land in the town. There **used to be** a lot of tourists. (NOT: ~~There would be a lot of tourists~~.)

would لا تستخدم مع state verbs **لاحتفظ**

I **used to know** much about football. (NOT: ~~I would know much about football~~.)

**Check Point 5**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He usually \_\_\_\_\_ late for the training sessions when he was a member in the team.
  - a) arrive
  - b) arrives
  - c) used to arrive
  - d) arrived
- 2 When we were on holiday, we \_\_\_\_\_ up early every day and spend all day on the beach.
  - a) get
  - b) would get
  - c) got
  - d) will get
- 3 When I was young, I \_\_\_\_\_ in Assuit.
  - a) used to live
  - b) would live
  - c) was lived
  - d) had lived
- 4 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ an actor when he was a student.
  - a) had been
  - b) would be
  - c) used to be
  - d) didn't used to be
- 5 When we were children, we \_\_\_\_\_ went to Alex for the summer holidays.
  - a) used to
  - b) would
  - c) didn't
  - d) always

# Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The teacher was angry with Galal because he asked ..... question as his friend.  
a) slightly as same    b) far the same    c) exactly same    d) exactly the same
- 2 Your marks are ..... mine.  
a) almost good as    b) almost as good as    c) good as    d) slightly good as
- 3 When I visited the city centre, it was ..... less crowded than usual.  
a) slightly    b) more    c) so    d) as
- 4 To me, English is ..... than physics.  
a) easy    b) much easy    c) far easier    d) almost easier
- 5 Mr Osama is wearing ..... the same suit as me.  
a) far    b) slightly    c) much    d) exactly
- 6 My new flat is ..... as the old one.  
a) slightly as wide    b) slightly wider    c) almost as wide    d) so wide
- 7 The exam was slightly ..... than I expected.  
a) easier    b) as easy    c) much easier    d) easy
- 8 Ali is loved by all as he is ..... patient than his brothers.  
a) as    b) far more    c) so    d) more much
- 9 Whenever we stay at this hotel, we sleep exactly in ..... room.  
a) the same    b) same    c) the same as    d) as the same
- 10 Petrol is ..... expensive as it was last year.  
a) slightly than    b) almost than    c) almost    d) almost as
- 11 Can you walk ..... more slowly?  
a) almost    b) such    c) slightly    d) lot
- 12 It's strange to find that BMW is exactly the same price ..... Toyota.  
a) than    b) as    c) from    d) at
- 13 Their house is almost two times as big ..... ours.  
a) as    b) than    c) of    d) to
- 14 Going by train is slightly ..... than driving.  
a) much expensive    b) expensive    c) more expensive    d) as expensive
- 15 It's ..... cheaper to drive than go by plane.  
a) almost    b) as    c) more    d) far

1. When I was younger, I ..... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.  
 a) am used to go      b) would go      c) went      d) go
2. When I was a student, I always finished my homework and then ..... TV for an hour.  
 a) used to watch      b) watched      c) watching      d) watch
3. When he was young, he ..... his bike to school.  
 a) rides      b) was riding      c) used to ride      d) had ridden
4. When we were children, mother ..... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.  
 a) would      b) was used to      c) wasn't used to      d) didn't used to
5. There ..... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.  
 a) didn't use to be      b) used to be  
 c) would be      d) didn't use to have
6. He used to be a driver, but now he .....  
 a) does      b) doesn't      c) isn't      d) has
7. Tourists visiting Egypt ..... in the hotel restaurants rather than local restaurants.  
 a) use to eat      b) would eat      c) were eating      d) had eaten
8. On holidays, Mum ..... me a big breakfast.  
 a) was making      b) is making  
 c) would always make      d) had made
9. Did she ..... cry a lot when she was a baby?  
 a) use to      b) used to      c) using      d) be used to
10. When Ali was a student, he ..... a long beard and short hair.  
 a) would have      b) has had      c) has      d) used to have
11. When he was a driver, my dad ..... home from work at 7 pm.  
 a) had arrived      b) arrives  
 c) used to arriving      d) would always arrive
12. When I was a teenager, I ..... my grandparents and help them bake bread.  
 a) was visiting      b) visit  
 c) am used to visiting      d) would visit
13. He used to send letters to his friends, but now he ..... e-mails.  
 a) was sending      b) used to send      c) is sending      d) sends
14. He used to have a bike, but now he .....  
 a) hasn't      b) doesn't      c) isn't      d) does
15. Ola's laptop ..... very good. But now she can't download photos from the internet.  
 a) didn't use to be      b) used to be      c) wasn't      d) be used to

## General Exercises (Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It is important to encourage environmental ..... and awareness among ordinary people.  
a) accommodation    b) convention    c) conservation    d) preparation
- 2 We live in a/an ..... age where everything can be downloaded.  
a) digital    b) speedy    c) historical    d) artistic
- 3 The sea turtle is a/an ..... species which needs great efforts to preserve.  
a) extinct    b) endangered    c) lasting    d) banishing
- 4 The medicine can be taken in the ..... of a liquid or pill.  
a) device    b) figure    c) equation    d) form
- 5 We need a better system for ..... animals in the national park.  
a) building    b) monitoring    c) designing    d) devising
- 6 A ..... is a part of the sea that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land.  
a) cliff    b) bay    c) wave    d) ring
- 7 The Red Sea coast is well-known for the amazing ..... reefs.  
a) coral    b) shark    c) dolphin    d) turtle
- 8 The open ..... exhibition will allow new artists to exhibit **يعرض** their work.  
a) war    b) book    c) movie    d) art
- 9 I ..... my old friend as soon as he came in the room.  
a) recognised    b) realised    c) organised    d) verbalised
- 10 The increasing use of pesticides **مبيدات زراعية** threatens the ..... of the area.  
a) workforce    b) employment    c) wildlife    d) economy
- 11 The army generals decided to launch a military ..... to the region.  
a) journey    b) expedition    c) trip    d) picnic
- 12 Because of his physical condition, taking part in the race was a ..... job.  
a) challenge    b) changing    c) challenging    d) challengeable
- 13 School students collected tons of drinks cans and bottles for .....  
a) agriculture    b) exploration    c) invention    d) recycling
- 14 The word "abandon" can be the opposite to the word .....  
a) quit    b) ignore    c) preserve    d) neglect
- 15 The noun "duty" is a synonym to the noun .....  
a) voyage    b) right    c) effort    d) task
- 16 My brother leaves home exactly at ..... time as my father.  
a) better    b) same    c) good    d) the same

- 17 When I was young, mother ..... me stories.  
 a) should tell                      b) would tell                      c) had told                      d) is used to tell
- 18 Let's walk. It's almost ..... taking the bus.  
 a) as quick than                      b) as quickly as                      c) as quick as                      d) quicker as
- 19 Osama ..... much hair, but now he is almost bald.  
 a) used to have                      b) would have                      c) almost has                      d) didn't have
- 20 My room is ....., but I'd prefer a bigger one.  
 a) much big                      b) bigger                      c) too big                      d) slightly big
- 21 My father ..... slim, but now he suffers from obesity.  
 a) would be                      b) had been                      c) used to be                      d) wasn't
- 22 What food ..... like when you were ten?  
 a) did you use to                      b) you used to                      c) do you use to                      d) would you to
- 23 I'm afraid the problem is ..... complicated than it seems.  
 a) lot more                      b) far more                      c) as                      d) much
- 24 It's not warm, it is ..... yesterday.  
 a) almost as cold than                      b) almost as cold  
 c) almost as colder than                      d) almost as cold as
- 25 Sara ..... a novel every week when she was young.  
 a) would read                      b) read                      c) reads                      d) was reading

**2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:**

**facilities - conservation - biodiversity - endangered - environment - volunteers**

Wild animals should ideally only live in their natural .....(1)..... . However, there are many problems which can lead them to live in special places known as sanctuaries. Some of these problems are .....(2)..... loss, environmental change and habitat destruction. The need for .....(3)..... to care for these animal victims is very important. In these places, .....(4)..... work with highly skilled experts to protect some .....(5)..... animals. They can treat wounded animals and provide any possible help for them. These volunteers also help spread awareness about animal and plants .....(6)..... .

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

Many people are interested in knowing about animals. I (1) (didn't use/used) to know about animals, but now I do. Lately, I've read about the Indian and African elephants. Although they are (2) (slightly/exactly) the same as each other, there are some differences. African elephants are (3) (larger/as large) than Indian elephants, while African elephants' ears are usually (4) (more/far) smaller than Indian elephants. Only the male Indian elephant has (5) (exactly/far) the same tusks as the female African elephant. The female's tusks are (6) (almost/slightly) as big as the male elephant's.

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today, many people use natural ways to cure illnesses that don't cause side effects. 'Acupuncture' and 'biofeedback' are two popular methods. Doctors have been using 'acupuncture' in China for over two thousand years. It involves pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body. Ancient Chinese philosophers believed that they were connected to different organs and could cure diseases. Today, 'acupuncture' is used in many countries, and studies show that it works especially for headaches, backaches and smoking. Since 1950 doctors in China have also been using 'acupuncture' in major operations. Patients are awake and know what is happening in the operation but they feel little or no pain. Scientists think that the needles make the body produce a chemical called 'endorphin' that helps to reduce the feeling of pain.

Another natural way to cure illnesses is 'biofeedback'. It uses a technology to help people control their internal organs. For example, if a person has a problem with sleeping, he/she is connected to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain. The person then is asked to do some mental exercise to relax. When the brain activity falls and the person is relaxed, the computer makes a noise. Slowly, the person learns what type of mental exercise can help him/her to reduce the activity of the brain.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Doctors in China have been using 'acupuncture' in operations for about \_\_\_\_  
 a) 50 years                      b) 65 years                      c) 70 years                      d) 80 years
- 2 Endorphin \_\_\_\_\_ the feeling of pain.  
 a) increases                      b) grows                      c) decreases                      d) expands
- 3 The word \_\_\_\_\_ is the best synonym to the word "awake".  
 a) conscious                      b) unaware                      c) ignorant                      d) unfamiliar
- 4 According to the passage, which one of the following is not true?  
 a) Natural ways to cure illnesses don't cause side effects.  
 b) Technology can be used with natural ways to cure illnesses.  
 c) During operations, people know what is happening.  
 d) Robots help people with sleeping problems.

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5 Why do many people prefer 'acupuncture' and 'biofeedback' to cure diseases?
- 6 How do doctors use 'acupuncture' in operations?
- 7 'Biofeedback' uses technology to help people control their internal organs. Explain.
- 8 Why do you think the world can't depend on natural remedies only?



### A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Both environment conservation and preservation are important. Conservation protects the environment through the responsible use of natural resources. Preservation protects the environment from harmful human activities.
2. Starting the school year during the COVID-19 pandemic was a big challenge. However, the Ministry of Education had a plan which was carried out efficiently by most schools.
3. Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.
4. We must find a solution to the problem of over-population. It can hinder development and cause many other serious problems.
5. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. So, we should all get used to everyday exercise.
6. Lifelong learning provides us with active minds and confidence to face life obstacles. It also helps any country's economic development.


### B) Translate into English:

- ١- رغم وصول بعض شركات الأدوية إلى لقاحات لفيروس كورونا يظل وصولها للناس تحدينا كبيرا يواجه المؤسسات الطبية في كل دول العالم الغنية والفقيرة على السواء.
- ٢- تؤكد منظمة الصحة العالمية على أنه يجب على الدول الغنية مساعدة الدول الفقيرة على توفير اللقاحات المكتشفة لفيروس كورونا لأكثر عدد من الناس في أسرع وقت ممكن.
- ٣- لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التي تثرى معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم، بل يفضلون مشاهدة أفلام الحركة و الرعب التي قد تسبب المشكلات لبعضهم.
- ٤- يجب أن تكون المنتجات العصرية عالية الجودة لكي تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى في الأسواق العالمية؛ لذا تحتم الحكومة بتدريب كل العاملين على أحدث طرق الإنتاج.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

confidence	الثقة بالنفس	medical	الطبية
documentaries	الأفلام الوثائقية	obstacles	عقبات
efficiently	بكفاءة	of high quality	عالية الجودة
frustration	إحباط	over-population	الزيادة السكانية
get rid	يتخلص	pandemic	جائحة
hinder	يعوق	priority	أولوية
institutions	مؤسسات	resources	موارد
knowledge	معرفة	urgent	عاجل/ ملح
lifelong	مدى الحياة	vaccines	لقاحات

- 6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:  
"How can we be ready for the problem of water shortage?"

 Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز
arise (v)	ينشأ
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد
career (n)	حياة مهنية
certain (adj)	محدد
community (n)	مجتمع
consequently (conj.)	بناءً على ذلك
contacts (n)	اتصالات/معارف
contrast (n)	تناقض
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر
goal (n)	هدف
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحدث/يوحى بـ
lead (v)	يقود/يؤدي

leader (n)	قائد
majority (n)	أغلبية
mental (adj)	عقلي
opportunity (n)	فرصة
organisation (n)	منظمة
positive (adj)	إيجابي
psychological (adj)	نفسى
purpose (n)	غرض
related (adj)	مرتبط
significant (adj)	تومغزى/تو أهمية
specific (adj)	محدد
suitable (adj)	مناسب
valuable (adj)	قيم
volunteering (n)	تطوع

## Vocabulary on Listening

cost (v)	يتكلف
discussion (n)	مناقشة
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول
operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط/ يجمع
program (n)	برنامج
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى

repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
sign (n) (v) (ed)	علامة/لافتة
skateboard (n) (v) (ed)	لوح تزلج/ايتزلج بلوح
skatepark (n)	مسارح للتزلج
solve (v) (d)	يحل
sound (v) (ed)	يسمى
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
visible (adj)	مرئى
youth (n)	شباب

## Workbook Vocabulary

argue (v) (d)	يجادل
charity (n)	عمل خيري / مؤسسة خيرية
definition (n)	تعريف
download (v) (ed)	يحمل
eventually (adv.)	أخيراً / في النهاية
expert (n)	خبير
expression (n)	تعبير
formal (adj)	رسمي

gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على / يكتسب
necessary (adj)	ضروري
result in (v) (ed)	يتبع عنه
reward (v) (ed)	مكافأة / يكافئ
shade (n)	ظل
solution (n)	حل
sunny (adj)	شمس

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as a result	نتيجة لذلك	make contacts	يكون صداقات / معارف
give ... the opportunity	يعطي ... الفرصة	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
go diving	يمارس الغطس	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
aim of	هدف لـ	contrast between	تناقض بين
arise from	ينشأ من	download from	يحمل من
benefit for	فائدة لـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
contact with	يتصل بـ	result of	نتيجة لـ

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق / ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved	محقق
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
define	يعرف	definition	تعريف	argumentative	جدلي
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	defined	محدد / معرف
explain	يفسر / يشرح	explanation	شرح / تفسير	existed	موجود
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	explanatory	تفسيري
				expressive	معبر

inspire	يلهم/يحث	inspiration	الإلهام/الإحاء	inspiring	ملهم/اموحي بـ
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxing/relaxed	مريح/مسترخ
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solved	محلول
value	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم



Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

Pre-reading question:

- How can volunteering benefit young people?

Can volunteering benefit young people today?

Several research studies have proven that significant psychological benefits that can **arise from**<sup>(1)</sup> volunteering, for people of any age. For young people though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them. In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further important benefit is that young people can develop useful skills and valuable experience. These can prove extremely useful **not only**<sup>(2)</sup> at school, **but also**<sup>(3)</sup> in their careers. For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may **lead to**<sup>(4)</sup> paid work. Volunteering could also provide the opportunity to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts. A majority of volunteers work together **in order to**<sup>(5)</sup> achieve a specific goal. **Consequently**<sup>(6)</sup>, they often get to know each other very well and team leaders may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion, it is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers involved. **However**<sup>(7)</sup>, as I explained above, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.

Post-reading question: - Would you like to share in voluntary work? Why?

(1) ينشأ من

(2) ليس فقط

(3) ولكن أيضا

(4) يؤدي إلى

(5) لكي

(6) بناء على ذلك

(7) مع ذلك



## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

### The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

### Possible solutions

1. Give sun shades to all the students so that they can stay out of the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop so it is next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

العب و تعلم  
تواصل مع أصدقائك واستمتعوا معًا بتجربة التعلم  
التررفيهي مع مجتمع الأضواء.  
فضل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال  
www.aladwaa.com



## We should reward all volunteers

Some people argue that we should reward volunteers by giving them some money for their work. **However** I believe that this is not necessary. Why is this?

The definition of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many charities need volunteers **in order to** help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people. **consequently**, they do not have enough money to pay volunteers.

So why should volunteers work for no money? **Not only** do volunteers gain valuable experience from volunteering, **but** they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that voluntary work can eventually **lead to** a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that **arise from** volunteering rather than being paid.



### Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The life of Taha Hussein has always ..... people to improve their lives.  
a) aspired                      b) inspired                      c) respired                      d) expired
- 2 The size of the garden was a ..... factor in my decision to buy the house.  
I always wanted a large one.  
a) valueless                      b) harmful                      c) significant                      d) trivial
- 3 Doctors believe that thousands of patients have ..... from the new  
treatment so far.  
a) harmed                      b) injured                      c) healed                      d) benefited
- 4 The rich man's most ..... belongings were locked in a safe in his bedroom.  
a) valuable                      b) valueless                      c) devalued                      d) unvalued
- 5 The young doctor works with children who have ..... problems such as  
sleep troubles.  
a) physical                      b) psychological                      c) sports                      d) fitness



## Listening Text (1)

### Pre-listening question:

- What leisure facilities are there in your town?

**Student 1:** So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment ...

**Student 2:** Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do are to go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

**Student 1:** Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

**Student 2:** We could ask the local council to build a **skatepark**<sup>(1)</sup>. That wouldn't cost very much money and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

**Student 1:** That's true but not all young people like **skateboarding**<sup>(2)</sup>, and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

**Student 2:** That's a good point. Do you have any other suggestions?

**Student 1:** Well, what about starting a **youth**<sup>(3)</sup> club in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities so there's something for everyone.

**Student 2:** Well, the council would still need to pay some people to **organise**<sup>(4)</sup> the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

**Student 1:** OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

**Student 2:** OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing isn't very interesting for older kids.

**Student 1:** OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't **cost**<sup>(5)</sup> very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting.

(1) منتزه للتزلج

(2) التزلج باللوح

(3) شباب

(4) ينظم

(5) يتكلف

### Post-listening question:

What other suggestions can you add to solve the problem of not having facilities for young people?



## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

**Presenter :** In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three experts to **suggest**<sup>(1)</sup> a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

**Ola :** Hi. I have an old **laptop**<sup>(2)</sup> which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could download photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do?

**Presenter :** OK, let's ask our first expert. What do you think Ola should do, Amal?

**Amal :** Well, it **sounds**<sup>(3)</sup> like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one? Then I think your problem will be solved.

**Presenter :** Thanks. Do you agree, Dina?

**Dina :** No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can **repair**<sup>(4)</sup> it.

**Presenter :** OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

**Manal :** I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new **operating system**<sup>(5)</sup>. This is a program you can download from the internet; I think this will solve your problem.

- (1) يقترح
- (2) كمبيوتر محمول
- (3) يبدو
- (4) يصلح
- (5) نظام تشغيل

تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

تجد أصدقاءك  
وعش تجربة التحدي مع الأضواء

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

www.aladwaa.com



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Windows is probably the most popular ..... system; it is used by millions of computers all over the world.  
 a) sports                      b) operating                      c) research                      d) building
- 2 The young couple hired a professional to help ..... their wedding.  
 a) popularise                      b) realise                      c) organise                      d) recognise
- 3 The Cairo Tower is ..... from a faraway area in Cairo and Giza.  
 a) realised                      b) distant                      c) visible                      d) acceptable
- 4 You should follow the road ..... for the city centre so as not to get lost.  
 a) projects                      b) notes                      c) scenes                      d) signs
- 5 The young boy doesn't take the school bus. He ..... to school every day and now he needs a new board.  
 a) walks                      b) skateboards                      c) hurries                      d) inspects

## Focus on Vocabulary



majority أغلبية	▶ most of the people or things in a group
inspire يلهم / يحث / يوحى بـ	▶ to encourage someone by making them feel confident and eager to do something
volunteering تطوع	▶ the act of offering to do something without expecting any reward
psychological نفسى	▶ relating to the way that your mind works and the way that this affects your behaviour

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المعضاد
argue	يجادل	dispute	agree يوافق
arise	ينشأ	emerge	disappear يختفي
contrast	تناقض	contradiction	agreement اتفاق
inspire	يلهم / يحث / يوحى بـ	motivate	discourage لا يشجع
necessary	ضروري	essential	minor غير هام
psychological	نفسى / نفسانى	mental	physical جسمانى
reward	مكافأة / يكافئ	honour	penalty جزاء / عقوبة
significant	نو مغزى	important	trivial تافه
specific	محدد	definite	common شائع

### Notes on Vocabulary



#### present

present

▶ My little brother has received a lot of **presents** on his birthday.

prize

▶ I won this new bike as a **prize** in the sports competition.

reward

▶ The young clerks were given a **reward** for helping complete the project in a short time.

award

▶ The young actor is hoping for the best actor **award** in the film festival.

## work job career profession

work

► I like this company very much. The **work** is really easy.

عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

works

► A collection of Shakespeare's **works** is offered for a cheap price at the book fair.

أعمال غنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)

job

► The young man has applied for several **jobs** recently.

وظيفة (اسم يعد)

career

► My father received a lot of honours during his **career** as a doctor.

مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

profession

(the medical **profession** / legal / nursing / teaching profession)

مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)

► People who work in the medical **profession** receive much appreciation.

## rise arise raise arouse

rise (rose/risen)

يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه / تشرق / يزيد / يستيقظ / يقف / يتصاعد (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)

► The river has **risen** by several metres.

► The price of petrol has **risen** by 3 per cent.

يحدث (لا يأتي بعده مفعول) / يظهر / ينشأ

arise (arose/arisen)

► Several problems have **arisen** recently.

► Some learning difficulties **arise** from the way children are taught at school.

يزيد (يأتي بعده مفعول) / يربى / يجمع / يرفع / يثير

raise (raised/raised)

► I've never heard him even **raise** his voice.

► We are **raising** money for charity.

يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين / عاطفة لدى الناس) يأتي بعده مفعول

arouse (aroused/aroused)

► The event **aroused** considerable interest and media coverage.

arouse feelings / interest / fears / suspicions (doubts) / مشاعر / مخاوف / شكوك

**Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts**

- 1 It is very hot **waiting** for the bus .....  
 ..... they can see the bus **arriving**.  
 - لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بدلا من أدوات الربط (while - when) فالجملتين اصلهما.  
 It is very hot **while they are waiting** for the bus .....  
 ..... they can see the bus **when it arrives**.
- 2 **Not only do volunteers gain** valuable experience from volunteering, but they also teach them skills.  
 - لاحظ استخدام صيغة السؤال (do volunteers gain) بعد أداة الربط (Not only) إذا جاءت في أول الجملة
- 3 A majority of volunteers work together **in order to achieve** a specific goal.  
 - تستخدم (in order to) بمعنى لكي و يتبعها الفعل في صيغة المصدر .



**Check Point 3**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It's sad that so many young people are unable to find ..... these days.  
 a) jobs  
 b) works  
 c) careers  
 d) professions
- 2 The police offered a/an ..... for any information about the robbery.  
 a) present  
 b) award  
 c) reward  
 d) prize
- 3 Used car sales have ..... because of the increased cost of new cars.  
 a) risen  
 b) raised  
 c) aroused  
 d) arisen
- 4 My brother is taking a language course .....find a job in a good bank.  
 a) so  
 b) in order to  
 c) so that  
 d) too

# Vocabulary Exercises

Conservation

9  
UNIT

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mohamed Salah has ..... a great success as a professional footballer.  
a) achieved                      b) applied                      c) failed                      d) aspired
- 2 A serious problem can ..... if you don't take things more seriously in your study.  
a) raise                      b) arise                      c) aside                      d) arouse
- 3 The food festival was a great occasion for the local ..... to get together.  
a) police                      b) facility                      c) community                      d) ability
- 4 Winning the gold medal was the highlight of the Egyptian wrestler, Karam Gaber's .....  
a) job                      b) task                      c) work                      d) career
- 5 The young actor has a lot of ..... in the media who help him a lot.  
a) ties                      b) contacts                      c) facts                      d) enemies
- 6 The volunteers are hoping to reach their ..... of collecting a million pounds for the new Cancer Hospital.  
a) ability                      b) disability                      c) goal                      d) association
- 7 Charles Dickens' first novel was ..... by his early childhood.  
a) inspired                      b) respired                      c) designed                      d) devised
- 8 All newspapers publish the recent reports of the World Health ..... nowadays.  
a) Group                      b) Team                      c) Organisation                      d) League
- 9 The ..... of the students in our class come to school by bus. Only two come by train.  
a) minority                      b) priority                      c) seniority                      d) majority
- 10 Each debate of the two candidates will focus on a ..... political issue.  
a) specific                      b) discussing                      c) vague                      d) unimportant
- 11 The rocky soil is ..... for planting grapes and similar crops.  
a) suited                      b) suitable                      c) possible                      d) perplexed
- 12 Seven copies of the original book are still known to ..... in museums.  
a) resist                      b) persist                      c) exist                      d) vanish
- 13 Most people want to ..... at the weekend because they work hard in the week.  
a) tire                      b) excite                      c) exhaust                      d) relax
- 14 Countries have to work together to ..... global problems.  
a) solve                      b) deal                      c) cause                      d) cause
- 15 We donated some money to a ..... that helps homeless children.  
a) popularity                      b) corporation                      c) charity                      d) speciality

- 16 You can ..... a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.  
 a) load                      b) overload                      c) upload                      d) download
- 17 The company had to hire a/an ..... at computer software to protect its systems.  
 a) export                      b) expert                      c) gained                      d) trainee
- 18 Many of the government's new laws have ..... popular support.  
 a) beaten                      b) practised                      c) industry                      d) awarded
- 19 The economic crisis will surely ..... in the loss of a lot of jobs.  
 a) reason                      b) consult                      c) sequence                      d) result
- 20 The temperature can reach 40°C in the ..... in Upper Egypt especially in summer.  
 a) shadow                      b) shade                      c) figure                      d) moisture

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

- 21 Young people sometimes take a lot of ..... from watching athletes in the Olympic Games.  
 a) inspire                      b) inspired                      c) inspiring                      d) inspiration
- 22 This dictionary provides a clear, simple ..... of words that can be easily understood.  
 a) define                      b) definition                      c) defined                      d) defining
- 23 Sitting on the beach under an umbrella is really ..... in summer vacations.  
 a) relax                      b) relaxation                      c) relaxing                      d) relaxed
- 24 In the park, children have to ..... turns on the swing and other game tools.  
 a) take                      b) give                      c) add                      d) provide
- 25 There is an obvious contrast ..... the cultures of East and West.  
 a) in                      b) between                      c) at                      d) for
- 26 Eating too much sugar can lead ..... health problems.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) to                      d) for
- 27 The children should be ..... the opportunity to make their own choices.  
 a) taken                      b) turned                      c) denied                      d) given
- 28 The company's failure was a direct result ..... bad management.  
 a) of                      b) in                      c) at                      d) for
- 29 The adjective "essential" is similar in meaning to the adjective .....  
 a) vain                      b) minor                      c) common                      d) necessary
- 30 The verb "agree" can be the opposite to the verb .....  
 a) express                      b) approve                      c) argue                      d) excite



## Language

### Important Notes

#### Comparative phrases

- بالإضافة إلى ما تم شرحه في الجزء الأول، هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم لبيان الفرق الكبير والصغير في درجة المقارنة ومنها:
1. **a bit/ a little + صفة مقارنة + than**  
يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفرق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين  
Travelling by train is a **little/a bit** cheaper **than** travelling by car.
  2. **much/ a lot + صفة مقارنة + than**  
يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفرق كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين  
Gold is **much/ a lot** more expensive **than** salt.
  3. يمكن استخدام كلمات **rather/ even** قبل صفات المقارنة سواء **er** .... أو **more**  
This house is **even/rather** bigger **than** the other.



### Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Ali smokes ..... more than his friend does.  
a) bit                      b) little                      c) as                      d) much
- 2 My new flat is ..... colder than the old one.  
a) as                      b) many                      c) a bit                      d) more
- 3 The second exercise was ..... more difficult than the first.  
a) less                      b) rather                      c) as                      d) many
- 4 This road is ..... longer than the other one.  
a) a lot                      b) more                      c) lot                      d) many
- 5 The game we played yesterday was ..... more interesting than the one we played last week.  
a) almost                      b) a little                      c) as                      d) exactly

2

Past habits

1. Be (get) used to + v.ing

(Be used to) means "be accustomed to", "be in the habit of".

- تعبر be(get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة في الماضي ومازالت تحدث الآن.

- ▶ My father is very active. He **is used to getting** up early.
- ▶ I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get)used to it now.
- ▶ She **isn't used to living** in hot climates.

2. Object + (be + used to ) + Inf. = passive

- إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتي بعدها المصدر، وفي هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

- ▶ This knife **is used to cut** onions.

3. Object + (be + used for ) + ing.

- وتستخدم be used for + ving للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

- ▶ Knives **are used for cutting** things.

▶ Pens **are used for writing**.

4. No longer/any longer

- نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer معها مضارع منفى بدلاً من used to

- ▶ Osama **no longer smokes**. = Osama **used to smoke**.

- ▶ Osama **doesn't smoke any longer**.

لاحظ:

في النفي دائماً نجد didn't use to ولكن هناك نفي صحيح أيضاً وهو used not to

- ▶ Long time ago, clothes **used not to be** expensive.

هناك used تستخدم صفة بمعنى مستخدم وهي من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم.

- ▶ It's very dangerous to buy **used** clothes nowadays because of diseases.

- ▶ **Used cars** are always much cheaper than the new ones, and they need repairing.



Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 This gadget is used to ..... onions.

a) being chopped      b) chopped      c) chopping      d) chop

- 2 I'm terribly nervous, I'm not used to ..... to a large number of audience.

a) speaking      b) speak      c) being speak      d) speaks

- 3 After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to ..... on her own.

a) live      b) lived      c) living      d) leaves

- 4 I can't take your smart car. I ..... driving an automatic car.

a) used to      b) am not used to      c) am used to      d) didn't use to

- 5 She ..... gets up early; she used to get up early.

a) frequently      b) always      c) anymore      d) no longer



# Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 His behaviour was \_\_\_\_\_ than we thought at first.  
a) strange                      b) slightly strange                      c) much stranger                      d) almost strange
- 2 My father \_\_\_\_\_ speaking in public.  
a) used to                      b) is used to                      c) would                      d) did use to
- 3 It was very hot yesterday. Today, it's \_\_\_\_\_ than yesterday.  
a) a bit hotter                      b) more hotter                      c) hot                      d) as hot
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ in tropical climates. When she does, she suffers a lot.  
a) would live                      b) used to live                      c) is used to living                      d) isn't used to living
- 5 For me, running is \_\_\_\_\_ tiring than walking.  
a) a lot more                      b) a lot                      c) much                      d) as
- 6 He used to live in Italy, but he \_\_\_\_\_ lives there.  
a) used to                      b) any longer                      c) no longer                      d) is used to
- 7 I think French is \_\_\_\_\_ than English.  
a) difficult                      b) much difficult                      c) as difficult                      d) much more difficult
- 8 It's much \_\_\_\_\_ this summer than it was last year.  
a) hot                      b) hotter                      c) as hot                      d) hottest
- 9 She used to eat a lot of sweets, but she doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) no longer                      b) hardly                      c) any more                      d) then
- 10 My cat is a bit \_\_\_\_\_ than my dog.  
a) friendly                      b) slightly friendly                      c) more friendlier                      d) friendlier
- 11 I \_\_\_\_\_ Maher was unfriendly, but now I realise he's a very nice person.  
a) used to think                      b) didn't use to think                      c) think                      d) was thinking
- 12 I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot, but I do now.  
a) am used to reading                      b) used to read                      c) didn't use to read                      d) am reading
- 13 My mobile phone is \_\_\_\_\_ the same colour as Ahmed's.  
a) slightly                      b) far                      c) a lot                      d) exactly
- 14 Omar is almost \_\_\_\_\_ as his uncle.  
a) richer                      b) as rich                      c) rich                      d) much richer

- 15 You'd better wear your coat. It's ..... yesterday.  
 a) slightly colder than                      b) colder as  
 c) cold as    d) almost colder as
- 16 Her illness was ..... than we thought at first.  
 a) serious enough    b) as serious                      c) far more serious    d) slightly serious
- 17 During our last holiday, we ..... to the beach to play.  
 a) were used to go    b) would go                      c) go                              d) use to go
- 18 Samy ..... glasses, but now he does.  
 a) wears                      b) used to wear                      c) wore                              d) didn't use to wear
- 19 My parents used to spend a lot of time at the park, but now .....  
 a) they don't                      b) they do                              c) they are                              d) they didn't
- 20 I study in London, so I ..... abroad.  
 a) was used to living                              b) would live  
 c) used to live    d) am used to living
- 21 The movie is almost as ..... as the book.  
 a) good                              b) better                              c) the best                              d) well
- 22 He did slightly worse in the exam ..... we expected.  
 a) as                                      b) so                                      c) than                                      d) for
- 23 For me, science is ..... difficult than history.  
 a) almost as                              b) slightly much                              c) slightly as                              d) slightly more
- 24 Every evening, local people ..... out onto the streets and sell souvenirs.  
 a) are used to going                              b) had gone  
 c) use to go    d) would go
- 25 Shima'a ..... long dark hair, but she looks different now.  
 a) would have                              b) has                                      c) used to have                              d) was having
- 26 My brother ..... be a better swimmer than me and he ..... always win.  
 a) used to/ would                                      b) would/ used to  
 c) used to/ used to                                      d) would/ would
- 27 All my friends are ..... than me during races.  
 a) far quickly                              b) far quicker                              c) more quickly                              d) quick
- 28 He behaves ..... worse than before.  
 a) slight                                      b) as                                      c) more                                      d) even
- 29 I've started drinking tea recently. I never ..... like it before.  
 a) didn't use to                              b) no longer                              c) used to                                      d) any longer
- 30 He made his money buying and selling ..... cars.  
 a) used                                      b) would use                              c) used to                                      d) is used to

## Discussing the benefits of volunteering



1. Volunteering connects you to others. It allows you to connect to your community and make it a better place and helps you make new friends and contacts. It is a great way to meet new people, especially if you are new to an area volunteering increases your social and relationship skills. Volunteering gives you the opportunity to practice and develop your social skills.
2. Volunteering is good for your mind and body. It provides many benefits to both mental and physical health. It increases self-confidence and can provide a healthy boost to your self-confidence, self-esteem, and life satisfaction. It combats depression and keeps you in regular contact with others. Also, it helps you stay physically healthy. Studies have found that those who volunteer have a lower mortality rate than those who do not.
3. Volunteering can advance your career by helping you get experience in your area of interest and meet people in the field. Volunteering teaches you valuable job skills. Many volunteering opportunities provide extensive training.
4. Volunteering brings fun and fulfillment to your life. Doing interesting volunteer work can be a relaxing, energizing escape from your day-to-day routine of work, school, or family commitments.

### Practice

#### Complete the following dialogue:

**Khaled and Ashraf are talking about the pros and cons of working abroad.**

**Khaled** : Hello! Ashraf. What's your opinion of volunteering work?

**Ashraf** : I think it is a great thing we can do for our community.

**Khaled** : What kind of volunteering do you think is the best?

**Ashraf** : (1).....

**Khaled** : (2).....?

**Ashraf** : Yes, I once took part in such work, I helped in distributing food and clothes to poor people in our neighbourhood. With a charity called Resala.

**Khaled** : (3).....?

**Ashraf** : Yes, I think it helps some poor individuals to make bad actions and helps community to be a better place.

**Khaled** : What is your advice to young people to urge them to participate in volunteering?

**Ashraf** : (4).....

**Khaled** : Thank you Ashraf.

**Ashraf** : You're welcome.

-References: <https://www.wcsu.edu/community-engagement/benefits-of-volunteering/>

## Life Skills

## Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration

Collaboration is when a group of people come together and contribute their expertise for the benefit of a shared objective, project, or mission. In other words, collaboration is the process of group work. But it's also a learned skill. How well you collaborate with others will greatly impact the outcome of the group project.

## 7 reasons why collaboration is important

1. It helps us problem-solve
2. Collaboration brings people (and organizations) closer together
3. Collaboration helps people learn from each other
4. It opens up new channels for communication
5. Collaboration boosts morale across your organization
6. It leads to higher retention rates
7. Collaboration makes us more efficient workers



## Writing

## Opinion essay: مقال الرأي

مقال الرأي هو مقال توضح فيه رأيك في موضوع ما، ويجب ذكر رأيك بوضوح خلال المقال، كما تقدم حججنا و أسبابنا و وجهات نظر مختلفة حول الموضوع وتدعمها أدلة أو أمثلة:

## Outline of an Argumentative Essay

## Introduction

في المقدمة يجب أن تقوم بتقديم موضوعك وإبداء رأيك بوضوح. تأكد من أنها تحتوي على جملة الموضوع أي جملة تلخص النقطة الرئيسية في مقالتك.

## Main body

بعد المقدمة يجب أن تدعم بيان رأيك. اكتب عدة فقرات، كل منها يقدم وجهة نظر منفصلة مدعومة بالأسباب. تأكد من أنك لا تبدأ فقرة جديدة؛ لأن الفقرة التي تكتبها الآن طويلة جداً. ابدأ فقرة جديدة فقط عندما تريد مناقشة فكرة جديدة.

## Conclusion

لاختتام مقال رأيك، اكتب فقرة تعيد فيها التعبير عن رأيك باستخدام كلمات مختلفة. يجب تجنب طرح فكرة جديدة أو الرجوع عن رأيك الذي بدأت به المقدمة.

**Model Essay****The benefits of volunteering****1. Introduction**

Volunteering is important for many reasons that benefit both the community and the volunteers themselves. When someone donates a handful of time, the difference made is tremendous and it shapes a community for the better while the experience improves the person who donated the time.

**2. Main body**

Volunteering is what makes a community because it brings people together to work on a goal. Whether it is to cure a disease that affects the whole world, or to help a local family who has fallen in a time of calamity, volunteers make it happen. Community life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. More people working equals less work for each person and less time for the project. So when it comes to getting the job done, like a community clean up, the more the better.

Donating time will also help volunteers themselves in the future. Volunteering strengthens present skills and also shows an employer that an effort has been made to make an improvement. Such skills include communication skills, ability to work with others, ability to take direction and lead others, dedication and time management. Employers realise that as a volunteer you must be able to prioritise your timetable in order to devote time for activities that benefit others. When employers see active volunteer work, they are much more likely to hire such a person rather than someone who doesn't volunteer. Employers are aware that most people who offer their time are conscientious, honest and hard working individuals.

**3. Conclusion**

These are just a few reasons why volunteering is important. Not only does it bring hope and happiness to people, but it also leads to spiritual and personal growth. It is an experience that cannot be bought with any amount of money.

# General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The manager agreed to \_\_\_\_\_ the employees' salaries.  
 a) raise                      b) rise                      c) arise                      d) arouse
- 2 Some world \_\_\_\_\_ are meeting online to consider the plan for facing COVID-19 pandemic.  
 a) readers                      b) citizens                      c) leaders                      d) clients
- 3 Our teacher always tries to make his lessons \_\_\_\_\_ for all students.  
 a) avoidable                      b) enjoyable                      c) detestable                      d) perplexing
- 4 The farm is famous for the plants which are used for medicinal \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) results                      b) causes                      c) subscriptions                      d) purposes
- 5 Sleep disorders are a serious \_\_\_\_\_ problem, but they aren't very hard to cure.  
 a) physical                      b) herbal                      c) psychological                      d) scientific
- 6 People \_\_\_\_\_ pictures and music freely from the internet.  
 a) download                      b) send                      c) exclude                      d) chat
- 7 Our new neighbours rarely \_\_\_\_\_ with each other. They are a perfect couple.  
 a) agree                      b) argue                      c) support                      d) discuss
- 8 There was a worried \_\_\_\_\_ on my father's face when I told him about my difficult journey.  
 a) intention                      b) description                      c) aviation                      d) expression
- 9 We should all work to find an ultimate \_\_\_\_\_ to the city's traffic problem.  
 a) ambition                      b) impression                      c) solution                      d) condition
- 10 Most tourists like to \_\_\_\_\_ diving near the coral reef in the Red Sea because of its beauty.  
 a) go                      b) come                      c) ascribe                      d) run
- 11 Although he started work only last month, he was able to \_\_\_\_\_ many contacts in the company.  
 a) do                      b) make                      c) practise                      d) avoid
- 12 Winning the best actor award was a great \_\_\_\_\_ for the young actor.  
 a) achieve                      b) achievement                      c) achievable                      d) achieved
- 13 You should read the \_\_\_\_\_ notes at the front of the book.  
 a) explain                      b) explanation                      c) explanatory                      d) exclusive

- 14 The verb "emerge" is a synonym to the word .....  
 a) arise  
 b) consume  
 c) produce  
 d) consult
- 15 The noun "penalty" is an antonym to the noun .....  
 a) report  
 b) device  
 c) punishment  
 d) reward
- 16 Ahmed's salary is ..... as mine.  
 a) much  
 b) exactly the same  
 c) much more  
 d) slightly the same
- 17 The mouse is almost as ..... as the cat. That's amazing.  
 a) bigger  
 b) biggest  
 c) big  
 d) far big
- 18 Spain is slightly ..... than England.  
 a) hot  
 b) as hot  
 c) more hotter  
 d) hotter
- 19 The teacher asked me where I ..... at the weekend when I was 10 years old.  
 a) used to go  
 b) go  
 c) am used to going  
 d) am going
- 20 My job is far ..... than I expected.  
 a) much interesting  
 b) interesting  
 c) mor interesting  
 d) as interesting
- 21 A lot of local people ..... to the beach every weekend.  
 a) come  
 b) would come  
 c) were coming  
 d) are used to come
- 22 Ragab ..... me at 9:00 last night.  
 a) used to call  
 b) used to called  
 c) calls  
 d) called
- 23 The building is ..... taller than the tree.  
 a) a bit  
 b) a little more  
 c) as  
 d) many
- 24 Kareem ran ..... faster than Ramy during the race.  
 a) more  
 b) as  
 c) much  
 d) so
- 25 I watched TV often in the past, but I ..... do this.  
 a) used to  
 b) no longer  
 c) any longer  
 d) would

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

With busy lives, it can be hard to find time to volunteer. However, the (1) **harms/benefits** of volunteering can be enormous. Volunteering offers vital help to people in need, worthwhile causes, and the (2) **community/environment**, but the benefits can be even greater for you, the volunteer. It can help you to (3) **make/do** contacts, learn new skills, and even advance your career. It provides many benefits to both (4) **conditional/psychological** and physical health. By measuring hormones and (5) **brain/stomach** activity, researchers have discovered that being helpful to others makes people happy. Human beings are hard-wired to give to others. Finally, Volunteering brings (6) **fun/sadness** and fulfillment to your life.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

I've been in London for a year and now I'm used to (1) **(live/living)** in a busy city. I (2) **(am used/used)** to live in Cairo, so I'm used to (3) **(travelling/travel)** on crowded underground trains. To me, London is (4) **(slightly/exactly)** the same as Cairo. I used to work in an office in Cairo dealing with foreigners, so I'm used to (5) **(speak/speaking)** in English. Now I work in a bank and speak to different people every day, but I'm not used to (6) **(listening/listen)** to the different accents.

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hala and Salwa were the best of friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they are like inseparable twins. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however something happened that almost caused their friendship to break.

Hala had already made plans with Salwa to watch a show. At the last minute, Hala's mother had an errand to run and someone had to look after her sister. Salwa was disappointed but said that she would still wait for Hala and watch the show together. The next morning, Hala overheard Salwa telling another friend, "it was a wonderful show. I saw it last night and it was fabulous." Hala got upset. She walked past Salwa and gave her an angry look. Salwa was puzzled. Why was Hala angry with her? When Salwa called out to Hala, she ignored her. After school, Salwa waited for Hala, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Hala just walked on alone. Salwa ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Hala? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Hala answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that." Salwa realised what the problem was and laughed. "I went to a different show. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Hala apologized to Salwa and they were the best of friends again.



## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The phrase "had an errand to run" means .....  
 a) go for a ride  
 b) to go for a walk  
 c) to solve a problem  
 d) to do a task
- 2 The antonym of the word disappointed is .....  
 a) frustrated  
 b) satisfied  
 c) furious  
 d) upset
- 3 When did Hala and Salwa come to be friends again?  
 a) When Hala looked angrily at Salwa.  
 b) When Salwa lied to Hala.  
 c) When Salwa laughed at Hala.  
 d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.
- 4 Why did Hala have to cancel watching the show with Salwa?  
 a) To look after her sister.  
 b) To go to another show.  
 c) To make Hala angry.  
 d) To go with her mother

## B) Answer the following questions:

- 5 Why did people call Hala and Salwa inseparable twins?
- 6 Why was Hala upset?
- 7 How did the two girls normally go home?
- 8 What do you think a good friend should do? Mention two.

## 5 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Volunteering and tolerance are two of the most important social values. Schools and Educational syllabi should aim at training children on them at an early age.
2. Volunteering can help you make friends, learn new skills, advance your career, and even feel happier and healthier. However, you should learn how to find the right volunteer opportunity for you.
3. Many projects will be built on the banks of the New Suez Canal. This will increase national income and offer many job opportunities.
4. No real progress can be made in our society where wives and mothers are ignorant. Educated families have an important role in any development.
5. Always believe that there is a light at the end of the tunnel. It may seem hard to get to it but you can do it.
6. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.

## B) Translate into English:

- ١- تعتبر الشعاب المرجانية أهم عوامل جذب السياح لمنطقة البحر الأحمر، لذا يجب الحفاظ عليها حتى نحافظ على استدامة السياحة في هذه المنطقة الهامة من مصر.
- ٢- تعتمد طرق التعليم الحديثة على المتعة وأدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لذلك تسعى وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى توظيفها في كل مراحل التعليم وخاصة المرحلة الثانوية.
- ٣- للطفولة أثر كبير في تكوين شخصية الفرد من الناحية النفسية والاجتماعية لذا يجب أن يوليها الآباء والمعلمون الاهتمام الواجب.
- ٤- يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب ومحاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التي تعزز عملية التعلم وتجعل التعليم متعة.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

advance	يتقدم	reinforce	تعزز
attractions	عوامل جذب	stages	مراحل
homeless	مشرود	syllabi	مناهج
ignorant	جاهل / غير متعلم	talents	مواهب
methods	طرق	tolerance	تسامح
national income	العخل القومي	tunnel	نق
poverty	الفقر	values	قيم

- 6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The benefits of reading."

**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

**جمع نقاطك**  
و استبدلها الآن بمجموعة من الهدايا  
الرائعة على متجر الأضواء.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:  
 It is necessary to answer all the questions on the exam paper. The word "necessary" is the synonym of

- 1. The museum is part of local history and should be preserved. The verb "preserve" can be the antonym of
  - a) minor
  - b) essential
  - c) trivial
  - d) obligatory
  - e) unacceptable
- 2. The report commented on the poor ..... of the old roads.
  - a) conserve
  - b) waste
  - c) keep
  - d) value
  - e) abandon
- 3. The students in Fayoum planned to take a picnic on the east ..... of Lake Qaroun.
  - a) state
  - b) series
  - c) condition
  - d) exhibition
  - e) scenery
- 4. The businessman went on a fishing ..... in the Red Sea with some foreign investors for refreshment.
  - a) coast
  - b) bank
  - c) beach
  - d) shore
  - e) bay
- 5. I had difficulty in driving cars in the past, but now I can drive well. That means .....
  - a) duty
  - b) project
  - c) expedition
  - d) trip
  - e) flight
- 6. I used to drive cars well in the past.
  - c) I'm used to driving cars well now.
  - b) I was used to driving cars well in the past.
  - e) I no longer drive cars well now.
  - d) I didn't use to drive cars well in the past.
- 7. The cheapest thing in this shop is the blue suit. Two sentences of the following give a similar meaning to the sentence above.
  - a) The least expensive thing in the shop is the blue suit.
  - b) Everything in the shop is exactly the same price as the blue suit.
  - c) Everything in the shop is slightly cheaper than the blue suit.
  - d) Everything in the shop is far more expensive than the blue suit.
  - e) The blue suit is almost as cheap as everything in the shop.
- 8. Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
  - a) When I was young , I always went to the public library with my friends.
  - b) When I was young , I used to go to the public library with my friends.
  - c) When I was young , I would go to the public library with my friends.
  - d) Last week , I was going to the public library 3 times.
  - e) Last week , I used to go to the public library 3 times.
- 9. Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
  - a) Ali is much shorter than Hossam.
  - b) Hossam is more taller than Ali.
  - c) Ali and Hossam are exactly the same length.
  - d) Hossam and Ali are exactly the same height.
  - e) Ali is slightly taller than Hossam.
- 10. Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
  - a) I would go shopping with my mother every Friday.
  - b) When I was young, I would have blond hair.
  - c) How many friends did you use to have?
  - d) How many friends would you have?
  - e) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 11 The area is protected as a wildlife \_\_\_\_\_ to protect the rare animals in it.  
 a) park    b) preserve    c) accessory    d) garden
- 12 The sports centre is organizing a fishing \_\_\_\_\_ to the lake for next week.  
 a) prize    b) award    c) expedition    d) resort
- 13 The new chemistry book is a work of serious \_\_\_\_\_ of some Egyptian scientists.  
 a) scholarship    b) championship    c) qualification    d) implication
- 14 The school encourages a sense of \_\_\_\_\_ in its students through some volunteering activities.  
 a) society    b) right    c) democracy    d) community
- 15 My sister cleans her contact lens with an ordinary saline \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) solution    b) syrup    c) tube    d) research
- 16 She is a young woman who \_\_\_\_\_ trust in everyone she meets.  
 a) involves    b) inspires    c) aspires    d) respire
- 17 I have typed out some lecture notes for the \_\_\_\_\_ of those people who were absent last week.  
 a) consummation    b) sale    c) benefit    d) cure
- 18 In many countries, eighteen is considered the age of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) majority    b) minority    c) acceptance    d) qualification
- 19 Most of the television sets on the market are all high \_\_\_\_\_ for a better image.  
 a) quantity    b) purpose    c) definition    d) design
- 20 The police think that someone set the factory fire on \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) reason    b) cause    c) account    d) purpose
- 21 \_\_\_\_\_ I'd really like is some peace and quiet.  
 a) How    b) Which    c) What    d) Where
- 22 It can be difficult living abroad when you don't speak \_\_\_\_\_ language.  
 a) the    b) a    c) no article    d) some
- 23 I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ a new TV than have this old one repaired.  
 a) buying    b) buys    c) to buy    d) buy
- 24 Everyone knows that when ice melts, it \_\_\_\_\_ into water.  
 a) turns    b) would turn    c) will turn    d) can turn
- 25 The suspect denied \_\_\_\_\_ a pair of jeans from the shop.  
 a) steal    b) stolen    c) stealing    d) to steal
- 26 She insists that we \_\_\_\_\_ get up early in the morning.  
 a) could    b) should    c) might    d) can
- 27 The football team for the cup final \_\_\_\_\_ by next week.  
 a) is selected    b) is being selected    c) selected    d) will have been selected
- 28 The person \_\_\_\_\_ I spoke to had an American accent.  
 a) who    b) when    c) whose    d) to whom
- 29 They set off early \_\_\_\_\_ avoiding the rush hour traffic.  
 a) with a view    b) so as to    c) with the aim of    d) so that
- 30 The unhappy customer spoke \_\_\_\_\_ to the shop manager.  
 a) anger    b) angrily    c) angry    d) angrier

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 More than half the people means the ..... of people.  
 a) majority                      b) minority                      c) crew                      d) trend
- 2 There should be more laws to help ..... our natural resources.  
 a) damage                      b) reserve                      c) destroy                      d) preserve
- 3 Motor racing is really a ..... game that attract only adventure seekers.  
 a) challenging                      b) simple                      c) fragile                      d) clear
- 4 To get some real ..... from the exercise, you should continue for at least half an hour.  
 a) harm                      b) injury                      c) benefit                      d) cure
- 5 Doctors believe that children abuse can lead to serious ..... and emotional problems.  
 a) physical                      b) psychological                      c) economic                      d) criminal
- 6 Up till now, there is no ..... proof that life exists on other planets.  
 a) negative                      b) doubtful                      c) positive                      d) valueless
- 7 Kamal is exactly ..... as Nader.  
 a) the same age                      b) old                      c) so old                      d) older
- 8 When we were children, our parents ..... often take us to the children's theatres.  
 a) are used to                      b) used to                      c) would                      d) should
- 9 After the trip, my brother was ..... tired as my father.  
 a) so                      b) almost as                      c) almost so                      d) slightly as
- 10 I liked the museum. It was ..... more interesting than I expected.  
 a) lot                      b) almost                      c) many                      d) far
- 11 This bag is ..... than the other one.  
 a) slightly heavier                      b) slightly heavy                      c) almost heavy                      d) as heavy
- 12 Tourists ..... to dive in this area, but now they do.  
 a) used to come                      b) didn't use to come                      c) almost heavy                      d) came
- 13 You're driving too fast. Can you drive .....?  
 a) far slower                      b) much slower                      c) too slowly                      d) a bit slowly

- 14** It's ..... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.  
 a) more easier **b) as easy**  
 c) a lot easier **d) almost easiest**
- 15** The dress is a lot ..... than the shoes.  
 a) more expensive **b) much expensive** c) expensive **d) most expensive**
- 16** Jeans ..... in different colours, but now they do.  
 a) are used to coming **b) didn't use to come**  
 c) used to come **d) used not coming**

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. And it does not get tired. And it never complains. Unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Some robots can help explore volcanoes. Some robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognize words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned things and they made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 17** Why doesn't the robot make mistakes, get tired or complain?  
 a) Because it's made of plastic. **b) Because it can't speak.**  
 c) Because it looks like a human. **d) Because it's a machine.**
- 18** As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT .....  
 a) normal **b) expensive**  
 c) perfect **d) tired**

What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?

- a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.
- b) To tell what a robot is.
- c) To describe the things a robot can do.
- d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?

- a) To help make a sandwich.
- b) To help tie shoes.
- c) To help read a book.
- d) To help explore Mars.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- How does the author of this passage feel about robots?
- How do you think, robots will help make life better?
- According to the passage, when was the first real robot made?
- The robot is, of course, different from man? Mention two differences.

**Translate into Arabic:**

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

**Translate into English:**

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جداً لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيراً مهنياً. يمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعد على الاسترخاء.

**Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

**“Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?”**

# Revision (3)

## Units 7, 8 & 9



### Vocabulary

almost (adv)

تقريباً

amount (n)

كمية/مقدار

basic (adj)

أساسي

beneficial (adj)

مفيد/نافع

biology (n)

علم الأحياء

Central America (n)

أمريكا الوسطى

clear (adj)

واضح

college (n)

كلية

complicated (adj)

معقد

corner (n)

ركن

currently (adv)

حالياً

cute (adj)

لطيف

eco-system (n)

النظام البيئي

exotic (adj)

غريب/غريب

fuel (n)

وقود

global warming (n)

الاحتباس الحراري

guide (n)

مرشد

gym (n)

صالة ألعاب

head out (v) (ed)

يتجه/يتوجه

hometown (n)

موطن

Impressive (adj)

مؤثر

Indeed (adv)

بالفعل

knowledge (n)

المعرفة

life-long (adj)

مدى الحياة

official language (n)

لغة رسمية

persuade (v) (d)

يُتبع

Portuguese (n)

اللغة البرتغالية

practical (adj)

عملي

practice (n)

ممارسة/تدريب

recording (n)

تسجيل

serve (v) (d)

يخدم/يقدم طعاماً

slightly (adv)

تقليلاً

sustainable (adj)

مستدام

teamwork (n)

لعمل الجماعي

tent (n)

خيمة

topic (n)

موضوع

tour (n)

جولة

traffic (n)

حركة المرور

type (n)

نوع

walking boots (n)

أحذية مشي





### Costa Rica

#### Expedition: Day 1

Hi! My name's Amira. And I'm currently in Costa Rica where I'm going on a tour for young people. Today is only my second day here, but by the end of my time here, I will have visited every corner of this amazing country, seen a lot of its incredible biodiversity and spent some time staying with a family of native inhabitants in the rainforest. I'm so excited to get started! Costa Rica is located in Central America and I had to fly for about 24 hours to get here. When I arrived at the airport, I was so pleased to see that Emilia, our guide, had come to pick me up and take me to the hotel. We travelled by public transport to the hotel together. Emilia said it would be far quicker than driving because there was so much traffic on the roads. Everyone speaks Spanish here because it's the country's official language. I'm finding it a bit difficult to understand the type of Spanish they speak here because it's different to the Spanish I've learned, but I'm sure I'll get used to it. Tomorrow we're going to head out into the rainforest for the first time. We don't have any high-tech equipment with us – just our walking boots, tents and sleeping bags and, of course, water bottles and dried food. Costa Rica isn't a country that tourists come to in order to see impressive castles or ancient pyramids. Instead, it's known for its exotic birds and it's almost as famous for the cute monkeys that sometimes come to see what the tourists on the beach are doing!

## Reading Text (2)

## A

I'm really struggling to understand everything in our maths lessons at the moment. I didn't use to have any problems, but for the last few weeks we've been doing far more complicated things and I can't keep up. Everyone else in the class seems to understand everything the teacher says, so I feel like I'm the one who's finding it difficult. I know that telling my teacher about the problem would help, but there never seems to be enough time to ask questions at the end of the lesson, because we all have to leave quickly to get to our next lesson in time. Can you help me?

## B

I moved to a new town three months ago and I'm finding it really hard to make new friends. When I'm at school, it seems like everyone already knows each other and nobody is interested in making new friends. I have started going swimming in the evenings because I hoped that I would meet other people, but nobody wants to talk to me there either. I used to have lots of friends in the town where I used to live and I would go to see them almost every day after school, but now I spend most of my time at home. What can I do to make new friends?



ALADWAA

تطبيق الأضواء

اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية

من خلال خاصية محاكاة الامتحانات.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

**Friend** : So Ali, you've just started college and now you're living away from home in a different city with your brother. How are you enjoying your new life so far?

**Ali** : Well, the first week was far more difficult than I expected ...

**Friend** : Why do you think that was?

**Ali** : I don't know. When I was living at home, my parents used to wash my clothes, cook my meals and tidy up after me. But now my brother and I have to do all the housework ourselves!

**Friend** : Those are things that are useful to learn how to do though, aren't they?

**Ali** : Definitely. Sometimes we struggle to do all the housework and we often order a pizza because we don't want to cook. But, all in all, I've got better at doing the housework since I left home. I think living away from home is really good because it teaches you how to be independent.

**Friend** : So, you used to live in a small town and now you're living in a big city. What's the biggest difference that you've noticed?

**Ali** : Probably how people travel around. When I lived in my hometown, I would ride my bike to school and back every day. There wasn't very much traffic on the roads, so it was fine. But here, there are far more cars on the road and I don't feel safe riding my bike, so I take public transport instead. There's a network of local trains and it's very high-tech. I found it a bit confusing at first, but now I can get around OK.

**Friend** : Sounds like you're really getting used to life in the big city now! Have you and your brother found it easy to make friends?

**Ali** : Well, we've only been here for a few weeks. I don't think we really talked to any new people for the first week that we were here, but then I met a couple of nice people who are doing the same college course as me. Now we spend time together at the weekend; go out to a café or play video games together. It's great to meet new people.

**Friend** : Great! Well, let me wish you and your brother the best of luck with living away from home. It sounds like you're doing well.

**Ali** : Thank you.

# Workbook Exercises (Units 7-9)

## 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Young children are not very ..... and need a lot of help and support.  
a) independent    b) dependent    c) deceived    d) ruined
- 2 Hi, Mum, the bus is late, could you ..... me up from the park?  
a) take    b) put    c) give    d) pick
- 3 People in Scotland speak English, but you might ..... to understand them sometimes as their English sounds different.  
a) defend    b) struggle    c) resist    d) insist
- 4 There has been a big ..... in the number of people using mobile phones in recent years.  
a) determination    b) extension    c) expansion    d) decrease
- 5 The new hotel has lots of modern ....., including a gym and swimming pool.  
a) facilities    b) inventors    c) discoverers    d) innovators
- 6 Seoul in South Korea has one of the longest underground rail ..... in the world.  
a) paths    b) nets    c) works    d) networks
- 7 My grandmother often puts fruit in jars with lots of sugar to ..... them.  
a) reserve    b) preserve    c) deserve    d) serve
- 8 Judy hopes to get a ..... so that she can study at a really good university.  
a) scholarship    b) money    c) help    d) price
- 9 The train ..... at six o'clock, so we'd better go to the station now.  
a) left    b) is leaving    c) has left    d) will have left
- 10 When Tarek was younger he ..... that he lived in a house by the sea!  
a) use to wish    b) wish    c) will wish    d) used to wish
- 11 ..... in a bank when he was younger?  
a) Is he working    b) Did he use to work    c) Has he worked    d) Is he used to
- 12 Dina's sister is ..... the same height as her!  
a) very    b) far    c) exactly    d) more
- 13 When the next tourist goes into the museum, a thousand tourists ..... It this year?  
a) will have visited    b) will visit    c) are going to visit    d) visit
- 14 My brother ..... when I do my homework and it makes me angry!  
a) is always singing    b) always sang    c) always sing    d) used to sing

1. Come to my house at eight o'clock because I ..... my school project by then.
- a) am finishing  
b) have finished  
c) will have finished  
d) finish
2. This book is brilliant, it is ..... than the last book he wrote!
- a) slightly worse  
b) far better  
c) almost better  
d) not better

### Fill in the gap with one word:

challenging – far high – tech – However – sustainable – used

Modern planes are usually (1) ..... quieter than old planes. They are lighter and use better engines, too, so they use less fuel. In fact, planes built after the year 2000 use half the fuel that planes (2) ..... to burn in 1970. These new, (3) ..... planes are much better for the environment. (4) ....., planes still cause a lot of the earth's pollution. It is hoped that in the future, engineers will have found a way to use (5) ..... fuels that do not cause global warming, but it is a (6) ..... task and might take many years.

### Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. Ali likes to be busy. He doesn't like it when people ..... (not do) anything!
2. This beautiful wooden table ..... (belong) to my uncle. He loves it!
3. The teacher says that we ..... (finish) this book before the end of term.
4. I wonder how much rain ..... (fall) before the end of today?
5. Waleed ..... (not use to like) plays when he was younger, but he loves the theatre now.
6. I think that this year's test was slightly ..... (difficult) than last year's test. It was not easy.
7. Samira's parents ..... (pick) her up at 7 pm outside the school this evening.
8. The government ..... (build) a flyover bridge in the busy square by next fall.

### Translate the following into Arabic:

There didn't use to be much biodiversity in this forest. Now the forest is far bigger than it was and there are many more species living there.

### Translate the following into English:

- إنها مسؤوليتنا جميعاً أن نحافظ على البيئة، لذلك سوف ننتهي من زراعة آلاف الأشجار قبل نهاية العام القادم، وهذا سيجعل البيئة أفضل والهواء أنقى بكثير في المستقبل القريب.

**6** Read the following passage, then and answer the questions:

I'm Karim, welcome to my blog. By this time next week, I will have been in London for a month. In Egypt, I lived in a small town near the sea. I know what city life is like because I used to go to Cairo a lot. London is almost as busy as Cairo, but it is very different to both Cairo and especially my town!

In the streets, people are always walking quickly or talking on their phones. They don't have time to stop and talk. Luckily, where I work, the people are almost as friendly as the people I used to work with in Egypt and I already have some good friends.

People in London are always complaining about public transport! They say the trains and buses are always late, but to me, London transport is very good. Next year, they will have built a new train line, too. It will go from near my house to the centre. The people are also always complaining about the weather, but I quite like it. It's never very hot!

I have a nice flat which is slightly smaller than my flat in Egypt, but I have found a great Egyptian restaurant nearby. It serves meals which are almost exactly the same as the food I used to eat in Egypt. When I send my next blog, I'm sure I will have done some more interesting things here, so I'll tell you all about them then. Bye for now.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- According to the blog, living in London .....
  - is the same as living in Cairo
  - isn't different to living in Cairo
  - isn't the same as living in Cairo
  - is slightly different to living in Karim's town
- Karim knows what city life is like because .....
  - he used to live in Cairo
  - he has always lived in London
  - he often used to visit Cairo
  - his friends live in London
- The people where he works don't like .....
  - talking to him
  - London's weather
  - the new train line
  - Egyptian food
- Karim's flat in London is ..... his flat in Cairo.
  - a lot smaller than
  - a bit smaller than
  - not smaller than
  - the same size as

**B) Answer the following questions:**

5. Name three differences between life in Cairo and London.
6. In what way will public transport have got better for Karim next year?
7. What things show he is getting used to life in London?

**C) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- 1 I told the old man to be careful because the ground is step.
- 2 After the successful operation, I thanked the doctor in behalf of my father.
- 3 Don't worry if you stress with the course. I am sure you will benefit a lot from it.
- 4 The new hotel is almost as tall than the Cairo Tower.
- 5 Our school has very good facility, including a modern library.
- 6 The Aborigines were the natural inhabitants of Australia.
- 7 By this time tomorrow, we will arrive at the airport.
- 8 Where did your parents used to live when they were younger?
- 9 Your shirt is exactly the same colour than my trousers!
- 10 Munir is often forgetting to bring his book to school.

**D) Write an essay of about 200 words on one of these topics:**

1. Compare the public transport networks in two cities that you know. Say which one is better and why.
2. Describe why conservation is important in Egypt and what we can do to help our animal species.

## King Lear: Acts 3-4

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- We are going to \_\_\_\_\_ revenge on them for the problems they have caused us.
    - say
    - make
    - take
    - give
  - It's never all right to be nasty to people online and we won't \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
    - stand
    - hold
    - hand
    - run
  - I was so scared while I was looking over the edge of the cliff that my blood ran \_\_\_\_\_.
    - hot
    - cold
    - wild
    - through
  - We used to be friends, but since he tried to make me look stupid, we've become \_\_\_\_\_.
    - enemies
    - traitors
    - interrupters
    - camps
  - The greedy brother gained power in some parts of the country, but he wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ over all of it.
    - interrupt
    - steal
    - rule
    - stay
  - It isn't polite to start talking when someone else is speaking. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ people.
    - get rid of
    - betray
    - deceive
    - interrupt
  - All of our soldiers are going to sleep at the \_\_\_\_\_ in Calais tonight.
    - camp
    - café
    - steep
    - army
  - This hill is so \_\_\_\_\_, I'm not sure if I can climb to the top of it.
    - long
    - evil
    - steep
    - deep
  - Don't leave any \_\_\_\_\_ items, like jewellery or mobile phones, in this room. Please take them with you.
    - valuable
    - enemy
    - guilty
    - stupid



My father has a lot of pain in his eyes and cannot see. Can anyone \_\_\_\_\_ him?

- a) rule
- c) heal

b) run

d) cure

Everyone is calling her a \_\_\_\_\_ because she shared some secret information with our enemies.

- a) servant
- c) beggar

b) traitor

d) friend

Read this part of the play. Match the characters with the things they do in Acts 3 and 4.

1. Cornwall	a) asks someone to take him to the top of a cliff
2. Regan	b) makes someone kneel in front of him and asks questions
3. Edgar	c) throws someone out of their palace
4. Gloucester	d) tells someone to take up their sword against the French
5. Goneril	e) says he's unhappy because his daughters have lied to him
6. Albany	f) admits that he pretended to be someone else
7. King Lear	g) promises to get revenge on a person who attacked someone

Answer the questions.

- 1 In Act III Scene v, what does the letter that Edmund shows Cornwall prove?
- 2 In Act III Scene vi, who is told to take King Lear to Dover in a carriage?
- 3 In Act III Scene vii, what does Cornwall decide to do to Gloucester?
- 4 In Act III Scene vii, which part of Gloucester's body does Cornwall hit with his sword and injure?
- 5 In Act IV Scene i, what does Edgar wish he didn't have to pretend to be?
- 6 In Act IV Scene i, where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester?
- 7 In Act IV Scene ii, who decides to take revenge for what has happened to Gloucester?
- 8 In Act IV Scene iv, who does Cordelia want to find and see again?
- 9 In Act IV Scene vi, why does Edgar want to make Gloucester think that he has fallen from a cliff and survived?
- 10 At the end of Act IV Scene vi, who did Edgar and Gloucester meet?

**4 Read the quotations and choose the correct answer.**

**1. Cornwall:** *I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority, but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.*

**1** Why does Cornwall decide not to kill Gloucester?

a) He doesn't want to do it.

b) He doesn't have the power to do it.

**2. Albany:** *What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man.*

**3** Why does Albany compare Goneril and Regan to tigers?

a) He thinks they're wild and dangerous.

b) He thinks they don't want other people to come near to them.

**3. Gloucester:** *Let go of my hand. Here's a purse for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.*

**4** Why does Gloucester say this to Edgar?

a) He thinks he's going to fall to his death.

b) He thinks that Edgar wants to steal from him.

**5** **Imagine that you are a newspaper reporter. Write a clear and easy to understand summary of what happened in these three excerpts from King Lear. Include the most important events and the reasons why they happened. Write about 200 words.**



- 13 Do you think that the mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ the car by tomorrow?  
 a) will fix                      b) will have been fixing  
 c) will be fixing              d) will have fixed
- 14 He has taken \_\_\_\_\_ the same courses as I have. We are classmates.  
 a) exactly                      b) almost                      c) slightly                      d) much
- 15 Your argumentation is \_\_\_\_\_ as convincing as Yehya's.  
 a) quite                      b) almost                      c) very                      d) slightly
- 16 I \_\_\_\_\_ like ice-cream. I don't like it now.  
 a) didn't                      b) didn't use to                      c) would                      d) used to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyday activities like listening to an iPod, playing loud video games and going to the movies can put your hearing at risk. Loud noises can damage the inner ear. This type of hearing loss can't be healed. But it can be prevented.

Block, walk and turn—that's what hearing safety experts want you to do when you come across a really loud noise. Block the noise from entering your ears; walk away from it; and turn it down. Those are your first steps in staying safe.

On average, 15% of all school-age children live with some hearing loss. And it's a growing problem.

There are two types of harmful noises: sounds that are too loud and sounds that last too long. Both types can cause permanent damage to the sensitive hair cells in the inner ears that bring sound to the brain.

Most people don't know that listening to headphones at full volume puts your ears at risk. "If your iPod is on the maximum volume, it's too loud," says an expert. "If you listen to it at that level every day, it will cause hearing loss."

- When you can't avoid loud noises, wear earplugs or earmuffs to block out sound.
- Set your television or stereo to the lowest volume you can hear. If you are with a person who has trouble hearing, turn on the closed-captioning service to show the words on the screen.

- If your neighbours use noisy leaf blowers or lawn mowers, close your windows and doors to block the sound. This will also protect you from the sounds of sirens and construction. Add curtains to keep out noise, or carpets to absorb it.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

How can loud noises affect us?

- a) They can damage our sight.  
 b) They can affect our digestion.  
 c) They can affect our understanding.  
 d) They can damage the inner ear.

What do hearing safety experts want us to do when we come across a really loud noise?

- a) Go, walk and run.  
 b) Shake, take and go.  
 c) Block, walk and turn.  
 d) Sleep, wake and tur.

When can listening to headphones put our ears at risk?

- a) When we listen to it at high level every day.  
 b) When we put it on our ears.  
 c) When we listen to it with others.  
 d) When we listen to it at low level daily.

What does the underlined pronoun "This" refer to?

- a) Using noisy leaf blowers.  
 b) Using lawn mowers.  
 c) Closing our windows and doors.  
 d) Adding curtains to keep out noise.

### B) Answer the following questions:

1. Illustrate how we can avoid loud noises. Mention two points.

2. Give two examples of everyday activities that put our hearing at risk.

3. What are the two types of harmful noises?

4. What do you think we should do if our neighbours use noisy leaf blowers or lawn mowers? Give two points.

### Translate into English:

- بالرغم من أن الدراسة بالخارج لها فوائد عديدة الآن، لكن البعد عن الوطن يسبب الكثير من المشكلات النفسية التي تقلل من قدرتهم على التعلم

### Translate into Arabic:

One of the aims of the World Youth Forum which is held in Egypt is reinforcing the importance of tolerance and understanding between different cultures. Moreover, it can give participants a good impression of our culture.

Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words** on the following:

**"The pros and cons of online learning."**

## Discussing the benefits of volunteering



1. Volunteering connects you to others. It allows you to connect to your community and make it a better place and helps you make new friends and contacts. It is a great way to meet new people, especially if you are new to an area volunteering increases your social and relationship skills. Volunteering gives you the opportunity to practice and develop your social skills.
2. Volunteering is good for your mind and body. It provides many benefits to both mental and physical health. It increases self-confidence and can provide a healthy boost to your self-confidence, self-esteem, and life satisfaction. It combats depression and keeps you in regular contact with others. Also, it helps you stay physically healthy. Studies have found that those who volunteer have a lower mortality rate than those who do not.
3. Volunteering can advance your career by helping you get experience in your area of interest and meet people in the field. Volunteering teaches you valuable job skills. Many volunteering opportunities provide extensive training.
4. Volunteering brings fun and fulfillment to your life. Doing interesting volunteer work can be a relaxing, energizing escape from your day-to-day routine of work, school, or family commitments.

### Practice

#### Complete the following dialogue:

**Khaled and Ashraf are talking about the pros and cons of working abroad.**

**Khaled** : Hello! Ashraf. What's your opinion of volunteering work?

**Ashraf** : I think it is a great thing we can do for our community.

**Khaled** : What kind of volunteering do you think is the best?

**Ashraf** : (1).....

**Khaled** : (2).....?

**Ashraf** : Yes, I once took part in such work, I helped in distributing food and clothes to poor people in our neighbourhood. With a charity called Resala.

**Khaled** : (3).....?

**Ashraf** : Yes, I think it helps some poor individuals to make bad actions and helps community to be a better place.

**Khaled** : What is your advice to young people to urge them to participate in volunteering?

**Ashraf** : (4).....

**Khaled** : Thank you Ashraf.

**Ashraf** : You're welcome.

-References: <https://www.wcsu.edu/community-engagement/benefits-of-volunteering/>



## Unit 10

## The News

### Objectives

- Reading : Online news stories
- Writing : A news report
- Listening : News stories
- Language : Past perfect and past perfect passive
- Speaking : Presenting news stories
- Life skills : Critical thinking recognising facts and opinions; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

broadcast (n) (v) (ed)

مشور الإذاعة / بثو / يبث

editor (n)

محرر / رئيس تحرير

fact checker (n)

مراجع حقائق

interview (n) (v) (ed)

مقابلة / يجري مقابلة

newsreader (n)

قارئ الأخبار

photographer (n)

مصور فوتوغرافي

reporter (n)

مراسل صحفي

search engine (n)

محرك بحث

source (n)

مصدر

### Vocabulary on Reading

accurate (adj)

دقيق

admit (v) (ed)

يعترف بـ

clear (adj)

واضح

collect (v) (ed)

يجمع

community (n)

مجتمع

contain (v) (ed)

يحتوي على

explain (v) (ed)

يشرح / يفسر

fact (n)

حقيقة

fear (n) (v) (ed)

خوف / يخشى

identify (v) (y-ied)

يحدد

online (adj) (adv)

عبر الإنترنت

print (v) (ed)

يطبع

range (n)

سلسلة / معدل

record (n) (v) (ed)

تسجيل / رقم قبلي / يسجل

produce (v) (d)

يتم

select (v) (ed)

يختار / يختار

serious (adj)

جد

share (v) (d)

يشارك / يشترك

social media (n)

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

traditional (adj)

تقليدي

trust (n) (v) (ed)

ثقة / يثق في

truth (n)

حقيقة

unreliable (adj)

غير موثوق فيه

upload (v) (ed)

يحمل إلى الإنترنت



# Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

The News

10

alarm (n)	إنذار
Caribbean islands	جزر البحر الكاريبي
channel (n)	قناة
correspondent (n)	مراسل صحفي أو تليفزيوني
crime (n)	جريمة
deliberately (adv)	عمداً
digital nomads (n)	الرحالة الرقميين
disaster (n)	كوارث
false (adj)	مزيف/غير حقيقي
fire service (n)	خدمة الإطفاء
flame (n)	لهب/اشعلة نار
headlines (n)	عناوين الأخبار
income (n)	دخل

investigator (n)	محقق/مفتش
island (n)	جزيرة
journalist (n)	صحفي
Lebanese (adj)	لبناني
opportunity (n)	فرصة
originally (adv)	أولاً/أصلاً
perfect (adj)	تامر/امتداد
photography (n)	التصوير
printing press (n)	الطابعة/المطبعة
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
responsible (adj)	مسئول
scene (n)	موقع/موقع حدث
unclear (adj)	غير واضح

## Language & Workbook Vocabulary

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
bomb (n)	قنبلة
competition (n)	مسابقة
confirm (n) (v) (ed)	يؤكد
crash (n) (v) (ed)	تحطم/يرتطم/يتحطم
crime (n)	جريمة
digital (adj)	رقمي
disaster (n)	كوارث
discovery (n)	اكتشاف
find (n)	اكتشاف
fix (v) (ed)	يصلح
frequently (adv)	غالباً/بشكل متكرر

income (n)	دخل
inform (v) (ed)	يبلغ
injury (n)	إصابة
leader (n)	قائد
meteorite (n)	نيزك
onboard (adj)	على متن سفينة/مطارقاً
origin (n)	أصل/مصدر
photography (n)	التصوير
politician (n)	رجل سياسة
press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي
professional (adj) (n)	مختص
programme (n)	برنامج
properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح

185

recent (adj)	حديث
satellite (n)	قمر صناعي
shape (n)	شكل
space walk (n)	السير في الفضاء
species (n)	نوع/فصيلة (حيوانية)

suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
talent (n)	موهبة
title (n)	عنوان القب
zoom in (v) (ed)	يتقرب الصورة

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

cause serious problems	يسبب مشكلات خطيرة	In charge of	مسئول عن
come true	يصبح حقيقة/ يتحقق	take photographs	يلتقط صوراً
care about	يهتم بـ	send to	يرسل إلى
crash into	يصطدم بـ	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
hear about/of	يسمع عن	turn to	يتحول إلى
look into	يفحص	upload to	يحمل إلى
range of	سلسلة من	worried about	تقلق عن
send out	يبت		

## Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
achieve	achievement	achievable
broadcast	broadcast	
compete	competition	competitive
fear	fear	fearful
identify	identity	identifiable
inform	information	informative
investigate	investigation investigator	Investigatory
select	selection	selective

## Reading Text (1)

It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news from traditional **sources**<sup>(1)</sup> like newspapers and television. Everyone is turning to the internet and **social media**<sup>(2)</sup> for news, and some experts fear that we might accept some **unreliable**<sup>(3)</sup> news stories as fact because we read social media sites which share our opinions. But is this true? **Search engines**<sup>(4)</sup> lead us to a wider **range**<sup>(5)</sup> of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always question what we read and never just accept it as true.



- (1) مصدر
- (2) وسائل التواصل
- (3) غير موثوق به
- (4) محركات البحث
- (5) مجال

Secondary school students in the UK have had the chance to become news **reporters**<sup>(1)</sup> for the day. Students created a news website and produced a news report. They selected reporters and **photographers**<sup>(2)</sup> who went out to look for interesting news in their community. When they had **interviewed**<sup>(3)</sup> people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the **newsreaders**<sup>(4)</sup> who then recorded the news. The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were **broadcast**<sup>(5)</sup> on local television.



- (1) مراسلين صحفيين
- (2) مصورين
- (3) يقوم بمقابلة
- (4) قارئ الأخبار
- (5) يبث/يذيع

Saeed Yousuf is a fact **checker**<sup>(1)</sup>. He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the **editor**<sup>(2)</sup>. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the points of view held by the writer. He believes that it's very important for the public to trust the information in the story, but some newspapers, he **admit**<sup>(3)</sup>, are better at checking facts than others. It can cause serious problems if newspapers print stories without checking the information carefully first.



- (1) مراجع
- (2) محرر صحفي
- (3) يعترف بـ

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

**Astronauts**<sup>(1)</sup> have made yet another amazing discovery in space. During a recent space walk to fix part of a satellite, which had been damaged after a **meteorite**<sup>(2)</sup> had hit it, they saw an unexpected shape on the moon. Using their onboard **digital**<sup>(3)</sup> cameras, they **zoomed**<sup>(4)</sup> in to discover what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry bombs during World War 2 and had crashed into the moon. After reporting the find, NASA **confirmed**<sup>(5)</sup> that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.



- (1) رائد الفضاء
- (2) نيزك
- (3) رقمي
- (4) تكبير الصورة
- (5) يؤكد على



## Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 At the end of the race, the first winner was ..... by BBC news channel.
  - a) offered
  - b) tested
  - c) searched
  - d) interviewed
- 2 The correspondent has refused to reveal his ..... of the news he sent to the channel.
  - a) sources
  - b) results
  - c) effects
  - d) doubts
- 3 My cousin is a/an ..... for one of the major fashion magazines.
  - a) consumer
  - b) reporter
  - c) officer
  - d) inspector
- 4 The show of the new band will be ..... over the internet.
  - a) investigated
  - b) arranged
  - c) broadcasted
  - d) accepted
- 5 Our new next door neighbour is a former ..... of Al-Ahram Newspaper.
  - a) editor
  - b) reader
  - c) investigator
  - d) inventor



## Listening Text

### Newsreader:

Good morning. Here are today's headlines on Monday, 5<sup>th</sup> October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 fire fighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is **unclear**<sup>(1)</sup> how the fire began, but the police think it had been started **deliberately**<sup>(2)</sup>. The police and **fire services**<sup>(3)</sup> had been called earlier in the evening, but left when everything appeared to be OK. At the time they believed it was yet another **false alarm**<sup>(4)</sup>. At midnight, a woman phoned again and said she had seen **flames**<sup>(5)</sup> at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the fire fighters arrived, the fire had moved to the front of the shop.



- (1) غير واضح
- (2) عمداً
- (3) خدمات الإطفاء
- (4) إنذار مزيف
- (5) لهب
- (6) لبناني
- (7) التصوير
- (8) فرصة
- (9) نخل
- (10) جزر الكاريبي

A **Lebanese**<sup>(6)</sup> photographer has won a top photography competition for his photo of a desert sunrise. Twenty-two-year-old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about **photography**<sup>(7)</sup> by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but has continued to take photos and is now working as a professional photographer for a news channel.

Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the **opportunity**<sup>(8)</sup> to live and work there for two years. Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's main **income**<sup>(9)</sup> had been tourism, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their **Caribbean islands**<sup>(10)</sup>. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want a relaxing place to work, then this is perfect.



Video Script

Have you ever thought about what the word 'news' actually means? Well, it means new information, usually about something that has happened recently and it's constantly changing as new information is discovered. We may think of the news as being about bad things, such as **crime**<sup>(1)</sup> or national **disasters**<sup>(2)</sup>, but the news can be about good things such as sport or something fun. The news is **responsible**<sup>(3)</sup> for telling us about the world we live in, be it good or bad.

**Originally**<sup>(4)</sup> people got the news by word of mouth – travellers going through towns passed on the news they heard to people they met. When the printing **press**<sup>(5)</sup> was invented, it was easier and cheaper to produce newspapers and the news spread wider and faster than ever before. For centuries, most people got their news from newspapers, but with access to the internet, sales of newspapers have fallen by half. This doesn't mean that people don't read the news though.

Many people still use newspapers, but they read them online. Social media sites have also become very popular, and people find news on these sites which post **regularly**<sup>(6)</sup>. But can we trust this news?

- (1) جريمة
- (2) كوارث
- (3) مسئول
- (4) لسنت/الأصل
- (5) لطباعة/المطبعة
- (6) بانتظام

0:00



Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The poor clerk took on extra work to increase his .....  
 a) energy                      b) effort                      c) income                      d) entertainment
- 2 The police think that the fire had been started ..... and it wasn't an accident.  
 a) strangely                      b) personally                      c) accidentally                      d) deliberately
- 3 Every new house in this modern compound comes complete with smoke .....  
 a) areas                      b) alarms                      c) suits                      d) services
- 4 The invention of the ..... press is considered the most important invention as it helped transfer knowledge and science to next generations.  
 a) printing                      b) sewing                      c) cutting                      d) welding
- 5 The airline is legally ..... for the safety of its passengers.  
 a) available                      b) acceptable                      c) responsible                      d) unreliable

## Focus on Vocabulary



broadcast	ينشر/يذيع	▶ to send out a programme on TV or radio
editor	محرر/رئيس تحرير	▶ a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine
foreign correspondent	مراسل اجنبي	▶ a person who finds a news story in a different country
headlines	عناوين الأخبار	▶ the titles of news stories
fact checker	مراجع حقائق	▶ a person who makes sure the information is true
interview	يجرى مقابلة	▶ to ask someone questions
investigator	محقق	▶ a person who tries to discover the facts of what happened
journalist	صحفي	▶ a person who finds a news story and tells the public
news channel	قناة إخبارية	▶ a television station where you can see news programmes
newsreader	قارئ أخبار	▶ someone who reads reports on a TV news programme
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	▶ a person who takes photographs, as a job or hobby
reporter	مراسل صحفي	▶ a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV
scene	مشهد	▶ a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime
search engine	محرك البحث	▶ a computer program that searches the Internet for information
source	مصدر	▶ the place something comes from or starts at

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المصاد
accurate	دقيق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false غير دقيق/الغريف
achieve	يحقق/يتمم	accomplish/carry out	fail يفشل
broadcast	يشير/يذيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal يخفي
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate يشتت/يفصل
fear	يخشى	worry	face واجه
frequently	تقريباً/بشكل متكرر	generally/often	rarely/seldom نادرًا
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse يرتبك
professional	مختص	efficient/skillful	amateur/inexperienced غير مهني/غير خبير
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly	wrongly بشكل خاطئ
select	يختار/يختار	pick out/choose	refuse/reject يرفض/يرفض
source	مصدر	origin	outcome نتيجة
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/old	modern حديث
trust	ثقة	confidence	doubt/uncertainty شك/عدم تأكيد
unreliable	غير موثوق فيه	inaccurate	dependable/reliable موثوق فيه

### Notes on Vocabulary



#### investigator

##### investigator

▶ A team of special **investigators** have gone to the scene of the explosion.

##### inspector

▶ Last year, school **inspectors** reported that 20 % of young pupils were unable to read or write.

##### conductor

▶ As the train pulled out, the senior **conductor** came around.

مفتش القطر أو الأتوبيس (كمساري)



**admit**

يستخدم الفعل (**admit**) بمعنىين مختلفين ويختلف المصدر المشتق منه في كل منهما:

- She **admitted** (that) she had made a mistake.
- In court he **admitted** (to) lying about the accident.

يعترف/يقتر (والمصدر هنا **admission**)

**admit**

- You will not be **admitted** to the theatre after the performance has started.

يسمح بدخول جامعة أو مدرسة أو مبنى (والمصدر هنا **admission/admittance**)

**fact****truth**

**fact**: a piece of information that is known to be true

حقيقة/معلومة حقيقية

- The book is full of **facts** about the World Cup.

**truth**: the state or quality of being true

حقيقة/صدق

- There is no **truth** in the rumour they spread about the scientist.

**scene****scenery****view****scene**

١- منظر/مشهد (في فيلم/مسرحية)

٢- موقع/مكان (أحداث)

- The opening **scene** of the movie is a battle field.
- Firefighters arrived on the **scene** of the fire within minutes.

منظر طبيعية جميلة

**scenery**

- We drove through some very beautiful **scenery** in the country.

منظر طبيعي ثابت

**view**

- We had a fantastic **view** of the mountains from our room.



# Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The CNN news station \_\_\_\_\_ programmes around the world in many languages.  
 a) consumes                      b) downloads                      c) broadcasts                      d) reports
2. My father got a position as an assistant \_\_\_\_\_ at a new magazine.  
 a) editor                              b) seller                              c) newsreader                      d) worker
3. The young actor is a very private man and rarely gives \_\_\_\_\_ to the press.  
 a) meetings                          b) interviews                          c) seminars                          d) dates
4. I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) photographer                      b) programmer                      c) editor                              d) newsreader
5. He worked for the magazine as a wildlife \_\_\_\_\_ and he travels to many countries looking for good shots.  
 a) reporter                              b) correspondent                      c) photographer                      d) writer
6. The novelist began his career as a newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.  
 a) programmer                          b) reporter                              c) influencer                          d) podcaster
7. Around 2001, the Google search \_\_\_\_\_ rose to prominence *من شهرتها*.  
 a) engine                              b) power                              c) motor                              d) page
8. Old people always say that television is their most useful \_\_\_\_\_ of local information.  
 a) result                                  b) source                                  c) reason                                  d) practice
9. The naughty student was ashamed to \_\_\_\_\_ that he had lied to his teachers.  
 a) deny                                      b) deploy                                  c) admit                                  d) apply
10. The writer \_\_\_\_\_ folk stories from all over the world for his new book.  
 a) scattered                              b) spread                                  c) told                                      d) collected
11. Experts advise us that \_\_\_\_\_ of failure should not stop us trying to get success.  
 a) pleasure                                  b) fear                                      c) treasure                                  d) delight
12. The restaurant was recently \_\_\_\_\_ as one of the best in the area.  
 a) selected                                  b) replaced                                  c) reformed                                  d) depicted
13. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in America to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day.  
 a) modern                                  b) dated                                      c) traditional                                  d) updated
14. If you are \_\_\_\_\_ and downloading big files, you need a quicker modem.  
 a) setting                                  b) making                                  c) overloading                                  d) uploading
15. Police officers are now at the crime \_\_\_\_\_ searching for clues.  
 a) view                                      b) scenery                                  c) scene                                      d) landform

- 16 The earthquake was the worst natural ..... to hit the city for over 50 years.  
 a) disaster                      b) achievement                      c) acceptance                      d) trend
- 17 The camera ..... in on the old man's face hearing the bad news.  
 a) boomed                      b) zoomed                      c) bombed                      d) faded
- 18 You should speak to a lawyer for a/an ..... opinion about the contract.  
 a) respectful                      b) minor                      c) amateur                      d) professional
- 19 The ..... of the novel's first chapter is "Getting Started."  
 a) address                      b) title                      c) line                      d) rank
- 20 In this new ..... age, computers and the Internet are part of our everyday life.  
 a) false                      b) facial                      c) digital                      d) trivial

### ( Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms ) Exercises

- 21 The trip to America was a dream which has ..... true for Mahmoud.  
 a) come                      b) gone                      c) felt                      d) grew
- 22 The discovery of DNA was a major scientific .....  
 a) achieve                      b) achievement                      c) achieved                      d) achievable
- 23 Our new manager really cares ..... his employees.  
 a) of                      b) at                      c) about                      d) out
- 24 You can't trust the rumors إشاعات. The antonym of the verb "trust" is .....  
 a) recognise                      b) realise                      c) depend                      d) doubt
- 25 Police officers are looking ..... the disappearance of two children kidnapped yesterday.  
 a) for                      b) of                      c) into                      d) up
- 26 The shop owner left his elder son in ..... of the shop for a week.  
 a) change                      b) charge                      c) account                      d) balance
- 27 The ..... newsletter النشرة الإخبارية at the British Council is published once every two months.  
 a) inform                      b) informed                      c) informative                      d) information
- 28 The police took fingerprints and identified the body. The synonym of the verb "identify" is .....  
 a) determine                      b) damage                      c) remove                      d) achieve
- 29 All young people have turned ..... social media for news and information.  
 a) with                      b) on                      c) at                      d) to
- 30 Big stores have to ..... for customers in the Christmas season.  
 a) compete                      b) competed                      c) competition                      d) competitive



## Past perfect tense

زمن الماضي التام

Form:

التكوين

had + P.P.

• By yesterday, I **had read** 5 stories.

Negative:

النفي

hadn't + P.P.

• I **hadn't seen** him before he talked to me.

Interrogative:

الاستفهام

Had + القاعل + P.P.

• What **had** she **done** before going out?  
• **Had** Osama **bought** the tickets by yesterday?

Passive:

المجهول

had been + P.P.

• By the time I reached the cinema, all the tickets **had been sold**.

1 For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضى آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى: الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط.

- ▶ I **showed** my mother what I **had bought** from the market.
- ▶ He **admitted** that he **had lied** to his father more than once.

2 For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى العاضى.

- ▶ There **was** glass on the floor as Osama **had broken** the window.

3 For duration before something in the past.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمراً لفترة فى الماضى قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

- ▶ I **had had** the bike for ten years before I bought a car.
- ▶ By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I **had been** there for five years.

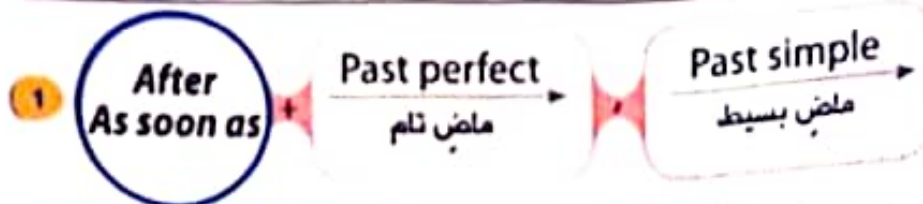
Usage

الاستخدام

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

**Key Words**

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as



• After I **had looked** both ways, I **crossed** the street.



• Before I **crossed** the street, I **had looked** both ways.



ملاحظة: إن الماضى البسيط المنفى له عدة أشكال:

- didn't + inf.
- wasn't - weren't + p.p.
- couldn't + inf.
- refused - denied - .....

ماضى بسيط منفى مبني للمعلوم  
ماضٍ بسيط منفى فى المبني للمجهول  
عدم استطاعة فى الماضى  
كلمة تعطى معنى النفى

• My son **didn't buy** the phone until he **had taken** the money.

**ملحوظة:**

لا يجب حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ **until** فالمشكلة ليست فى الشكل بل المعنى فتأمل الأمثلة القادمة:

- She **refused** to marry him **until** he **had bought** a new flat.
- He **waited** in the station **until** the train **arrived**.
- I **wasn't** happy until I **had passed** my exams.
- He **wasn't** allowed to enter the country **until** I **had shown** my passport.
- He **couldn't** pass the driving test **until** he **had practised** enough.



يوجد فاعل بعد **After** أو **Before** نستخدم **v-ing**

- After **finishing** his work, he **helped** me. = After he **had finished**, .....
- Before **helping** me, he **had finished** his work. = Before he **helped**, .....

• When I **reached** the station, the train **had left**.  
**When + Past simple, Past perfect**

لاحظ الفرق بين جمل **when** الآتية:

• When he **reached** the station, the train **left**.  
**When + Past simple, Past simple**

غادر القطار قبل وصولي (لم أتحق به)

• When I **had reached** the station, the train **left**.  
**When + Past perfect, Past simple**

غادر القطار عند وصوله (ربما لحقه أو راه)

وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

After  
Before  
As soon as  
When

Past simple  
ماض بسيط

Past simple  
ماض بسيط

إننا لم يكن هناك فارق  
زمني بين الأحداث

- ▶ When he **entered** the flat, he **took off** his shoes.
- ▶ After he **paid** the driver, he **got out** of the taxi.
- ▶ Before he **left**, he **asked** me to close the door behind him.
- ▶ As soon as he **read** the story, he **gave** it to me.

### Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We ordered our food after we ..... at the restaurant.  
 a) sitting                      b) had sat                      c) sit                      d) were sitting
- 2 As soon as I ..... a story, I started the next one.  
 a) 'd finished                      b) finish  
 c) have finished                      d) was finishing
- 3 We got very wet because we ..... to take our umbrellas.  
 a) had been forgetting                      b) forget  
 c) had forgotten                      d) have forgotten
- 4 What did you do after ..... school yesterday?  
 a) had left                      b) left                      c) leave                      d) leaving
- 5 When I ..... the stadium, the match started. I didn't miss the beginning.  
 a) have reached                      b) had reached  
 c) reach                      d) was reaching

إننا نجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضح ماضي تام والأحداث الباقية إما ماضي بسيط أو مستمر حسب المعنى.

- **As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.**  
لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **as soon as** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول ولن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة)
- **After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.**  
لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **After** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل)
- **I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.**  
الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل **think/say/know/realise** عند استخدامهم في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات ومعتقدات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق.

- **I thought I had finished my homework, but I realised I had forgotten the last page.**
- **I knew where I had put the keys.**
- يجب ملاحظة المجهول جيداً إننا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول وهنا نستخدم **had been + P.P** للماضي التام و **was/were + P.P** للماضي البسيط
- **After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.**
- **Before the e-mail was sent, it had been written.**
- يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد **after/ before/ until** وليس جملة كاملة.

- **My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.**
- **Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.**  
يمكن أن يستخدم الماضي التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم في وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام وفي هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه.

- **He had been to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.**
- **He went to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.**  
ولكن إننا أشار الماضي التام إلى خبرة وليس حدث محدد لا يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط.
- **He had never seen snow until he moved to Europe. NOT He never saw snow...**



## Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- After the money \_\_\_\_\_, I was able to buy the new car.  
a) had been saved      b) saved      c) had saved      d) was saving
- When my father looked at me angrily, I realised that I \_\_\_\_\_ something wrong.  
a) have done      b) would do      c) am doing      d) had done
- I thought Hany \_\_\_\_\_ a car, but he said it was his brother's.  
a) had been bought      b) had bought      c) was buying      d) has bought
- Ali said that he \_\_\_\_\_ Osama to his party the previous week.  
a) invited      b) has invited      c) had invited      d) would invite
- At first I was very nervous, but after a while I \_\_\_\_\_ to feel more confident.  
a) had begun      b) have begun      c) begin      d) began



# Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I ..... him because he had made many mistakes.  
 a) punished                      b) had punished                      c) punishing                      d) have punished
- 2 They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.  
 a) forget                      b) have forgotten                      c) had forgotten                      d) were forgetting
- 3 After he had written the letter, he ..... it.  
 a) has posted                      b) posted                      c) was posting                      d) were forgetting
- 4 He continued his journey ..... he had changed the tyre.  
 a) before                      b) ago                      c) since                      d) was posted
- 5 When I ..... enough money, I bought the smart phone.  
 a) had saved                      b) was saving                      c) have saved                      d) after
- 6 The people in the city felt a lot safer after the wild animal ..... by the police.  
 a) had caught                      b) had been caught                      c) was catching                      d) would save
- 7 After ..... my work, I went back home with my friends.  
 a) finish                      b) finished                      c) finishing                      d) caught
- 8 As soon as they had found a flat, they ..... married.  
 a) get                      b) getting                      c) had got                      d) had finished
- 9 He said that they ..... each other for many years.  
 a) have known                      b) knew                      c) had known                      d) got
- 10 When they ..... the theatre, the play had already started.  
 a) reach                      b) reached                      c) had reached                      d) know
- 11 The prisoner ..... free until he had returned the stolen things.  
 a) didn't set                      b) doesn't set                      c) hasn't set                      d) will reach
- 12 After the house ....., we furnished it.  
 a) had been painted                      b) has painted                      c) had painted                      d) wasn't set
- 13 I applied for a job in a nearby bank ..... I graduated.  
 a) already                      b) while                      c) just                      d) painted
- 14 I knew that she ..... Luxor before, so I asked her to recommend a good hotel.  
 a) visited                      b) had visited                      c) has been visiting                      d) as soon as
- 15 When I ..... the news, I couldn't believe it.  
 a) heard                      b) hear                      c) will hear                      d) has visited
- 16 The pharaohs ..... the Pyramids and other monuments.  
 a) have built                      b) build                      c) built                      d) was hearing

- 17 After \_\_\_\_\_ in the company for ten years, he left it.  
 a) works                      b) worked                      c) had worked                      d) working
- 18 By the time Mariam was 26, she \_\_\_\_\_ married for three years.  
 a) has                      b) had been                      c) has been                      d) was being
- 19 I was doing my homework when I realized that I \_\_\_\_\_ to study 2 pages.  
 a) had forgotten                      b) forgot                      c) was forgetting                      d) have forgotten
- 20 I didn't leave \_\_\_\_\_ I had taken my pocket money first.  
 a) until                      b) because                      c) after                      d) as soon as
- 21 They waited patiently until the headmaster \_\_\_\_\_ speaking.  
 a) was finishing                      b) has finished                      c) finished                      d) finishes
- 22 The woman \_\_\_\_\_ for a taxi before her friends arrived.  
 a) has phoned                      b) phones                      c) phoning                      d) had phoned
- 23 The facts \_\_\_\_\_ by the reporter before he wrote his report.  
 a) had checked                      b) had been checked                      c) are checked                      d) are checking
- 24 She said that the robber \_\_\_\_\_ her when she was opening the door of her apartment.  
 a) attacked                      b) was attacking                      c) has attacked                      d) had been attacked
- 25 I didn't phone Amgad \_\_\_\_\_ I had lost his number.  
 a) before                      b) until                      c) because                      d) by the time
- 26 After she \_\_\_\_\_ back home, she found out that she had forgotten her mobile phone at work.  
 a) was going                      b) had gone                      c) has gone                      d) went
- 27 As soon as the girl \_\_\_\_\_, we told the police.  
 a) had been disappeared                      b) disappeared                      c) was disappeared                      d) has disappeared
- 28 Which one of the sentences is grammatically incorrect?  
 a) The children swam in the pool after they had finished their homework.  
 b) The children swam in the pool after they finished their homework.  
 c) The children had swum in the pool after they finished their homework.  
 d) The children didn't swim in the pool after they had finished their homework.
- 29 The pharaohs believed in life after \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) they had died                      b) had died                      c) death                      d) they die
- 30 When I closed my room door, my friend had played some music. This means \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) My friend stopped playing music after I closed my room door  
 b) I could still hear the music playing, my friend did not stop  
 c) on closing my room door, my friend started playing music  
 d) my friend stopped playing music before I closed my room door

# General Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The president addressed the nation in a television ..... after the elections.  
a) publication                      b) spread                      c) broadcast                      d) meeting
- 2 Mrs. Mary is a/an ..... for a small publishing fashion magazine in Oxford.  
a) editor                      b) discoverer                      c) programmer                      d) actor
- 3 The famous TV announcer has ..... celebrities مشاهير and political leaders on her programme for over 25 years.  
a) reviewed                      b) interviewed                      c) replied                      d) recovered
- 4 In the last few years, there has been a great investment in the new ..... of energy which don't cause pollution.  
a) causes                      b) results                      c) consumptions                      d) sources
- 5 I must ..... that the results of the exam were disappointing.  
a) admit                      b) deny                      c) collect                      d) extract
- 6 In its survey, the company ..... information about consumer trends.  
a) spreads                      b) publishes                      c) collects                      d) devalues
- 7 In the past, the poor mine workers lived in constant ..... of losing their jobs.  
a) delight                      b) fear                      c) pleasure                      d) certainty
- 8 Some local farmers still use ..... farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.  
a) developed                      b) modern                      c) traditional                      d) applied
- 9 There are plans to send ..... and some ordinary people to Mars by 2030.  
a) collectors                      b) spices                      c) species                      d) astronauts
- 10 You can enjoy an excellent ..... of leisure and sporting facilities in Sharm El Sheikh.  
a) range                      b) queue                      c) activity                      d) line
- 11 The panda was listed as a threatened ..... many years ago.  
a) plant                      b) species                      c) planet                      d) spice
- 12 I just had time to scan the newspaper ..... before leaving for work.  
a) addresses                      b) lines                      c) headlines                      d) articles
- 13 My grandfather has always kept an accurate medical .....  
a) past                      b) cost                      c) report                      d) record

- 14 She spends a lot of her free time ..... chatting or browsing the sites.  
 a) inline                      b) online                      c) offline                      d) outline
- 15 There's an interesting documentary on ..... 4 tonight.  
 a) Channel                      b) Canal                      c) Lake                      d) Podcast
- 16 I saw her a few days before she .....  
 a) immigrates                      b) had immigrated                      c) immigrating                      d) immigrated
- 17 After ..... school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.  
 a) had left                      b) leaving                      c) being left                      d) leave
- 18 Once the journalists had asked all their questions, the politician .....  
 a) was left                      b) was leaving                      c) had left                      d) left
- 19 By the time we got to the stadium, our team ..... two goals.  
 a) has scored                      b) were scoring                      c) had scored                      d) will score
- 20 I ..... a radio programme about Naguib Mahfouz last week.  
 a) heard                      b) was hearing                      c) had heard                      d) am hearing
- 21 He ..... writing books until the 1950s.  
 a) had started                      b) hasn't started  
 c) didn't start                      d) wasn't starting
- 22 Ahmed ..... with the company for five years before he quit and went with their rivals.  
 a) was working                      b) had worked  
 c) has worked                      d) is working
- 23 I didn't go with you to the cinema because I ..... this film.  
 a) already see                      b) have already seen  
 c) didn't see                      d) had already seen
- 24 The student decided not to make that mistake again after ..... by the teacher.  
 a) being punished                      b) punishing  
 c) had punished                      d) punished
- 25 When we said goodnight, we had had a good conversation. This means .....  
 a) our conversation wasn't finished  
 b) we finished talking and went to bed  
 c) after saying goodnight, our good conversation started  
 d) we would have a good conversation on going to bed

**Fill in the gap with the suitable word:**

Not long ago, newspapers, radio and television were the main **false – sources – cause – Internet – reliable – media** (1) of getting news and information. People were greatly affected by them and many rules were set to make them more (2) and trustworthy. However, with the emergence of the (3), things have changed a lot. Most young people now consider that social (4) and other websites are more trustworthy. They are also quicker in spreading news and events. Even printed newspapers are now in danger of disappearing. Unfortunately, some of the news these sites post is (5). That's why experts warn us not to trust all the news on the Internet. Some of them may be previously prepared rumours that can (6) serious problems.

**Choose the correct answer:**

Medhat wishes he were fitter. When he ran in a race last week, he 1) (was/had been) beaten by everyone. If he 2) (had run/ran) faster, he would have been able to win the race. Before 3) (took/taking) part in the race, he 4) (was/had) asked his doctor for advice. He 5) (was /had been) advised to stop smoking. He wishes he 6) (didn't start /hadn't started) smoking.

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Tigers are one of the most powerful and graceful animals in the world. The different species that still exist today, namely the Bengal, Indochina, Siberian, South China and Sumatra tigers are in danger of becoming extinct. Due to irresponsible hunting, the Bali, Caspian and Java tigers have already become extinct. This could soon happen to the other species too.

Tigers do not shy away from water and enjoy bathing in streams and lakes to escape the heat in hot climates.

In the past, tigers were considered pests. With a smaller area to hunt, as man had taken up more of the land to build upon, the tigers found less areas for themselves to hunt. They thus turned to farms to get their food. Farmers' livestock were attacked by these tigers. People were then encouraged to hunt and kill these animals with the promise of rewards. Even after the threat of tigers on livestock was over, man continued to hunt tigers, this time for recreation. Poachers too hunt tigers for their body parts knowing that the skin of tigers is much sought after. Bones and other organs are also used as ingredients in traditional Chinese medicine. Although killing tigers is illegal, it is still being carried out and unless it is stopped. The remaining species of tigers will soon become extinct too.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 How many species of tigers were there originally?
  - a) Three.
  - b) Four.
  - c) Five.
  - d) Eight.
- 2 There were less hunting grounds for the tigers because .....
  - a) the tiger population was becoming bigger
  - b) man had occupied the land
  - c) the farmers put their livestock there
  - d) they liked hunting livestock
- 3 Poachers are people who .....
  - a) catch tigers
  - b) make Chinese medicine
  - c) hunt tigers illegally
  - d) hunt tigers' body parts
- 4 Illegal poaching will .....
  - a) cause the extinction of tigers
  - b) increase the population of tigers
  - c) increase the amount of Chinese medicine
  - d) increase the price of body parts

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 Why does man continue hunting tigers even when they are no longer pest?
- 6 Find words from the passage that mean:
  - a) undependable
  - b) cattle
- 7 Give two reasons why tigers are captured.
- 8 How do you think countries can save both tigers and the livestock?

**5 A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. Mass media play an important part in shaping public opinion and public attitudes. Therefore, there are new laws that assure the credibility and responsibility of them.
2. Many young men accept the news they get from social media as a truth. However, much of this news can be misleading and may disturb stability and peace of society.
3. Tourists in Egypt enjoy safari trips as they spend their time in natural places and deserts. These trips are great attractions to them.
4. Travelling is a way to broaden our horizons and get people accustomed to other cultures. It is really useful for the old and the young.

5. Due to passive modern ways of entertainment such as the TV and the internet, young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.
6. The political crises in the Middle East have a big effect on other parts of the world. Illegal immigration is one of their basic consequences.

### B) Translate into English:

- ١- تعمل شركات الكمبيوتر على تطوير برامج حماية الأطفال من التصفح غير الآمن للإنترنت وذلك لحمايتهم من أضرار المواقع العسيفة.
- ٢- هل توافق على وضع قوانين لمراقبة وحظر مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعي خاصة التي أصبحت مصدرًا للشائعات المهددة للمجتمع؟
- ٣- يختلف الناس في نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعي، ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها وأنها أصبحت تضر بالعلاقات الاجتماعية.
- ٤- يستغل المنتجون مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في الإعلان عن منتجاتهم بسبب جذبها للملايين من الناس لكن هذه الإعلانات أصبحت مزعجة لتكرارها وإاعتقائها لاستخدعى المواقع المختلفة.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

advertising	الإعلان	illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية
attitudes	اتجاهات	misleading	مضلل
broaden	يوسع	passive	سلبي
credibility	مصداقية	public opinion	الرأي العام
crises	أزمات	responsibility	مسئولية
developing	تطور	stability	استقرار
flexibility	مرونة		

- 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism"

 Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading

adults (n)	كبار/بالغين	launch (v) (ed)	يطلق
agree (v) (d)	يوافق	reader (n)	قارئ
brilliant (adj)	متميز/رائع	teenage (n)	مرحلة المراهقة
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	teenager (n)	مراهق
creation (n)	خلق/إنتاج	tone (n)	نغمة/أنبرة صوت
education (n)	التعليم	speed (n)	سرعة
journalism (n)	صحافة	website (n)	موقع إنترنت
keen (adj)	حريص/متحمس		

## Vocabulary on Listening

coastal (adj)	ساحلى	report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يكتب تقريراً
emergency (n)	طوارئ	serious (adj)	جد/خطير
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	stick (v)	يلتصق/يلتصق
involved (adj)	متورط	uninjured (adj)	غير مصاب
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
neighbour (n)	جار	wave (n)	موجة
pronunciation (n)	نطق	witness (n) (v) (ed)	شاهد/يشهد



artist (n)	فنان
barrier (n)	حاجز
bury (v) (ied)	يدفن
cave (n)	كهف
century (n)	قرن
connector (n)	إدارة ربط
consequences (n)	نتائج/عواقب
council (n)	مجلس/هيئة/معهد
erect (v) (ed)	يبني/يشيد
exploration (n)	استكشاف
historian (n)	مؤرخ
incident (n)	حادثة
location (n)	موقع
monument (n)	أثر
necropolis (n)	مقبرة كبيرة

objects (n)	أشياء
order (n)	ترتيب
over ground (adj)	فوق الأرض
overhead (adj)	هوائي
permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
proud (adj)	فخور
recent (adj)	حديث
remains (n)	بقايا/أثر
remarkable (adj)	رائع
route (n)	طريق
sculpture (n)	تمثال/نحت
spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسمي
successful (adj)	ناجح
whale (n)	حوت

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

call for help	يطلب/يتصل للمساعدة	give permission	يمنع إذن/تصريح
cover the important information	يغطي/يتناول المعلومات الهامة	in the hope of	على أمل أن
able to	قادر أن	interested in	مهتم بـ
example of	مثال لـ	keen on	حريص على
happy about	سعيد بـ	spokesperson for	متحدث لـ

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
educate	يعلم	education	التعليم	educational	تعليمي
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافي
locate	يحدد موقع/يقع	location	موقع	-----	-----
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن/تصريح	permitted	مسموح
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح



## Reading Text (1)

**Pre-reading question:** - What kind of websites did Amy Hope want to create? Why?

## A teenage world!

A new website has just been **launched**<sup>(1)</sup> by teenagers for teenagers.

**Our World** is the **creation**<sup>(2)</sup> of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'



(1) يطلق

(2) خلق/إنتاج

(3) تعليم

(4) كبار/بالغين

(5) حريص/متمحس

**Our World** has news, technology, **education**<sup>(3)</sup>, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to **adults**<sup>(4)</sup>,' Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are **keen**<sup>(5)</sup> on the same things as me.'

**Post-reading question:** - Do you think that the website *Our World* is useful? Why?

## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Two days ago historian, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient **remains**<sup>(1)</sup> of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been **buried**<sup>(2)</sup> for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given **permission**<sup>(3)</sup> to explore a **necropolis**<sup>(4)</sup> on Luxor's West Bank, in the hope of finding out more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting objects.

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most **remarkable**<sup>(5)</sup> discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a **spokesperson**<sup>(6)</sup> for the government said.

(1) بقايا/الآثار

(2) مدفون

(3) إذن/تصريح

(4) مقبرة كبيرة

(5) رائع

(6) متحدث رسمي

### Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The company hopes to ..... the new fashion line by next October.
  - attack
  - compete
  - consume
  - launch
- My cousin received her ..... at private schools until secondary school.
  - treatment
  - surgery
  - education
  - punishment
- Children must be accompanied by a/an ..... in the museum.
  - friend
  - adult
  - driver
  - safeguard
- The ..... of the soldier who died abroad will be returned to his family for burial.
  - remains
  - bricks
  - specks
  - seeds
- Archaeologists uncovered a ..... of an ancient Egyptian in Saqqara.
  - palace
  - necropolis
  - valley
  - cave

**Pre-listening question:**

- What is the strangest piece of news have you ever heard or read?



- Two walkers had a **lucky**<sup>(1)</sup> escape last night after a storm hit the small **coastal**<sup>(2)</sup> village of Largs in Scotland. Heavy rain started at 5pm and by 6pm strong winds had blown a lot of water onto the footpath on the sea front. **Witnesses**<sup>(3)</sup> say that the walkers were halfway along the path when a huge **wave**<sup>(4)</sup> knocked them over. Police believe that the walkers were two local women but no names have been given and the women have been returned safe and well to their families.
- Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager stuck in a bathroom window. Neighbours saw the feet of 13 year old Leila Tahar **sticking**<sup>(5)</sup> out of the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to free the teenager they discovered that Leila lived at the house but had forgotten her keys! She said, 'The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!'

(1) مسطوره

(2) ساحلي

(3) شهود

(4) موجة

(5) تعلق

**Post-listening question:**

- What is strange about the second piece of news in the text?



## Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

### Newsreader:

Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly. The plastic **sculpture**<sup>(1)</sup> of a whale's tail, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local artist, had been erected by the Local Council at the end of an overground railway line. Little did they expect the work of art to save lives. However, last week when, for some **unknown**<sup>(2)</sup> reason the train could not stop at the final station on its route, it crashed through the safety **barriers**<sup>(3)</sup>. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the runaway train and prevent it from falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily. Luckily, the train had been emptied just moments before so the only person onboard was the train driver. As he got off the train **uninjured**<sup>(4)</sup>, he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very **grateful**<sup>(5)</sup> to the artist who had created the tail.

So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives!

In other news ...

- (1) تمثال
- (2) غير معروف
- (3) حواجز
- (4) غير مصاب
- (5) شاكرا ممتن



## Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The fisherman's small boat was smashed by a huge \_\_\_\_\_, but the fisherman was safe.
  - a) wave
  - b) drought
  - c) currant
  - d) shot
- 2 The glue \_\_\_\_\_ to the little boy's fingers every time he uses it.
  - a) spreads
  - b) sticks
  - c) wastes
  - d) affects
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ of the murder reported hearing two gunshots and a scream.
  - a) Inspectors
  - b) Criminals
  - c) Witnesses
  - d) Inventors
- 4 We were \_\_\_\_\_ to our neighbours for letting us use their garden for the party.
  - a) regretful
  - b) useful
  - c) hateful
  - d) grateful
- 5 Scientists believe that many \_\_\_\_\_ areas are in danger of being flooded because of the changes caused by global warming.
  - a) desert
  - b) empty
  - c) coastal
  - d) mountain

## Focus on Vocabulary



launch	يطلق	to start something, usually something big or important
remains	بقايا/التر	the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared
necropolis	مقبرة	an area of land where dead people are buried, especially a large ancient one
permission	إذن/اتصريح	if you have permission to do something, you are allowed to do it

## Synonym &amp; Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
barrier	حاجز	obstruction/blockade	assistance مساعدة
brilliant	متميز/رائع	outstanding/distinguished	ordinary/common عادي/شائع
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard يتخلى
consequences	نتائج/عواقب	results	causes أسباب
erect	يبنى/يشيد	build/construct	destroy يدمر
keen	حريص/متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned غير مهتم
launch	يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop ينهي/يوقف
permission	إذن/اتصريح	agreement/license	denial/refusal إنكار/رفض
remarkable	رائع	extraordinary	familiar مألوف

## Notes on Vocabulary



## permission

## permit

permission (uncountable)

Osama drove his father's car without his **permission**.

(تصريح) موافقة/رضا

permit (countable)

People from other countries require work **permits**.

تصريح رسمي مكتوب

## location

## position

location

We have not found a suitable **location** for the new offices.

موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلاً)

Most of the movie was shot on **location** in Africa.

position

First, get yourself into a comfortable **position**.

موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلاً) مكانة/وظيفة/مركز في اللعب

I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your **position**.

## exploration

## discovery

## invention

exploration

Scientists from all over the world have plans for space **exploration**.

استكشاف (مكان)

discovery

The **discovery** of oil has shared in the development of industry.

اكتشاف (شيء لم يكن معروفًا من قبل)

invention

No other **invention** had a greater effect on people's life than the internet.

اختراع (شيء لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)

## proud

proud of

The company is **proud of** its achievements.

فخور بـ (يتبعها اسم/ضمير أو (verb + ing))

proud to

I'm **proud to** say we made the right decision.

فخور أن (يتبعها الفعل في صيغة المصدر)

proud that

We're **proud that** they choose our school for the competition.

فخور لـ (يتبعها جملة كاملة)

modern

recent

المستحدث / تم منذ فترة قصيرة

recent

▶ All applicants should send a **recent** photo with their CV.

المستحدث / نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة

modern

▶ **Modern** technology has had a huge impact on all of us.

## Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

1 ..... said 13-year-old Henry ..... and his team discovered the ancient remains of a 15 or 16-year-old girl.

في استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) في التعبيرات السابقة بسبب استخدام العبارة كاملة كصفة للاسم بعدها.

2 The Egyptian **government was** very happy about the new discovery

في استخدام الفعل في صيغة المفرد (was) مع (government) لأن المقصود الحكومة ككل وليس كفراد.

3 'It's **much more interesting** than most websites.'

في استخدام (much) مع صفة المقارنة (more interesting) للتعبير عن درجة المقارنة بمعنى (كثيراً).

4 **Little did they expect** the work of art to save lives.

في استخدام صيغة الاستفهام (did they expect) لأن الجملة بدأت بـ (Little) وهو ما يعتبر (inversion).

الشيء قد يحدث مع تركيبات كثيرة إذا بدأنا بها مثل:

(No sooner - Hardly - Not only - In no way - Seldom - Rarely)



### Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Space travel is one of the wonders of ..... science.

- a) old                      b) recent                      c) modern                      d) vague

2 I'm very proud ..... take part in this great project.

- a) of                      b) to                      c) in                      d) that

3 International communication was changed a lot by the ..... of the internet.

- a) discovery                      b) invitation                      c) exploration                      d) invention

4 I didn't know you played hockey. In what ..... do you play?

- a) site                      b) location                      c) position                      d) sight

5 Parents have to give their ..... for their children to go on school trips.

- a) permission                      b) permit                      c) licence                      d) degree



# Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Historians have not always ..... about the exact date of Ramses II's coronation.  
 a) accepted                      b) agreed                      c) expected                      d) explored
- 2 Yehia El Fakhrany gave a/an ..... performance as King Lear. All the audience like him.  
 a) brilliant                      b) awful                      c) awkward                      d) terrible
- 3 This school is devoted to the ..... of children with reading difficulties.  
 a) practising                      b) prohibition                      c) education                      d) obligation
- 4 The clothes company is expected to ..... several new products next year.  
 a) erect                      b) attack                      c) attach                      d) launch
- 5 "Teen Stuff" magazine is very popular among ..... as it deals with their interests.  
 a) adults                      b) infants                      c) teenagers                      d) directors
- 6 In a/an ....., you can call 122 for police, the fire department or an ambulance.  
 a) evaluation                      b) emergency                      c) accuracy                      d) presentation
- 7 The expansion of the factory led to the ..... of 220 more jobs.  
 a) creation                      b) loss                      c) exploration                      d) discovery
- 8 I had to leave the room as I didn't want to become ..... in the argument.  
 a) intended                      b) excavated                      c) involved                      d) inhibited
- 9 In Paris, I met a group of young ....., poets, film-makers and painters.  
 a) fans                      b) editors                      c) reporters                      d) artists
- 10 Electric cables are usually ..... beneath the streets.  
 a) excavated                      b) buried                      c) drilled                      d) deployed
- 11 Two hundred people lost their jobs as a direct ..... of the factory closure.  
 a) purposes                      b) causes                      c) consequence                      d) reasons
- 12 The hotel is in a central ..... near the facilities at the city centre.  
 a) post                      b) location                      c) position                      d) posture
- 13 Ancient ..... are protected by law as part of the human civilization.  
 a) regulations                      b) mountains                      c) monuments                      d) points
- 14 You must get ..... from the owners before viewing the flat offered for rent.  
 a) position                      b) treaty                      c) contract                      d) permission
- 15 The new ..... revealed the artist's skillful hand.  
 a) exploration                      b) invention                      c) sculpture                      d) scene

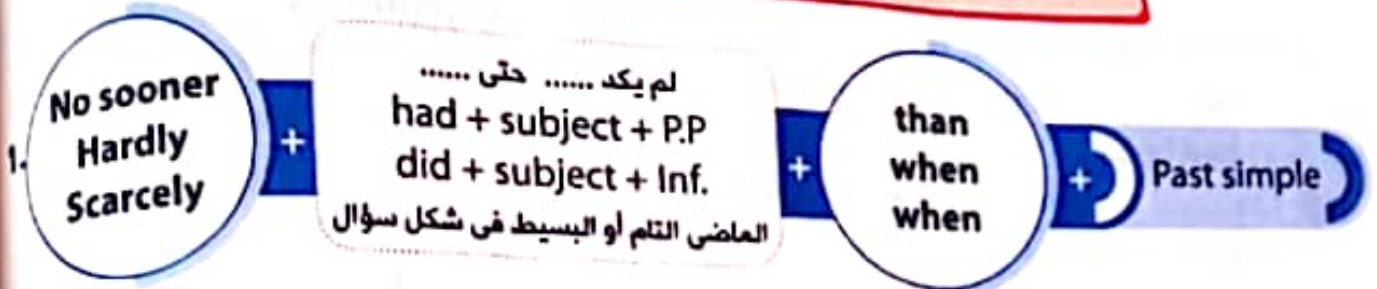
- 16 We found that the motorway is the most direct \_\_\_\_\_ outside the city.  
 a) street                      b) route                      c) road                      d) avenue
- 17 The driver slowed down as he approached the police \_\_\_\_\_ which checked licenses.  
 a) officer                      b) station                      c) state                      d) barrier
- 18 Winning the cup was a \_\_\_\_\_ achievement for our national team.  
 a) horrible                      b) strict                      c) remarkable                      d) fearful
- 19 My son is \_\_\_\_\_ to learn more about art history, that's why he will study at university.  
 a) profound                      b) keen                      c) brave                      d) refrained
- 20 The engineers found an ancient \_\_\_\_\_ while digging for oil.  
 a) necropolis                      b) post                      c) scene                      d) trial

**Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

- 21 The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ me permission to go home early as I was ill.  
 a) took                      b) got                      c) gave                      d) obtained
- 22 The lady taught her children to \_\_\_\_\_ for help if there is emergency.  
 a) offer                      b) ring                      c) yell                      d) call
- 23 They are not at all happy \_\_\_\_\_ the rise in taxes.  
 a) about                      b) with                      c) at                      d) of
- 24 Bob first got interested \_\_\_\_\_ motor cycles when he was about sixteen.  
 a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) for
- 25 I called early in the \_\_\_\_\_ of catching her before she went to work.  
 a) species                      b) call                      c) hope                      d) shout
- 26 Using the Internet is an easy way to make a \_\_\_\_\_ between prices.  
 a) compare                      b) comparison                      c) compared                      d) comparative
- 27 He's going to have \_\_\_\_\_ surgery on his knee.  
 a) explore                      b) exploration                      c) explored                      d) exploratory
- 28 It is believed that no one can be \_\_\_\_\_ at everything.  
 a) succeed                      b) success                      c) successful                      d) successfully
- 29 The church was erected in 1582. The verb "erect" is similar in meaning to the verb \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) demolish                      b) destroy                      c) set                      d) construct
- 30 The factory launched the new line of jeans. The word "launch" can be the opposite of the word \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) end                      b) continue                      c) start                      d) release

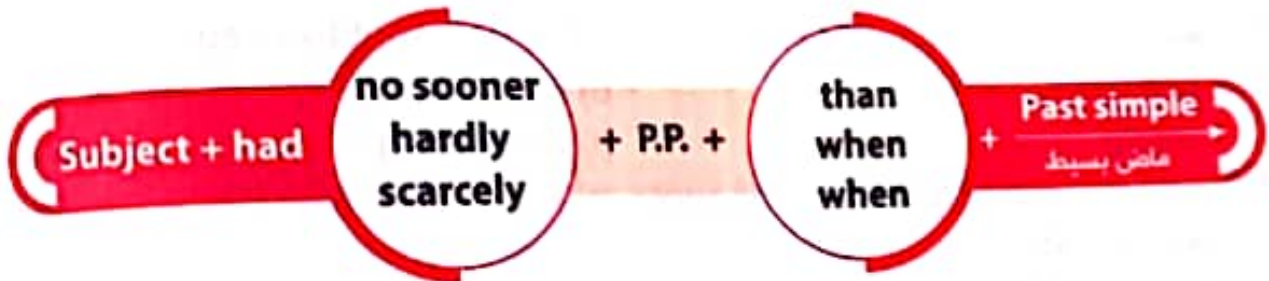
**Language**

**Past perfect (Extra points)**



- ▶ No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.
- ▶ No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إنما جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:



- ▶ Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

2.

**On + v-ing = when + clause**

- ▶ On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked ....., I knew .....

3.

**By + تام + فترة في الماضي**

- ▶ By yesterday بحلول امس, he had applied for the job.

4.

**Having + P.P = After + Past perfect**

- ▶ Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked .....

5.

**It was only when** + **ماضي بسيط + that + ماضي تام** + **إنه فقط عندما**  
**It wasn't until** + **لم يكن حتى**

- ▶ It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- ▶ It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.



### Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 No sooner ..... his country than he had lots of problems.
  - a) he had left
  - b) he left
  - c) had he left
  - d) was he leaving
- 2 On ..... the bad news, he fainted.
  - a) hearing
  - b) had heard
  - c) heard
  - d) he had heard
- 3 Having ..... a lot of problems, he asked his uncle for help.
  - a) had had
  - b) he had had
  - c) have
  - d) had
- 4 It wasn't until midnight that I ..... better and went to sleep.
  - a) had felt
  - b) felt
  - c) feeling
  - d) was feeling
- 5 When I ..... the thief, he ran away.
  - a) was seeing
  - b) seen
  - c) saw
  - d) had been seen

### استخدامات أخرى للماضى التام (Past perfect (other uses)

- يشترط الحالة الثالثة من **if**
- If our team **had played** well yesterday, they would have won the cup.
- wish/if only** للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضى
- I wish I **had studied** harder last year.
- I'd rather** فى حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبر عن اللوم والندم فى الماضى.
- I'd rather you **hadn't done** that = I wish you hadn't done that.

## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We couldn't get a table because we ..... one in advance.  
 a) had booked                      b) haven't booked                      c) had not booked                      d) weren't booked
- 2 When I arrived at the employment agency, twenty other people ..... before me.  
 a) had arrived                      b) were arrived                      c) were arriving                      d) had been arrived
- 3 I saw that most people ..... the party when I arrived.  
 a) leave                      b) left                      c) have left                      d) had already left
- 4 He ..... the Nobel Prize until he had written 100 novels.  
 a) awarded                      b) hadn't awarded                      c) didn't award                      d) wasn't awarded
- 5 ..... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.  
 a) Having                      b) While                      c) When                      d) After
- 6 No sooner ..... he stepped on my foot than he apologised to me.  
 a) did                      b) had                      c) have                      d) will
- 7 Belal ..... the day before that he would be the one who told Yousif the bad news.  
 a) has insisted                      b) had insisted                      c) insisted                      d) insists
- 8 ..... in a big city before you moved to Alexandria?  
 a) Have you worked                      b) Were you working  
 c) Had you worked                      d) Would you work
- 9 My cousin ..... in a big city before he visited Cairo.  
 a) wasn't                      b) has never been  
 c) wouldn't be                      d) had never been
- 10 We weren't allowed to take the plane because we ..... the tickets.  
 a) forget                      b) had forgotten                      c) have forgotten                      d) forgetting
- 11 Hardly had he found a good job ..... he told his father.  
 a) than                      b) then                      c) when                      d) what
- 12 When I got to school, the first lesson ..... we missed the start.  
 a) had already begun                      b) has already begun  
 c) began                      d) hadn't begun
- 13 I asked Ali about Luxor because he ..... there.  
 a) has already been                      b) had already been  
 c) is                      d) would be

- 14 Ramy was hungry because he \_\_\_\_\_ anything all day.  
 a) hasn't eaten      b) wasn't eaten      c) never eats      d) hadn't eaten
- 15 The police had solved the problem before many people \_\_\_\_\_ the protest.  
 a) joined      b) had joined      c) joining      d) have joined
- 16 They \_\_\_\_\_ all the doors before they left.  
 a) have      b) will lock      c) locking      d) locked
- 17 She didn't see the film because she \_\_\_\_\_ it the previous week.  
 a) saw      b) has seen      c) had seen      d) would see
- 18 I didn't want lunch because I \_\_\_\_\_ at school.  
 a) have eaten      b) had eaten      c) was eating      d) hadn't eaten
- 19 The children weren't allowed to watch TV because they \_\_\_\_\_ their homework.  
 a) had done      b) have done      c) must have done      d) hadn't done
- 20 Omar came to the theatre because he \_\_\_\_\_ the play.  
 a) hasn't seen      b) had already seen      c) hadn't seen      d) wasn't seeing
- 21 The criminal changed his name after he \_\_\_\_\_ his hometown.  
 a) left      b) leaving      c) was leaving      d) leaves
- 22 It was only when he \_\_\_\_\_ the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.  
 a) was reading      b) had read      c) has read      d) reads
- 23 When we got the bill, Mohamed \_\_\_\_\_ on paying.  
 a) has insisted      b) had insisted      c) insisted      d) insists
- 24 I didn't have a coffee because I'd already \_\_\_\_\_ two cups.  
 a) drink      b) drank      c) drunken      d) drunk
- 25 Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?  
 a) Hardly had Osama applied for the job when he took it.  
 b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.  
 c) No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.  
 d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.

## Presenting news stories

### Be Sure to Write for the Ear

Always read your script out loud in a conversational tone so you can judge if an audience will be able to understand it. Also, beware of words that sound alike but mean different things.

### Avoid the Passive Voice

Passive voice writing jumbles up the usual sequence of subject, verb, object in active voice writing. An active voice helps distinguish between verbs and subjects.

### Use Present Tense Wherever Possible

TV news is timely as opposed to print news writing that relates a bigger story, putting facts and information into context.

### Write Stories for People

Viewers need to feel your stories are directed at them, or else they'll turn away.

### Befriend Action Verbs

In news writing, verbs are your best friend. Verbs are the part of speech that adds life and verve to your stories.

### Be Careful With Numbers

Numbers are hard to absorb, especially if there are a lot of them.

### Sell the Story

A news writer has to be a salesperson and sell the product as something superior to the competition.

### Move the Story Forward

A good TV news story ends telling the audience what will happen next.



## Practice

Discuss these questions in pairs:

- 1 Do you often share news stories with your friends and family?
- 2 Have you ever shared a story that you later found out to be untrue?
- 3 How can you check the facts in an article?

References: <https://www.thebalancecareers.com/how-to-write-a-news-script-for-tv-news-2315281#be-sure-to-write-for-the-ear>

## Life Skills

### Self-management

Self-management skills are the abilities that allow people to control their thoughts, feelings and actions. If you have strong self-management skills, you're able to set goals independently and take the initiative to achieve them. Purposeful self-management can help you direct the trajectory of your career and ensure you seek opportunities that get you closer to your goals.

**Self-management skills focus on personal responsibility in the following areas:**

Organization	Goal setting	Time management
Self-motivation	Stress management	Accountability

### How to Improve self-management skills

- Assess **your strengths**
- Develop **organizational systems**
- Perform **one task at a time.**
- Take **care of your health and wellness.**
- Prioritize **your responsibilities**
- Create **strict deadlines.**
- Practice **patience.**

Reference <https://www.indeed.com/career-advice/career-development/self-management-skills>



## Writing

### A News Report تقرير إخباري

#### A Volunteering Campaign!

A group of teenage students in East Alexandria have started a volunteering campaign to clean the beaches in their area. They have been working for ten hours daily. They have done a great work and people started to know about them and give them all the help they could.

"Summer is about to start and a lot of people are about to visit our city, so it would be suitable to find our beaches clean," said Ahmed Agamy who started the campaign. They collected a lot of rubbish from the dirty beaches and collected them in plastic bags. Some restaurant owners near the beaches provided them with vehicles to take this rubbish to landfill sites.

The beaches are cleaner now and look great. Mariam, one of the participants said "It was hard work, but we are all delighted to help our society." All the students who took part in the campaign were excited after the work had been done. They said that cleaning the beaches is good for the environment and would help the economy in their city.



# General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I think that starting your own project is a ..... idea that will bring you success.  
a) brilliant                      b) trivial                      c) minor                      d) mean
- 2 The violent storm caused ..... damage to farm buildings and they would take a lot of time to be repaired.  
a) simple                      b) serious                      c) fragile                      d) heavy
- 3 This dictionary can serve as a guide to English ..... as well as meaning.  
a) punctuation                      b) connection                      c) pronunciation                      d) communication
- 4 You shouldn't use that rude ..... of voice with old people.  
a) ton                      b) note                      c) syllable                      d) tone
- 5 A ..... is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff or hill, or under the ground.  
a) tunnel                      b) gap                      c) hut                      d) cave
- 6 At the entrance of Abu Simbel, there are four huge ..... of King Ramses II.  
a) baggage                      b) rest rooms                      c) sculptures                      d) views
- 7 The museum has an impressive collection of prehistoric .....  
a) memorials                      b) remains                      c) memorandums                      d) corpses
- 8 Medical science has made amazing progress in ..... years.  
a) old                      b) ancient                      c) recent                      d) modern
- 9 I felt so ..... when my son graduated from college.  
a) proud                      b) ashamed                      c) shy                      d) guilty
- 10 You can ..... the program by double-clicking on the icon.  
a) finish                      b) launch                      c) inhibit                      d) repair
- 11 Egypt has more than one third of the world's ancient ..... especially in Luxor.  
a) species                      b) forests                      c) monuments                      d) wildlife
- 12 I wasn't too keen ..... going to my friend's birthday party.  
a) in                      b) of                      c) at                      d) on
- 13 News ..... suggest that over 300 people may have died in the plane crash.  
a) reports                      b) mails                      c) documents                      d) papers
- 14 The movie is set in the 19<sup>th</sup> ..... during the reign of Queen Victoria.  
a) decade                      b) century                      c) millennium                      d) calendar
- 15 I couldn't call anyone because I ..... my phone.  
a) have lost                      b) had lost                      c) was losing                      d) am losing
- 16 Hany was late for the meeting and was angry because we ..... without him.  
a) were starting                      b) starting                      c) had started                      d) have started

- 17 The press conference ..... by the time the TV cameras arrived.  
 a) had already started                      b) has already started  
 c) already starts                              d) was already starting
- 18 The garden was dirty as people ..... rubbish everywhere.  
 a) were leaving                                b) had been left  
 c) were left                                      d) had left
- 19 As soon as I had met him, I ..... everything.  
 a) was knowing                      b) know                      c) knew                      d) had known
- 20 Rameses II ..... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.  
 a) was ruling                      b) has ruled                      c) has ruled                      d) ruled
- 21 The scientist ..... the press after he had discovered a new plant species.  
 a) informed                      b) had informed                      c) was informing                      d) has informed
- 22 He said that his mother would be very upset when she ..... that he had lost his job.  
 a) would learn                      b) learned                      c) learns                      d) had learned
- 23 After the parcel ....., I received it.  
 a) has arrived                      b) arrives                      c) had been arrived                      d) had arrived
- 24 Hardly ..... the match when I felt that pain.  
 a) I played                      b) I had played                      c) had I played                      d) will I play

2 Choose the correct answer:

Dalia said that her husband and she 1) (think) of moving to Cairo the previous year. It was only last month that they 2) (make) up their mind after 3) (find) a flat to live in. they 4) (have) been looking for a couple of weeks before they found it. They originally 5) (think) about staying with the family, but the house 6) (be) so small that they changed their mind.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was a homework-free weekend. Shady suggested going swimming. He had just completed his swimming course and was eager to try out the skills he had learnt. His friends readily agreed. They headed straight for their neighborhood swimming complex. It was quite crowded. They changed quickly and leapt into the pool. They splashed around on the shallower end. A lifeguard was keeping a watchful eye on all the swimmers. Shady challenged his friends for a swim over in the deep end. They refused as they knew it was dangerous for them. Besides, they did not swim that well after all. Diving to the deep end wasn't easy for them to do. Shady insisted that he was a better swimmer and set out to prove it. He walked over to the deep end and plunged in.

At first everything seemed alright and he did well, so all his friends cheered. Suddenly, Shady gave a shout and started flailing his arms. He was having difficulties! His friends were too shocked to react. Luckily, the lifeguard noticed him and quickly dived in. When he was safely out of the pool, the lifeguard gave him a tongue-lashing for fooling around. Shady apologized. All the way home, he had to endure his friends making fun of him. It seemed that he needed a lot of training.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Shady and his friend went swimming during the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) weekday
  - b) holidays
  - c) break
  - d) weekend
- 2 Shady suggested swimming as he wanted to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) show off his swimming skills to his friends
  - b) test the lifeguard
  - c) teach his friends the skills he had learnt
  - d) complete his swimming course
- 3 The swimming pool was crowded as it was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) the holiday
  - b) a weekday
  - c) the weekend
  - d) free
- 4 'Tongue lashing' means giving a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) warning
  - b) scolding
  - c) encouragement
  - d) advice

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 Why did Shady's friends not want to swim in the deep end?
- 6 Find words from the passage that mean:
  - a) keen and impatient
  - b) bear
- 7 Show that Shady was rash and lack in training.
- 8 Give evidence that the lifeguard was attentive?

**5) A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. The life of Taha Hussein has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.
2. Students need continuous motivation to excel in their studies. Studying stories and specific poems can help them do so.
3. Education is considered the cornerstone to achieve progress in all fields. That's why schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.

4. Salah Jaheen was an Egyptian poet who developed the style of contemporary Egyptian poetry. Many of his poems were made into songs that are still remembered everywhere.
5. Why do we no longer think of the beauty of nature or stop to enjoy an attractive scene? Did modern technology really change our nature and our way of thinking?
6. The Egyptian history is full of great authors who have a great effect on Arab literature and culture. That's why we owe much to those distinguished authors.

### B) Translate into English:

- ١- يعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها حيث يقول الخبراء إنه ربما يكون لها آثاراً على ارتفاع معدل الجريمة.
- ٢- امتعت كل دول العالم بحرق غابات الأمازون في البرازيل لأنها جزء من الغابات الاستوائية التي تسمى «رئة الأرض».
- ٣- يؤدي ارتفاع الأسعار إلى كثير من المشكلات الأسرية فمتطلبات الأسرة الأساسية أصبحت تعتل عبئاً كبيراً على رب الأسرة مما قد يؤدي إلى بعض المشكلات الاجتماعية.
- ٤- لا يعتقد كثير من الشباب أن الأدب يمكن أن يلعب دوراً في ترقية المجتمع ودفعه للأمام مما أدى إلى انخفاض مبيعات القصص ودواوين الشعر.

### Enrich your Vocabulary

attractive	جذاب	motivation	حافز/دافع
burden	عبئاً	phenomenon	ظاهرة
contemporary	معاصر	promoting	ترقية
cornerstone	حجر الزاوية	rate	معدل
excel	يتميز	reform	إصلاح
inspire	يلهم	sales	مبيعات
literature	الأدب		

- 6 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?"

# Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the **TWO** correct answers out of the **FIVE** options given:

- 1 The President's speech will be broadcast on all channels at 6.00 this evening. The verb "broadcast" is similar in meaning to .....
  - a) announce
  - b) download
  - c) consume
  - d) watch
  - e) transmit
- 2 After the boxer won the amateur championship, he turned professional. The word "professional" can be the opposite of .....
  - a) academic
  - b) smart
  - c) amateur
  - d) inexperienced
  - e) experimented
- 3 The new machines were not yet ..... enough to give useful results.
  - a) valued
  - b) accurate
  - c) hazardous
  - d) precise
  - e) complex
- 4 Two hundred people lost their jobs as a direct ..... of the company's reform programme.
  - a) result
  - b) purpose
  - c) route
  - d) consequence
  - e) reason
- 5 A new version of the game for computers will be ..... in February.
  - a) populated
  - b) printed
  - c) released
  - d) consumed
  - e) launched
- 6 After the car he had ..... repaired, it was polished.
  - a) been
  - b) had been
  - c) hadn't
  - d) was
  - e) had
- 7 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
  - a) The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.
  - b) The ancient Egyptians had used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.
  - c) The ancient Egyptians had built the pyramids.
  - d) The ancient Egyptians had built the pyramids before the Sphinx.
  - e) The ancient Egyptians believed in life after they had died.
- 8 Ali looked both ways, and then he crossed the street. Two of the following sentences don't give a similar meaning to the one above.
  - a) Ali crossed the street after looking both ways.
  - b) When Ali had crossed the street, he looked both ways.
  - c) Before crossing the street, Ali had looked both ways.
  - d) Before looking both ways, Ali crossed the street.
  - e) No sooner did Ali look both ways than he crossed the street.
- 9 Hardly had he made the mistake when he was dismissed. This means .....
  - a) He made the mistake first, then he was dismissed
  - b) He was dismissed first, then he made the mistake
  - c) He didn't make the mistake, but he was dismissed
  - d) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake
  - e) He was dismissed before making the mistake
- 10 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
  - a) By the time I came back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
  - b) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.
  - c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
  - d) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
  - e) By the time I have come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 11 Although they live in the ocean, the salmon fish return to the river as ..... in order to breed.  
 a) teenagers                      b) meals                      c) adults                      d) young
- 12 The local newspapers ..... a fierce attack on the Ministry of Health after the accident in the hospital.  
 a) involved                      b) launched                      c) shot                      d) fired
- 13 Some dogs have a/an ..... sense of smell, so they are used by the police to detect things such as drugs.  
 a) interested                      b) eager                      c) weak                      d) keen
- 14 You can earn ..... money working as a professional footballer nowadays.  
 a) serious                      b) dangerous                      c) scarce                      d) tiny
- 15 It is believed that hard work is the ..... to success in life.  
 a) syllabus                      b) street                      c) method                      d) route
- 16 Don't ..... the fact that your brother lost his job as he is very sensitive about his job.  
 a) publish                      b) broadcast                      c) spoil                      d) speck
- 17 The evolution of smartphones and fast internet connections led to a great increase in the ..... marketing industry.  
 a) download                      b) software                      c) digital                      d) colourful
- 18 House prices have ..... up this year because the prices of building materials have increased.  
 a) zoomed                      b) spoiled                      c) decreased                      d) picked
- 19 Psychologists say that music is a great ..... for releasing your emotions.  
 a) studio                      b) station                      c) canal                      d) channel
- 20 A lot of talks to solve the military dispute have been going on behind the .....  
 a) sites                      b) scenes                      c) sights                      d) scenery
- 21 The dentist ..... me to brush my teeth twice a day.  
 a) permitted                      b) complained                      c) advised                      d) suggested
- 22 Ibrahim said he ..... ill the previous week.  
 a) had been                      b) has been                      c) will be                      d) would be
- 23 We donated some money to a charity that helps ..... homeless.  
 a) a                      b) an                      c) no article                      d) the
- 24 I ..... that film four times already.  
 a) see                      b) have seen                      c) have been seeing                      d) saw
- 25 I ..... come to the cinema yesterday because I had so much homework to do.  
 a) shouldn't                      b) mustn't                      c) couldn't                      d) may not
- 26 Bill read an interesting ..... of news in the paper.  
 a) piece                      b) slice                      c) packet                      d) block
- 27 I'd rather he ..... me to my face rather than behind my back.  
 a) to criticise                      b) has criticized                      c) criticising                      d) criticised
- 28 "Would you like to have cake or ice cream?" - ..... you want."  
 a) Something                      b) Whatever                      c) Everything                      d) However
- 29 Reham ..... to the shop to get some bread. She should be back soon.  
 a) has been                      b) was gone                      c) has gone                      d) was
- 30 It would have been better if you ..... her the truth.  
 a) had told                      b) told                      c) are telling                      d) tell

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Dr. Zewail went to America to complete his ..... before settling there.  
 a) affection                      b) education                      c) practice                      d) fiction
- 2 The ..... with the new prime minister will be shown on tonight's news.  
 a) interview                      b) criticism                      c) attack                      d) truce
- 3 There are many search ..... in competition, but Google is the most popular.  
 a) powers                      b) routes                      c) engines                      d) motors
- 4 During the war The American writer Hemingway was employed as a newspaper ..... in Paris.  
 a) fighter                      b) advertiser                      c) announcer                      d) correspondent
- 5 My father believes that ..... shopping is both cheap and convenient, so he buys most of his things from shopping websites.  
 a) inline                      b) offline                      c) online                      d) outline
- 6 When my daughter apologised for her mistake, I felt a ..... of regret in her voice.  
 a) sound                      b) tone                      c) look                      d) song
- 7 We went to London last year, but we ..... there two years earlier.  
 a) had also been                      b) were being                      c) have also been                      d) would be
- 8 Although Kareem ..... the test many times before, he was very nervous.  
 a) has done                      b) had been doing                      c) was doing                      d) had done
- 9 Before I went to bed, I ..... my friend.  
 a) was phoning                      b) was phoned                      c) had phoned                      d) have phoned
- 10 She didn't sleep until she ..... her homework.  
 a) had done                      b) has done                      c) does                      d) will do
- 11 After she had passed her driving test, she ..... a new car.  
 a) had bought                      b) bought                      c) will buy                      d) is buying
- 12 As soon as it stopped raining, the match .....  
 a) will start                      b) started                      c) had started                      d) has started
- 13 I ..... you an e-mail earlier this morning.  
 a) sent                      b) 've sent                      c) had sent                      d) was sending

- 14 The boy ..... photos after the police had left the scene.  
 a) was taking      b) had taken      c) took      d) was taken
- 15 I went to Belgium last month. I ..... there before. It's a beautiful country.  
 a) had never been      b) have never been  
 c) never was      d) never been
- 16 He knew that she had been crying as her eyes ..... red.  
 a) have been      b) had been  
 c) are      d) were

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the US. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot Car Company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor Company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 17 Which company first built only cars?  
 a) Benz.      b) Ford.  
 c) Panhard.      d) Duryea.
- 18 Fuel is .....  
 a) what makes cars go  
 b) a car production system  
 c) the price of a car  
 d) none of the previous



What is an assembly line?

- a) A way of making products.  
 c) A quick way of making products.  
 The Ford Motor Company opened a  
 a) factory in Denmark in 1911  
 c) factory in Britain in 1929

- b) A safe way of making products.  
 d) All of the previous.

- b) factory in Germany in 1925  
 d) factory in France in 1931

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- When did the Peugeot Car Company start?  
 Whose idea was the assembly line?  
 What is a factory?  
 What is the difference between the cars using gasoline or diesel and those using natural gas or electricity?

**Translate into English:**

- تؤدي النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

**Translate into Arabic:**

Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and consult. They are the outcome of their experience in life.

**Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel.



**تطبيق الأضواء**  
 ALADWAA

تابع مستواك الدراسي أسبوعياً  
 من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات شاملة  
 لجميع المواد.  
 حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)



## Unit 11

## What a performance!

### Objectives

- Reading** : Online film reviews
- Writing** : Two film reviews
- Listening** : Interview with a film critic / Interview
- Language** : Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs
- Speaking** : Explain how a film affects you
- Life skills** : Critical thinking: listening to others' opinions, recognising differences in opinion



# Warm up



speech bubbles with the questions to complete the dialogue:



Do you like watching movies?

.....

What kind of films do you like to watch?

.....

What's your favourite film?

.....



## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

action (n)	حركة
animation (n)	الرسوم المتحركة
comedy (n)	كوميديا/فيلم كوميدي
historical (adj)	تاريخي

horror (n)
musical (adj)
romantic (adj)
science fiction (sci-fi) (n)

## Vocabulary on Reading

adapted (adj)	مقتبس/ماخوذ
bestselling (n)	أفضل مبيعات
brilliant (adj)	رائع/متميز
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)
colleague (n)	زميل
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم/باستمرار
crew (n)	طاقم العمل
demonstrate (v) (d)	يثبت/يبرهن
director (n)	مدير/مخرج
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي
energy (n)	طاقة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
incredibly (adv)	بشكل رائع
lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص/ينقصه
Martian (n)	مريخي

mate (n)	رفيق
meanwhile (adv)	في نفس الوقت
mission (n)	مهمة
recommend (v) (ed)	يسبغ/يبرشع
remake (v)	إعادة صياغة
rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ
review (n)	مراجعة/عرض نقدي
storyline (n)	سلسلة الأحداث
surprising (adj)	مفاجئ
survive (v) (d)	يبقى حياً
talent (n)	مواهب
typical (adj)	مميز/الصلبي
version (n)	إصدار
visuals (n)	صور/مشاهد مرئية
warmth (n)	دفء

## Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

What a performance!

11 UNIT

approve (v) (d)	يوافق / يستحسن
certain (adj)	محدد / معين
choice (n)	اختيار
critic (n)	ناقد
dialogue (n)	حوار
fan (n)	معجب
film (v) (ed)	يصور فيلماً
interviewer (n)	محاوِر
intonation (n)	نبرة صوت
location (n)	موقع تصوير
marvellous (adj)	رائع

mathematician (n)	عالم رياضيات
mixed (adj)	مختلط
neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة / الحي
performance (n)	أداء
pity (n)	شفقة / حسرة
scared (adj)	مرعوب
script (n)	سيناريو / نسخة حوار
soundtrack (n)	تسجيل صوتي
special effects (n)	مؤثرات خاصة
style (n)	أسلوب

## Language & Workbook Vocabulary

acting (n)	تعتيل
bear (n)	دب
cruel (adj)	قسى
escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب / يهرب
genuine (adj)	أصلي
hostile (adj)	عدائى
negative (adj)	سلبى

positive (adj)	إيجابى
powerful (adj)	قوى / مؤثر
return (v) (ed)	يرجع / يعود
rule (v) (d)	يحكم
scientific (adj)	علمى
space (n)	الفضاء
talented (adj)	موهوب

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
get lost	يضل الطريق / يتوه
adapted from	ماخوذ من / مقتبس من
choice of	اختيار لـ
climb onto	يصعد إلى
escape from	يهرب من
go back	يرجع / يعود

of the same name	بنفس الاسم
rule over a country	يحكم بلدًا
leave behind	يخلف / يترك خلفه
shout at	يصرخ فى وجه
similar to	مشابه لـ
take off	يطير / يقلع
type of	نوع من

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يقتبس	adaptation	اقتباس	adapted	مقتبس
-----	-----	comedy	كوميديا	comic	كوميدي
demonstrate	يبرهن/يثبت	demonstration	إثبات/برهان	demonstrative	توضيحي
power	يحرك	power	قوة/اطقة	powerful	قوي/مؤثر
recommend	يرشح/يوصى بـ	recommendation	ترشيح/توصية	recommended	مرشح
rule	يحكم	ruler	حاكم	ruling	حاكم
scare	يرعب	scare	رعب	scared	مرعوب
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناج

## Reading Text (1)

## Pre-reading question:

- What type of movies do you like most?

## The Martian

Clever, exciting, and surprisingly funny, *The Martian* is a brilliant film, adapted from the bestselling book of the same name, and **demonstrates**<sup>(1)</sup> the **talents**<sup>(2)</sup> of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott.



- (1) يبرهن/يثبت
- (2) مواهب
- (3) ينجو
- (4) بشكل رائع
- (5) فيلم علمي

When astronauts take off from the planet Mars, they leave behind Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to **survive**<sup>(3)</sup> on the empty planet. Meanwhile, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international scientists work **constantly**<sup>(4)</sup> to bring him home. At the same time his crew mates plan a brave rescue mission.

Unlike most sci-fi films, *The Martian* has no fight scenes. Instead, it is a clever and powerful film and perhaps the best **science fiction**<sup>(5)</sup> film that I've seen in a long time.

## The Lion King

Although the visuals in the 2019 **version**<sup>(1)</sup> of *The Lion King* are quite brilliant, this remake lacks the warmth and energy of the **original**<sup>(2)</sup> cartoon film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of talented actors involved. The **storyline**<sup>(3)</sup> is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.



- (1) نسخة
- (2) أصلي
- (3) قصة
- (4) رسوم متحركة
- (5) فيلم وثائقي

Like the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind uncle who kills Simba's father and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa. The director Jon Favreau has created an **animation**<sup>(4)</sup> which looks incredibly real and maybe that's the problem - it doesn't look like an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife **documentary**<sup>(5)</sup>!

**Post reading question:** - Does the writer of the review about "*The Lion King*" like it? Why/Why not?



## Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

I don't expect to like films about children who get lost, but the film *Lion* was **1) surprisingly** good. It's about a family in India who are **2) constantly** trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the **3) brave** boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often **4) hostile** and unfriendly.

I found the second half of the film less **5) enjoyable**, although it is still good. Saroo is now a **6) talented** student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India. The story is very **7) powerful** and I'll always remember it. The acting was totally **8) brilliant** and I definitely recommend it.



## Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The young actress showed a \_\_\_\_\_ for acting at an early age.
  - a) talent
  - b) fright
  - c) detest
  - d) complaint
- 2 Some kinds of bacteria can \_\_\_\_\_ in extreme temperatures.
  - a) detect
  - b) detest
  - c) survive
  - d) arrive
- 3 We complained \_\_\_\_\_ about the noise of the workshop in our street.
  - a) helpfully
  - b) gradually
  - c) delightfully
  - d) constantly
- 4 "Harry Potter" series is a film \_\_\_\_\_ of the novel of the same name.
  - a) type
  - b) version
  - c) episode
  - d) animation
- 5 We watched a \_\_\_\_\_ on the early history of the city of Rome.
  - a) correspondence
  - b) copy
  - c) documentary
  - d) competition



ALADWAA

تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة أسأل الأضواء  
وسيتم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)





## Listening Text

**Pre-listening question:** - What does a film critic do?

**Adel** : Tonight, I'm talking to film critic Saleem about the films he's seen recently. Seleem, welcome.

**Seleem** : Hi Adel.

**Adel** : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you?

**Seleem** : I do and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan<sup>(2)</sup> of action films, aren't you?

**Adel** : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently?

**Seleem** : *Black Panther*. I really enjoyed it, but it's had mixed<sup>(3)</sup> reviews. The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes, but the dialogue<sup>(4)</sup> was difficult to follow at times, which was a pity<sup>(5)</sup>. The best film I've seen lately was the award-winning *Hidden Figures*. I don't often watch historical films but this one is brilliant. It's the true story of black female mathematicians<sup>(6)</sup> working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

**Adel** : They both sound good. Any others?

**Seleem** : *A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood*<sup>(7)</sup>. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of kindness and has a wonderfully positive message.

**Adel** : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he?

**Seleem** : Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks fan. He's a marvellous<sup>(8)</sup> actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action - you name it, he's done it.

**Adel** : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch?

**Seleem** : Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you?

**Adel** : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films!

**Seleem** : Really?



(1) نقده

(2) مشجع

(3) مختلط

(4) حوار

(5) شفقة/حسرة

(6) علماء رياضيات

(7) الجيرة/الحى

(8) رائع

**Post-listening question:** - Why does Saleem love Tom Hanks?



## Video Script

After watching a great film, most people don't think about the work that went into making it.

It can take anywhere between a year and five years to create a Hollywood-style<sup>(1)</sup> film, and it is a lot of hard work. Every film starts with a story and the writers produce a script<sup>(2)</sup> with the words the actors need to say. Once the story has been approved<sup>(3)</sup>, the producers start working. They find the money to pay for the film, find the director and choose the actors.

Once the director and the actors have been hired and locations<sup>(4)</sup> found, the filming begins. This can take from a few weeks to several months to complete. It can take this long because some actors may not be available on certain<sup>(5)</sup> days, the locations may have to change, or bad weather may mean filming can't happen.

When the filming has finished, the editors get to work, taking all the film that has been made and putting it into the correct order. Surprisingly, films are rarely filmed<sup>(6)</sup> in the correct order, the last scene might be filmed first and the middle of the film created last. Editors also add the special effects<sup>(7)</sup> to the film.

Finally, once the film has been made, the music is added. This is very important as a great soundtrack<sup>(8)</sup> can make the difference between a film being a success or a disaster.

(1) أسلوب

(2) سيناريو النسخة حوار

(3) يوافق

(4) مواقع تصوير

(5) محدد

(6) يصور فيلماً

(7) مؤثرات خاصة

(8) تسجيل صوتي



## Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Tarek El Shenawy is a famous film ..... whose reviews are read by most actors.  
a) producer                      b) announcer                      c) director                      d) critic
- 2 Liverpool ..... were delighted with their team's winning the Premiere League.  
a) inspectors                      b) fans                      c) assistants                      d) enemies
- 3 The famous writer is currently working on a ..... of a historical film about Khalid Ibn El Waleed.  
a) wave                      b) soundtrack                      c) script                      d) current
- 4 The new musical's songs and ..... are now available on CD.  
a) soundtrack                      b) reviews                      c) revisions                      d) replays
- 5 The Medical Research Council has ..... the use of the new vaccine for the virus.  
a) discovered                      b) applied                      c) approved                      d) remade

## Focus on Vocabulary



action	حركة	▶ an action film has a lot of exciting scenes in it, in which people fight, chase, and kill each other
animation	الرسوم المتحركة	▶ a film, television programme, computer game etc. that has pictures, clay models etc. that seem to be really moving
comedy	كوميديا/فيلم كوميدي	▶ a play, film, or television programme that is intended to make people laugh
historical	تاريخي	▶ relating to the past
horror	رعب	▶ something that causes feelings of fear, dread, and shock
musical	موسيقى	▶ a play or film that includes singing and dancing
romantic	رومانسي	▶ a romantic story or film is about love
science fiction	خيال علمي	▶ stories about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المعضاد
choice	اختيار	selection	indecision تزمذم/لحيرة
cruel	قلس	violent	merciful/kind رحيم/عطوف
demonstrate	يثبت/ايبرهن	illustrate/prove	confuse/disprove يربك/لا يثبت
horror	رعب	fear/terror	calmness/delight هدوء/اسعادة
hostile	عدائى	unfriendly/unsympathetic	friendly/kind لطيف/عطوف
incredibly	بشكل رائع	amazingly	normally بشكل طبيعى
powerful	قوى/امؤثر	impressive	impotent/du(0) ضعيف/اعمل
recommend	يوصى بـ/يرشح	propose/suggest	deny/oppose ينكر/يعترض
romantic	رومانسى	sentimental	repulsive بقبض
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate	surrender/serve يستسلم/يخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened	brave/courageous شجاع
talented	موهوب	gifted	untalented/unskilled غير موهوب/غير ماهر

### Notes on Vocabulary

#### colleague

colleague

- Friends and **colleagues** will remember him with affection.

classmate

- Osama has been my **classmate** for years. We are in the same class.

زميل عمل

زميل دراسة

#### classmate

#### crew

crew

- The plane crashed, killing two of the **crew** and four passengers.
- The film **crew** were making a political documentary.

staff

- The school has over 100 full-time **staff**.

#### staff

١- طاقم عمل (فى طائرة/سفينة غالباً)

٢- طاقم من الفنيين لإنتاج شىء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية.

لحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم (cast) فى المعنى الثانى.

طاقم عمل (فى مصنع/مدرسة/منظمة)

**review**

**revision**

1- مراجعة/إعادة نظر المراجعة (مراجعة)

2- مقال نقدي

The writer sent the press a **review** of the research.  
The newspaper published many **reviews** about the new film.

مراجعة/إعادة نظر المراجعة (مراجعة)

I'm making some **revisions** to the book for the new edition.  
I know I haven't done enough **revision** for tomorrow's exam.

**Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts**

and demonstrates the talents of **actor** Matt Damon and **director** Ridley Scott.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام أي أداة مكررة أو معرفة قبل (**actor - director**) لأنه مضاف إليها اسم علم.

NASA and a **team** of international scientists **work** constantly to bring him home.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل من صيغة الجمع مع (**team**) لأننا نقصد أعضاء الفريق.

The special effects were great **and so were the fight scenes**, \_\_\_\_\_

- تستخدم (**and so**) كلمة ربط بعض (وكننا كما تستخدم صيغة الاستفهام (**were the fight scenes**) بعضاً

**Surprisingly**, films are rarely filmed in the correct order, \_\_\_\_\_

- يستخدم الظرف عامة لوصف الفعل ولكن إذا بدأت الجملة بالظرف مثل (**Surprisingly**) فإنه يشير إلى الجملة كلها

**Check Point 3**

Choose the **correct answer** from **a, b, c or d**:

1 The famous journalist writes film \_\_\_\_\_ for the newspapers.

- a) staff                      b) revisions                      c) criticisms                      d) reviews

2 When my brother started his new job, all his \_\_\_\_\_ were friendly and helpful.

- a) colleagues                      b) competitors                      c) classmates                      d) rivals

3 The captain and \_\_\_\_\_ welcomed the famous footballer themselves on entering the plane.

- a) staff                      b) crew                      c) cast                      d) group

4 We would like to thank all the medical \_\_\_\_\_ at hospitals for their great efforts.

- a) crew                      b) cast                      c) staff                      d) race

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Although they are old, Ismail Yassen's \_\_\_\_\_ are still liked by many people.  
a) fictions                      b) romances                      c) horrors                      d) comedies
- 2 My father doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ films saying that they can make people nervous.  
a) horror                      b) historical                      c) comic                      d) romantic
- 3 The *Martian* is one of the most famous science \_\_\_\_\_ films.  
a) faction                      b) fission                      c) fiction                      d) fact
- 4 Most of Naguib Mahfouz's novels have been \_\_\_\_\_ for films or plays.  
a) painted                      b) adapted                      c) viewed                      d) reviewed
- 5 The studio used computer \_\_\_\_\_ for some of the special effects.  
a) romance                      b) horror                      c) animation                      d) action
- 6 Scientists are now working with \_\_\_\_\_ in Arizona to develop a working model.  
a) colleagues                      b) classmates                      c) fans                      d) commuters
- 7 The study \_\_\_\_\_ the link between poverty and malnutrition سواء التفتية saying clear.  
a) hides                      b) develops                      c) invents                      d) demonstrates
- 8 After my long and tiring day, I \_\_\_\_\_ the energy to argue with him.  
a) leaked                      b) locked                      c) lacked                      d) licked
- 9 This simplified \_\_\_\_\_ of Shakespeare's play is intended for younger children.  
a) review                      b) version                      c) fiction                      d) visual
- 10 An Egyptian aid team will be sent on a \_\_\_\_\_ to the earthquake zone.  
a) mission                      b) trip                      c) fight                      d) treaty
- 11 The crew of the sinking boat were \_\_\_\_\_ by a passing cruise ship.  
a) reserved                      b) rescued                      c) preserved                      d) drowned
- 12 My friend always reads the different match \_\_\_\_\_ online.  
a) revisions                      b) highlights                      c) reviews                      d) scenes
- 13 The book's \_\_\_\_\_ revolves around a woman who is searching for her missing sister.  
a) sale                      b) criticism                      c) review                      d) storyline
- 14 This announcer is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ who is known for asking tough questions.  
a) interviewer                      b) interviewee                      c) simplifier                      d) applicant
- 15 Walt Disney invented many \_\_\_\_\_ characters such as Donald Duck  
a) carton                      b) cartoon                      c) historical                      d) movie
- 16 The old hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ of buildings built during late 19<sup>th</sup> century.  
a) genuine                      b) original                      c) fake                      d) typical

What a performance!

Christiano Ronaldo is a player of great natural \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) talent                      b) talent                      c) disability                      d) affection

Some of the children were so \_\_\_\_\_ when they saw the lion in its cage that they ran away.

- a) delighted                      b) effective                      c) scared                      d) fanned

Students have a/an \_\_\_\_\_ between German and French as a second foreign language.

- a) obligation                      b) necessity                      c) difference                      d) choice

Good teamwork is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ tool for effective management.

- a) powerful                      b) minor                      c) unsuccessful                      d) affecting

### Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

Adel Emam is one of the most well-known \_\_\_\_\_ actors in the Arab world and he still makes people laugh.

- a) historical                      b) comic                      c) animation                      d) horror

Without the map we bought at the Information centre, we would have \_\_\_\_\_ lost easily.

- a) given                      b) come                      c) got                      d) lost

Queen Victoria \_\_\_\_\_ over England for more than fifty years.

- a) captured                      b) rolled                      c) spread                      d) turned

The driver managed to escape \_\_\_\_\_ the burning car.

- a) in                      b) to                      c) from                      d) for

The space ship took \_\_\_\_\_ and landed safely back to the base.

- a) at                      b) off                      c) in                      d) out

The brave soldier refused to escape and leave his fellow soldiers \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) behind                      b) off                      c) about                      d) for

Illegal hunting is threatening the \_\_\_\_\_ of the species.

- a) survive                      b) survival                      c) survived                      d) survivable

It was cruel to lock the dog in the garage all day. The synonym of the adjective "cruel" is \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) violent                      b) friendly                      c) kind                      d) merciful

My brother was right to recommend watching this exciting film. The antonym of the verb "recommend" is \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) advise                      b) relate                      c) associate                      d) oppose

This restaurant was a good \_\_\_\_\_ I enjoyed the meal very much.

- a) recommend                      b) recommended                      c) recommendation                      d) recommendable

Language

Question Tag

السؤال المثيل

- السؤال المثيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المثيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لا بد أن يكون السؤال العنفي مختصرًا.
- السؤال المثيل يأتي قبله ( , ) .

Positive statement	+	Negative question tag	Positive statement	+	Negative question tag
(+)		(-)	(-)		(+)
You <b>are</b> a student	,	<b>aren't</b> you?	Hala <b>is not</b> a nurse	,	<b>is</b> she?

(+) sentence	→	(-) tag	(-) sentence	→	(+) tag
Ali <b>is</b> Egyptian	,	<b>isn't</b> he?	John <b>isn't</b> Egyptian	,	<b>is</b> he?
You <b>study</b> hard	,	<b>don't</b> you?	You <b>don't</b> study hard	,	<b>do</b> you?
He <b>lives</b> in Cairo	,	<b>doesn't</b> he?	He <b>doesn't</b> live in Cairo	,	<b>does</b> he?
You <b>were</b> at home	,	<b>weren't</b> you?	You <b>weren't</b> at home	,	<b>were</b> you?
Ola <b>visited</b> her uncle	,	<b>didn't</b> she?	Ola <b>didn't</b> visit her uncle	,	<b>did</b> she?
Omar <b>was</b> watching TV	,	<b>wasn't</b> he?	Omar <b>wasn't</b> watching TV	,	<b>was</b> he?
You <b>have seen</b> my bag	,	<b>haven't</b> you?	You <b>haven't seen</b> my bag	,	<b>have</b> you?
You <b>have</b> dinner at 8 pm	,	<b>don't</b> you?	You <b>don't have</b> dinner at 8 pm	,	<b>do</b> you?
She's <b>finished</b> the report	,	<b>hasn't</b> she?	She <b>hasn't finished</b> yet	,	<b>has</b> she?
She <b>has</b> blonde hair	,	<b>doesn't</b> she?	She <b>doesn't have</b> blonde hair	,	<b>does</b> she?
He'd <b>finished</b> by 6 p.m.	,	<b>hadn't</b> he?	He <b>hadn't come</b> by 6 p.m.	,	<b>had</b> he?



He'd rather leave now	, wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	, would he?
He'd better find a job	, hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	, had he?
They'll help us	, won't they?	They won't help us	, will they?
He can ride a horse	, can't he?	He can't ride a horse	, can he?
We need more money	, don't we?	We needn't more money	, need we?
He used to get up early	, didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	, did he?
I think he is a thief	, isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	, is he?
I'm right	, aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	, am I?

حالات خاصة

Let's go out اقتراح	, shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	, will/won't you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful	, isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	, isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	, aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	, aren't there?
Stop talking	, will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	, will you?

ملاحظات



● الجملة التي تحتوي على never - rarely - hardly - seldom - nor - neither - few - little - no

تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال العنيل مثبتًا.

He can hardly run, can he?

He rarely visits you, does he?

● إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

Nothing can live without energy, can it?

● إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they

Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?



## Check Point

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 They should start now, ..... they?  
 a) will                      b) shouldn't                      c) should                      d) must
- 2 He didn't swim yesterday, ..... he?  
 a) didn't                      b) was                      c) swam                      d) did
- 3 You like horror films, ..... you?  
 a) don't                      b) won't                      c) do                      d) will
- 4 She hasn't got a brother, ..... she?  
 a) does                      b) hasn't                      c) has                      d) doesn't
- 5 I would never go with them, ..... I?  
 a) wouldn't                      b) would                      c) did                      d) aren't
- 6 Don't smoke here, ..... you?  
 a) won't                      b) don't                      c) will                      d) do
- 7 Nothing was wrong, .....?  
 a) was it                      b) were they                      c) wasn't it                      d) weren't they
- 8 Somebody is knocking at the door, .....?  
 a) is it                      b) isn't it                      c) are they                      d) aren't they
- 9 They had left early, ..... they?  
 a) had                      b) didn't                      c) hadn't                      d) weren't
- 10 Let's go to the cinema, .....?  
 a) will we                      b) shall we                      c) do we                      d) won't you

# Adjectives and Adverbs

## Adjectives

الصفات

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله مثل: An interesting film/an easy test  
 - أو تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتي بعدهم مسبقة بـ **v-to be** مثل **The boys/They are clever**  
 - الصفة تأتي بعد أفعال معينة وهي أفعال **stative** مثل: look/sound/seem/taste/appear/get/feel/become/smell, etc.

- ▶ The medicine **tastes awful**.
- ▶ The food **smells bad**.

▶ The man **looks happy**.

## Adverbs

الأحوال/الظروف

1. He drives **carelessly**.
2. The shirt is **terribly** expensive.

٢- الصفة

١- الفعل

(Verb + Adverb)

(Adverb + Adjective)

## Adverbs

Manner الطريقة

Degree الدرجة

## Adverbs of Manner

ظروف الطريقة

هي الظروف التي تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

▶ He must take his study **seriously**.

● يتكون هذا النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيئ	badly	بسوء	nervous	قلق	nervously	بقلق
correct	صحيح	correctly	بطريقة صحيحة	nice	لطيف	nicely	بلطف
foolish	أحمق	foolishly	بحماقة	permanent	دائم	permanently	دوماً
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء	slow	بطء	slowly	ببطء
real	حقيقي	really	حقاً/أفعليناً	sudden	مفاجئ	suddenly	فجأة

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (i) تضاف (ly) أما إذا انتهت بـ (e) فنحذف e ونضع (y).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
beautiful جميل	beautifully بجمال	careful حريص	carefully بحرص
terrible فظيع	terribly بفظاعة	horrible رهيب	horribly بشكل رهيب
real حقيقي	really حقًا/فعليًا	probable محتمل	probably من المحتمل

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (ly).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
angry غاضب	angrily بغضب	easy سهل	easily بسهولة
heavy ثقيل	heavily بثقل/بشدّة	hungry جوعان	hungrily ببوع
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة	lucky محظوظ	luckily لحسن الحظ

► It was an **easy** test. (adj)

► The students answered the test **easily**. (adv)

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
fantastic رائع	fantastically بشكل رائع	dramatic درامي	dramatically بشكل درامي
drastic قاس/عنيف	drastically بشكل عنيف	automatic اتوماتيك	automatically آتوماتيكيا

من شواذ تكوين الظروف:

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well بشكل جيد	fast سريع	fast بسرعة
long طويل	long بشكل طويل	low منخفض	low بشكل منخفض
fine جيد	fine جيدًا	high مرتفع	high بشكل مرتفع
straight مستقيم	straight بشكل مستقيم	right صحيح	right بشكل صحيح

► Ali is a **fast** swimmer. (adj)

► Ali swims **fast**. (adv)

بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (ly) مثل الصفات في الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضفنا (ly) يكون لها معنى مختلف مثل:

ملحوظة



Adjective	متلخر	late	متلخرًا	late	متلخرًا (منذ وقت قريب)
hard	صلب / صعب / شديد	hard	بجد / بشدة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريبًا لا
wrong	خاطئ / مخطئ	wrong	بشكل خاطئ	wrongly	بظلم
near	قريب	near	بالقرب	nearly	تقريبًا

She **hardly** ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).  
 You **wrongly** accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly

هناك صفات تنتهي بـ **ly** ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly	في كل ساعة	daily	يومي / يوميًا	weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعيًا
monthly	شهري / شهريًا	yearly	سنوي / سنويًا	early	مبكر / مبكرًا

My father is reading his **daily** newspaper. (adj)

My father reads the newspaper **daily**. (adv)

هناك صفات تنتهي بـ **ly** وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالتالي:

In a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly	مسن	lonely	وحيدًا / يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوي	lovely	محبوب	deadly	معدية
friendly	وود	motherly	كألم	heavenly	سماوي
lively	مفعم بالحياة	silly	سخيف	cowardly	جبان
brotherly	إخوي	likely	متوقع / محتمل	sisterly	خلص بالأخت

He is a **friendly** man. (adj)

He greets/treats me **in a friendly way**. (adv)



### Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The meeting was very ..... organised. Most members were annoyed.  
a) bad                      b) careful                      c) carefully                      d) badly
- 2 We didn't go out because it was raining .....  
a) heavy                      b) heaviest                      c) heavily                      d) heavier
- 3 There was a ..... change in the weather.  
a) suddenly                      b) sudden                      c) terribly                      d) absolutely
- 4 He looked at me ..... when I interrupted him.  
a) angrily                      b) angry                      c) anger                      d) angered
- 5 She speaks ..... English like native speakers.  
a) fluent                      b) fluently                      c) fluency                      d) bad
- 6 Our teacher shouted ..... at the class.  
a) loud                      b) loudly                      c) louder                      d) much louder
- 7 Shaimaa can run very ..... She always wins races.  
a) slowly                      b) as fast                      c) fast                      d) much faster
- 8 Open the door .....! The children are asleep.  
a) more quiet                      b) quieter than                      c) quiet                      d) quietly
- 9 I ..... like musicals. They always make me feel happy.  
a) realistic                      b) reality                      c) real                      d) really
- 10 My mum can swim ..... She goes to the pool every day.  
a) good                      b) best                      c) well                      d) better

## Adverbs of degree

## ظروف الدرجة

● هي الظروف التي تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

extremely	للفاية	very	جدًا
quite	تمامًا	fairly/slightly	قليلاً

Mount Everest is **extremely** high.

My little brother speaks English **very** well.

He is **quite** good at maths.

His boy is **slightly** hard working.

● الأحوال التي تصف الصفة تأتي قبلها وهي تساوي **very** في المعنى تقريبًا:

الاسم	الحال	الصفة	
The Nile is	very	long.	
	extremely		للفاية
	fantastically		بشكل مذهش
	incredibly		لا يصدق
	tremendously		جدًا/هائل

● وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف **ly** ونضع **a/an** قبل الصفة.

الاسم	الصفة	الاسم
The Nile is	an extreme <b>ly</b>	للفاية
	a fantastic <b>ally</b>	بشكل مذهش
	an incredible <b>y</b>	لا يصدق
	a tremendous <b>ly</b>	جدًا/هائل

## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My brother isn't here, .....?  
 a) isn't it                      b) is there                      c) isn't he                      d) is he
- 2 Karim and Magid love comedy films, .....?  
 a) aren't they                      b) doesn't he                      c) don't they                      d) do they
- 3 The children haven't finished yet, ..... they?  
 a) haven't                      b) have                      c) do                      d) don't
- 4 Reham arrived late, ..... she?  
 a) didn't                      b) did                      c) wasn't                      d) was
- 5 He can't swim, ..... he?  
 a) does                      b) is                      c) will                      d) can
- 6 The film will start soon, ..... it?  
 a) can                      b) will                      c) won't                      d) should
- 7 She has never been to Egypt, ..... she?  
 a) has                      b) does                      c) hasn't                      d) doesn't
- 8 We must be at school at 8 o'clock, ..... we?  
 a) aren't                      b) mustn't                      c) needn't                      d) don't
- 9 You'd better leave now, ..... you?  
 a) hadn't                      b) don't                      c) had                      d) wouldn't
- 10 I think he's from India, .....?  
 a) don't I                      b) doesn't he                      c) isn't he                      d) hasn't he
- 11 There has been no rain for the last couple of weeks, .....?  
 a) hasn't it                      b) hasn't there                      c) isn't it                      d) has there
- 12 ....., isn't it?  
 a) It's not your dog  
 c) This isn't Ahmed
- 13 ....., aren't I?  
 a) I'm not your English teacher  
 c) I'm your English teacher
- 14 ....., aren't they?  
 a) Omar and I are from Maadi  
 c) Omar and Hazem aren't from Assuit
- b) It's very hot in the Sahara  
 d) It's never cold in Aswan
- b) He is your English teacher  
 d) You're my English teacher
- b) Omar and Hazem are from Assuit  
 d) Omar is from Assuit



What a performance!

- Which one of the following is untrue?
- a) Ali is never lucky, is he?  
 c) Ali is always lucky, isn't he?
- I've got a/an ..... bad headache.  
 a) fantastically  
 b) absolutely
- She is ..... pleased with her picture.  
 a) quietly  
 b) absolutely
- As he was found ..... the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.  
 a) nearest  
 b) near  
 c) terribly  
 d) completely
- Although he arrived an hour ....., he started work immediately.  
 a) late  
 b) lately  
 c) nearly  
 d) nearing
- My brother is a firefighter. He's very .....  
 a) braver  
 b) bravery  
 c) a late  
 d) latest
- That was a ..... film - what a waste of money!  
 a) terrified  
 b) terribly  
 c) bravely  
 d) brave
- There is a ..... crowd outside the police station.  
 a) hostility  
 b) hostile  
 c) terrible  
 d) terrifically
- At the end of the school year, some students try ..... to make up for the lost time.  
 a) hard  
 b) hardly  
 c) hostilities  
 d) host
- She looked ..... at the children.  
 a) happy  
 b) happily  
 c) hardness  
 d) harden
- Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off .....  
 a) automatics  
 b) automatical  
 c) happiness  
 d) happiest
- As there was much time, we walked ..... to school.  
 a) slowly  
 b) slow  
 c) automatic  
 d) automatically
- The teachers in my school treat us .....  
 a) friendly  
 b) friend  
 c) a slow  
 d) slowing
- I haven't eaten for 5 hours, so I'm getting quite .....  
 a) hungry  
 b) friend  
 c) in a friendly way  
 d) friends
- The cost of living has risen ..... these days.  
 a) dramatic  
 b) friend  
 c) in a friendly way  
 d) friends
- You need to be ..... tall to be a good basketball player.  
 a) terrible  
 b) friend  
 c) in a friendly way  
 d) friends
- a) hungry  
 b) hungriest  
 c) hungrily  
 d) hunger
- a) dramatic  
 b) dramatically  
 c) dramatical  
 d) drama
- a) terrible  
 b) fantastic  
 c) extreme  
 d) extremely

## General Exercises (Lessons 1 &amp; 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is responsible for everything on making a film.  
a) director      b) officer      c) employee      d) clerk
- 2 I gave the policeman a copy and kept the \_\_\_\_\_ document myself.  
a) false      b) untrue      c) original      d) assigned
- 3 My brother is fond of \_\_\_\_\_ movies which are full of fights or racing scenes.  
a) action      b) romantic      c) historical      d) comic
- 4 There were some interesting interviews in the \_\_\_\_\_ about President Saad.  
a) horror      b) documentary      c) musical      d) historian
- 5 It was \_\_\_\_\_ of you to frighten the poor boy like that.  
a) friendly      b) heartedly      c) gentle      d) cruel
- 6 The \_\_\_\_\_ in the new animation film were so amazing that all the audience were very impressed.  
a) scripts      b) reviews      c) visuals      d) rehearsals
- 7 Scientists are developing robots that can be used for outer \_\_\_\_\_ exploration.  
a) spice      b) space      c) desert      d) moon
- 8 The camel is specially adapted to its \_\_\_\_\_ desert habitat.  
a) hostile      b) fragile      c) wealthy      d) friendly
- 9 This type of plant cannot \_\_\_\_\_ temperatures below freezing.  
a) revive      b) decrease      c) survive      d) decrease
- 10 Most of his remarks were \_\_\_\_\_, but there were a few criticisms.  
a) accumulative      b) critical      c) negative      d) positive
- 11 *Romeo and Juliet* is thought to be one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ plays of all time.  
a) terror      b) romantic      c) comic      d) collaborative
- 12 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the plane instructed everyone to remain seated.  
a) crew      b) staff      c) cast      d) flock
- 13 The director's next project will be a \_\_\_\_\_ of the historical movie "Saladin".  
a) spot      b) singal      c) remake      d) mark
- 14 He can come back to work when he's feeling better, but \_\_\_\_\_ he should work as much as possible.  
a) renewably      b) preferably      c) constantly      d) meanwhile

- Experts believe that the painting is not \_\_\_\_\_ but it is a brilliant copy.
- Pass me the salt, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They used to live in the New valley, \_\_\_\_\_ they?
- There's a fly in your soup, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Somebody has taken my dictionary, \_\_\_\_\_?
- My father must stop smoking, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Every country should give due care to \_\_\_\_\_ research.
- My father was \_\_\_\_\_ respected by those who worked with him.
- Train services have been \_\_\_\_\_ affected by the heavy snow.
- The witness \_\_\_\_\_ recounted everything that had happened during the robbery.
- The injured victims of the fire were \_\_\_\_\_ taken to hospital.
- Options: a) fake, b) genuine, c) subordinate, d) preyed  
 a) do you, b) aren't I, c) aren't you, d) won't you  
 a) didn't, b) aren't, c) don't, d) did  
 a) is it, b) is there, c) isn't there, d) isn't it  
 a) hasn't one, b) haven't they, c) don't they, d) doesn't he  
 a) won't I, b) need he, c) mustn't he, d) mustn't I  
 a) scientifically, b) scientific, c) science, d) a science  
 a) great, b) greatness, c) greatly, d) greatest  
 a) a bit, b) a very, c) extreme, d) seriously  
 a) accurately, b) accurate, c) accurateness, d) accrete  
 a) quick, b) quickly, c) quickness, d) quicker

**Fill in the gap with the suitable word:**

**Spacecraft – same – space – documentary – astronauts – crew**

Apollo 13 is one of the well-known movies in America. It is based on a true story of one of NASA's projects to reach the moon. NASA's worst nightmare turned into one of the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ agency's most heroic moments in 1970, when the Apollo 13 (2) \_\_\_\_\_ was forced to go back home in a disabled capsule after an explosion seriously damaged their (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Tom Hanks, Kevin Bacon, and Bill Paxton play played the roles of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Jim Lovell, Jack Swigert, and Fred Haise. The Apollo 13 crew and Houston-based mission controllers race against time to return the damaged spacecraft safely to Earth from a distance of 205,500 miles. Apollo 13 is an almost (5) \_\_\_\_\_ retelling of the events regarding the failure moon mission of the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ name.

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

As Ahmed wanted to go out with his friends, he finished his homework 1) (quick/quickly). When the teacher saw the homework, he looked at him 2) (angrily/angry). He told him that if he did it 3) (bad/badly) the next time he would be 4) (severely/severe) punished. Ahmed was 5) (awfully/awful) sorry and promised him to be 6) (accurate/accurately) all his life.

**4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The job interview is a strategic conversation with a purpose. Your goal is to persuade the employer that you have the skills, background, and ability to do the job and that you can comfortably fit into his/her organisation. At the same interview, you should also be gathering information about the job, future career opportunities of the organisation to determine if the position and work environment are right for you. You should also realise that an interview is not an objective process in which the employer offers the job to the best candidate based on merits alone. But rather, an interview is a highly subjective encounter in which the interviewer offers the job to the qualified person whom he/she likes best. Personality, confidence, enthusiasm, a positive outlook and excellent interpersonal and communication skills count heavily.

One key to success at interviews is to use every means at your disposal to develop effective interviewing skills: selective presentation of your background, thoughtful answers to interview questions, well-researched questions about the organisation, and an effective strategy to market yourself. There is no magic to interviewing: it is a skill that can be learned and improved upon with practice. A second key to success is careful research about the job and the organisation, agency, or company with whom you are having the interview. Knowing about the job will help you prepare a list of your qualifications so that you can show point by point, why you are the best candidate. Knowing about the employer will help you prepare an interview strategy and appropriate questions and points to emphasise.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The underlined words "count heavily" mean .....
- a) have a great weight
  - b) can't be carried easily
  - c) help to succeed
  - d) are worth a lot of money

What a performance!

- 4 One of the following sentences is not true \_\_\_\_\_ .
- a) knowing about the employer is important to pass an interview
  - b) personal contacts can always help you get a job
  - c) qualifications and skills are important to pass an interview
  - d) passing an interview can be done through knowledge and practice

- 5 The synonym of the word "appropriate" is \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) suitable

b) opposite

c) wrong

d) difficult

- 6 To succeed in the interview, you should know about \_\_\_\_\_ .

a) the company only

b) the employer only

c) the company and the employer

d) the dangers of the job

5) Answer the following questions:

- 1 According to the passage, how does an employer choose the best candidate?
- 2 How can research about the job help the candidate?
- 3 Mention two keys to success.
- 4 Give a suitable title to the passage.

1) Translate into Arabic:

1. Some experts believe that movies and plays shouldn't only be a way of entertainment. They can play an important part in showing social phenomena; showing their pros and cons.
2. Many young men and women are fond of watching horror and action movies. However these kinds of movies can affect them psychologically and socially.
3. Egypt can only reach an outstanding position among countries with hard work and production. Everyone should have sincere intentions and a strong will. The more efforts we exert, the more advanced Egypt will be.
4. Optimistic people are those who see everything in life is good. They live happily among their companions. On the other hand, pessimistic people see everything in life is dull and gloomy.
5. Winning international competitions is one of the ways to relieve the frustration of hard life. It can also be used to enhance patriotism of people.
6. Remember, no matter how much you do, but rather how fine. For example to sound study one lesson is better than five as much without concentration. Making one perfect thing is better than mal made plenty of it.

**B) Translate into English:**

من علماء النفس أن الاهتمام بالشعر والفن الراقى أحد العواطف التي تميز المجتمع المتحضر، كما يؤكد ذلك مدى  
 الرقبة لدى أفرادهم.  
 أن يشارك المجتمع في جهود تطوير المدارس وتزويدها بكل الوسائل الحديثة التي تجعلها مناسبة للتطور  
 العلوم الكبير.  
 أن الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتلفزيون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة، كما يؤدي  
 تهمر علاقاتهم الاجتماعية بعائلاتهم وأصدقائهم.  
 الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة الوصول إلى حل لمشكلة الاحتباس الحراري، لكنها مازالت مشكلة خطيرة تؤثر  
 الكثير من مجالات حياتنا.

**Enrich your Vocabulary**

concentration	التركيز	perfect
entertainment	الترفيه	pessimistic
fields	مجالات	phenomena
fine art	الفن الراقى	psychologically
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	relieve
optimistic	متفائل	will
overuse	استخدام مفرط	

**6** Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time."

**تطبيق الأضواء**  
 ALADWAA  
 اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية  
 من خلال خاصية معاينة الامتحانات.  
 حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
 www.aladwaa.com

## Vocabulary

### Vocabulary on Reading

animated (adj)	معروض برسوم متحركة
annoying (adj)	مزعج
awful (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج
ending (n)	نهاية
earnings (v) (ed)	يستغل/يستخدم
hilarious (adj)	مرح/مضحك جدًا

Malawi (n)	مالاوي (بلد إفريقي)
partner (n)	شريك
personally (adv)	شخصيًا
popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب
right (n) (adj)	حق/على صواب
windmill (n)	طاحونة هوائية

### Vocabulary on Listening

aring (adj)	معل
refully (adv)	بحرص
ase (n) (v) (d)	مطاردة/يطارد
side (v) (d)	يقرر
rt (n) (v)	قتال/يقاتل

generally (adv)	بشكل عام
gun (n)	سلاح ناري/مسدس
politely (adv)	بأدب
silly (adj)	سخيف

## Workbook Vocabulary

burning (adj)	محترق	prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
equipment (n)	معدات	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
island (n)	جزيرة	scenery (n)	مناظر طبيعية
mistake (n)	خطأ	stupid (adj)	غبي
most (adv.)	معظم	war (n)	حرب
owner (n)	مالك		

## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms &amp; Prepositions

all the time	طوال الوقت	have the right to	لديه الحق أن
couldn't stop laughing	لم أستطع التوقف عن الضحك	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة
get married	يتزوج	tell a story	يخبر قصة
hostile to	عدائي/معدى لـ	terrible at	فظيح في
look like	يشبه	think about	يفكر في
opinion about	رأى عن	travel to	يسافر إلى

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
animate	يصور برسوم	animation	رسوم متحركة	animated	مفروض برسوم متحركة
annoy	يزعج	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying	مزعج
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning	محترق
prefer	يفضل	preference	تفضيل	preferred	مفضل
realise	يدرك	realisation	إدراك	realistic	دقيق/واقعي



Reading Text (1)

I saw a great film last night. It was called 'The Boy who **Harnessed**<sup>1</sup> the Wind'. It was about a boy in Malawi who built a **windmill**<sup>2</sup> and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful message about positive thinking and never giving up.



- (1) يسنر
- (2) طاحونة هوائية
- (3) مصور برسوم متحركة

I also saw 'Toy Story 4', which was great fun. It's a brilliant **animated**<sup>3</sup> film, and personally, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy ending.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

1) If you like musicals, then you'll love the film "We met in Greece". It's about a man who travels to a Greek island and meets the daughter of a hotel **owner**<sup>1</sup>.

- (1) مالك
- (2) يدرك
- (3) منظر طبيعية
- (4) مرح/المضحك
- (5) مزعج

2) At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he **realises**<sup>2</sup> he's both kind and talented, he lets his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a romantic story!

3) The music is brilliant and the **scenery**<sup>3</sup> on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.

1) Some comedies are **hilarious**<sup>4</sup>, but I didn't think that "visit to a farm" was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.

2) The young man is terrible at farming, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was **annoying**<sup>5</sup>!

3) The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too stupid to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

## Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 This fascinating village is surrounded by magnificent mountain .....  
a) site                      b) treasury                      c) audience                      d) scenery
- 2 Our attempts at dancing were ..... - we all kept stepping on each other's feet.  
a) serious                      b) hilarious                      c) dangerous                      d) romantic
- 3 For centuries, traditional ..... used the wind to drive machinery for grinding wheat into flour.  
a) waterfalls                      b) machinery                      c) windmills                      d) inspection
- 4 We can ..... the power of the wind to generate electricity.  
a) discover                      b) harness                      c) explore                      d) expire
- 5 I don't think you ..... how important this is to her.  
a) realise                      b) achieve                      c) recognize                      d) respire



## Listening Text

**Ramy** : What kinds of film do you like watching, Dareen? Romantic ones, like Mum?

**Dareen** : Not really, most of them are a bit **silly**<sup>(1)</sup>. I love comedies, especially the old ones they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer?

**Tamer** : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car **chases**<sup>(2)</sup> and **gun**<sup>(3)</sup> fights!

**Dareen** : Really? I think most of them are really **boring**<sup>(4)</sup> and they don't usually have a good story either.

**Tamer** : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too don't you, Ramy?

**Ramy** : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're **generally**<sup>(5)</sup> not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.

**Dareen** : Aren't you scared?

**Ramy** : Yes, but that's what I like about them.

(1) سخيف

(2) مطاردات

(3) سلاح ناري

(4) مممل

(5) بشكل عام

**Check Point 2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) The movie was very dull and terribly ..... I regretted wasting my time on it.  
 a) exciting  
 b) exotic  
 c) boring  
 d) marvellous
- 2) If you like high-speed car ....., you should watch "Fast and Furious" series.  
 a) chases  
 b) shapes  
 c) scripts  
 d) vogues
- 3) I left my keys at home, which was a very ..... thing to do.  
 a) fantastic  
 b) clever  
 c) silly  
 d) smart
- 4) Dr El Baz is ..... regarded as the world's greatest expert in Remote Sensing.  
 a) hatefully  
 b) privately  
 c) awfully  
 d) generally

**Focus on Vocabulary**



harness	يسخر/ يستخدم	to control and use the natural force or power of something
hilarious	مرح/ مضحك جدًا	extremely funny
scenery	مناظر طبيعية	the natural features of a particular part of a country that you can see, such as mountains, forests, deserts etc.
windmill	طاحونة هوائية	a building or structure with parts that turn around in the wind, used for producing electrical power or crushing grain

## Synonym &amp; Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المعضاد
annoying	مزعج	disturbing	agreeable
cheerful	مرح/مبتهج	joyful	depressed
harness	يسخر/يستخدم	exploit/utilise	consume
hilarious	مرح/مضحك جدًا	humorous	serious
mistake	خطأ	error	correction

## Notes on Vocabulary



## realise

## recognise

realise

درك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا)  
عثر (شيئًا كان يتعمتها)

- Do you **realise** you're an hour late?
- She never **realised** her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise

درك على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)  
عثر (يعرف أهمية شيء)

- I didn't **recognise** you in your uniform.
- The new doctor tried to get his work **recognised** by the medical profession.

## prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) ..... to + (v-ing/noun)  
(would) prefer + to + inf. .... rather than + inf

يفضل ..... عن

يفضل أن ..... عن أن

- He **prefers** watching tennis to playing it.
- I **prefer** English to physics.
- I'd **prefer** to stay at home rather than go out.

most

... is what the children need **most**.

... the Pyramids at Giza are the **most** interesting monuments for many tourists.

... people think of robots as machines that look like people.

... business meetings are held at the company's headquarters.

... of the people who attended the party brought me presents.

... cousin spent **most of** his life abroad.

تعتبر عن التفضيل بمعنى (أكثر/الأكثر) و قد يتبعها صفة.  
تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية بشكل عام ويتبعها اسم جمع.  
تأتي بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية من عدد أو شيء محدد ويتبعها حرف الجر (of) مع اسم مفرد أو جمع وبعدها.

### Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

... these kinds of films always **make** people **feel** good.

- يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل ويتبعها المصدر بدون (to).

... and **helped** his village **get** water.

- يتبع الفعل (help) المصدر بدون (to) لو (to + inf.).

... he **lets** his daughter **marry** him.

- يستخدم الفعل (let) بمعنى يجعل ويتبعها المصدر بدون (to).

I'm not sure **why this was** supposed to be funny.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة غير المباشر (why this was) بعد (I'm not sure).

### Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I wonder if I'll ..... Samy after all these years.

- a) realise                      b) recognise                      c) organise                      d) forget

2 When he watched the TV show, he ..... he'd seen it before.

- a) realised                      b) recognised                      c) organised                      d) forgot

3 We always prefer ..... abroad for our vacation.

- a) go                                  b) to go                                  c) going                                  d) went

4 ..... the boys I know prefer football to any other game.

- a) Most                                  b) Most of                                  c) Mostly                                  d) Must

## Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Scientists designed systems to ..... the energy of waves to produce electricity.  
a) conclude      b) include      c) consume      d) harness
- 2 The restaurant is extremely ....., owing to its high standard of food.  
a) hateful      b) detesting  
c) popular      d) affecting
- 3 Today, modern versions of ....., called wind turbines, are used to create electricity.  
a) waterfalls      b) windmills      c) panels      d) stations
- 4 You were ..... to tell the teacher about the girl who you saw cheating.  
Her behaviour was really bad.  
a) right      b) punished  
c) wrong      d) rightly
- 5 The teacher asked each student to choose a ..... for the next activity.  
a) servant      b) partner      c) hero      d) champion
- 6 We went for a drive to enjoy the ..... of the forest near our town.  
a) sense      b) flavour      c) scenery      d) scent
- 7 The local council is supplying new play ..... for the playground at the sports centre.  
a) discipline      b) software      c) design      d) equipment
- 8 The athlete ..... a lifelong dream by winning an Olympic medal.  
a) recognised      b) realised  
c) replied      d) puzzled
- 9 My grandfather fought in the ..... that took place in 1973.  
a) tournament      b) race      c) war      d) conference
- 10 Beauty and the Beast was the first ..... film ever nominated for a Best Picture Oscar.  
a) allied      b) historical  
c) apparent      d) animated
- 11 The reviewer found two spelling ..... in the student's essay.  
a) mistakes      b) guilts      c) crimes      d) marks

The stolen jewellery was found and returned to its rightful .....  
 What a performance!

a) consumer  
 b) owner  
 c) robber  
 d) prisoner

Robinson Crusoe is a novel about a sailor who was shipwrecked on a desert  
 near South America.

a) beach  
 b) road  
 c) island  
 d) village

Two girls were saved from the ..... flat by some brave firefighters.

a) wealthy  
 b) luxurious  
 c) flying  
 d) burning

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

Car buyers have recently shown a growing ..... for smaller vehicles.

a) prefer  
 b) preferred  
 c) preference  
 d) preferable

Her most ..... habit was eating with her mouth open.

a) annoy  
 b) annoyance  
 c) annoying  
 d) annoyed

I keep practising and I'm improving ..... the time.

a) all  
 b) every  
 c) none  
 d) both

Many of the employees were hostile ..... the idea of closing the factory.

a) in  
 b) to  
 c) at  
 d) from

The standup comedy was so hilarious that we couldn't stop laughing. The adjective "hilarious" is the opposite of the adjective .....

a) comic  
 b) horror  
 c) funny  
 d) serious

Leaving school so young was the biggest mistake of my life. The noun "mistake" is similar in meaning to the noun .....

a) crime  
 b) state  
 c) error  
 d) correction



## Tag questions

المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنها،  
ما كانت الجملة التي نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ **yes** هي الموافقة و **No** للرفض مثل:

► You **like** chemistry, **don't you?**

- **Yes, I do.** موافقة

- **No, I don't.** رفض

ما كانت الجملة التي نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ **No** هي الموافقة و **Yes** للرفض مثل:

► You **don't like** chemistry, **do you?**

- **No, I don't.** It's very difficult. موافقة

- **Yes, I do.** I like it and find it very easy. رفض

يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الخبرية موجهاً إلى المخاطب وليس عائداً على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A) I love comedy films, **don't you?**

B) **Yes, I do.** I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا لا يصلح إلا في المحادثات.

إبرة الصوت **intonation** ترتفع وتنخفض في السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال:

• عندما يكون المتكلم متأكد من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضع نلك.

► He's your brother, **isn't he?**

• عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شيء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضع نلك.

► You eat meat, **don't you?**

• عندما تكون **has** و **have** للملكية يكون النفي بـ **hasn't/haven't** وعندما تكون بمعنى أدر نستخدم **to do**.

► He has a new car, **hasn't he?**

► He has lunch at 3 pm every day, **doesn't he?**

• أي الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على **must have + P.P.** هو **mustn't**.

► Hesham **must have won** the gold medal, **mustn't he?**

## Adjectives and adverbs

الإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضاً الحال مثله أو الجملة.

They started the race **slowly**.

He is an **incredibly amazing** cook.

He cooks **really amazingly**. (very well)

**Interestingly**, he won the first medal.

الحال يصف الفعل

الحال يصف الصفة

الحال يصف الحال

الحال يصف الجملة



What a performance!

- نستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جداً إما في الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very).

(terribly - absolutely - awfully - really - completely - totally - awfully - pretty - entirely - incredibly)

Mr. Ahmed is a **very** good teacher.

Mr. Ahmed is an **absolutely** amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلي:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge	tired	exhausted منهكت
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified هلج
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted مفجئط
surprised مندعش	amazed مذهول	cold	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless نظيف جداً	good	wonderful, excellent ممتاز
crowded مزحم	packed مكتظ	hot	boiling مغليظ/حليق
hungry	starving يعموت جوعاً	old	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating خلاب	small	tiny تقيق
clever	brilliant بارع	pretty جذاب	gorgeous رابع

## ملاحظة

- هناك بعض الظروف التي تستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost	تقريباً	partly	إلى حد ما/جزئياً	a lot/much	جداً	a little	قليل
enough	بدرجة كافية	too	أكثر من اللازم/جداً	just	فقط/تقريباً/بضفوية	a bit	قليل

- تستخدم بعض الظروف قبل الفعل.

The earthquake **completely** destroyed the area.



## Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Our team played .....  
 a) extreme well    b) extreme good    c) extremely good    d) extremely well
- 2 This book's ..... brilliant. You must read it!  
 a) very    b) a bit    c) totally    d) a little
- 3 The exam was a/an ..... difficult, but not too difficult. I think I passed.  
 a) too    b) bit    c) enough    d) totally
- 4 ....., his father died and no one helped him.  
 a) Sadly    b) Sad    c) Sadder    d) Sadness
- 5 That's a/an ..... amazing picture.  
 a) fairly    b) hardly    c) absolutely    d) bit

## Advanced points

- نم الأحوال التي تصف الفعل إلى،  
 لطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **How**.
- يمكن (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **Where**.
- زمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **When**.
- تكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ **How often**.
- ▶ They are **eagerly** بلهفة/بشوق waiting for the e-mail.
  - ▶ There is a cinema **nearby** بالقرب.
  - ▶ I'll meet you **tomorrow**.
  - ▶ She is **always** ready to help.
  - ▶ He **often** complains about the salary.

### ملحوظة

- سما يأتي اثنين أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتي:
- مكرر في الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل **go/come/leave** يكون الترتيب كالآتي:
- ▶ (manner + place + time).  
 Ali is studying **quietly in his room now**.
  - ▶ (place + manner + time).  
 He came **to work by bus this morning**.

# Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, ..... you?  
 a) don't                                      b) do    c) won't                                        d) will
- 2. The slide show was fantastic, ..... it?  
 a) didn't                                        b) isn't    c) wasn't                                        d) was
- 3. Nothing can be done at this moment, ..... ?  
 a) can it    b) can they                                    c) can't it                                      d) can't they
- 4. You have never seen that movie before, ..... you?  
 a) do    b) have    c) haven't                                      d) don't
- 5. Playing a musical instrument isn't as easy as supposed, ..... ?  
 a) is it    b) aren't you                                  c) isn't it                                        d) aren't they
- 6. She rarely cooks meat, ..... she?  
 a) has    b) doesn't                                        c) does    d) hasn't
- 7. They should have been informed long before his arrival, ..... they?  
 a) mustn't                                        b) didn't    c) needn't                                        d) shouldn't
- 8. Let's have a morning walk, ..... we?  
 a) shall    b) haven't                                        c) don't    d) should
- 9. He used to be a famous doctor, ..... he?  
 a) wasn't    b) didn't    c) wouldn't                                      d) weren't
- 10. Hassan has been painting the walls since morning, ..... he?  
 a) has    b) doesn't                                        c) hasn't                                         d) does
- 11. \_\_\_\_\_, could she?  
 a) The band couldn't sing well                                      b) Nour couldn't sing well  
 c) Ayman couldn't sing well    d) Ayman could sing well
- 12. \_\_\_\_\_, don't they?  
 a) They don't often talk to their neighbours  
 b) They often talk to their neighbours  
 c) We often talk to our neighbours  
 d) We often talk to their neighbours

- 13 A: I'm not late, aren't I?  
B: ..... You are just on time.  
a) Yes, you aren't  
c) No, you aren't
- 14 The young woman spoke to us .....  
a) mother  
c) in a motherly way
- 15 Your decision is ..... easy, isn't it?  
a) quite  
b) seriously  
c) absolutely  
d) terribly
- 16 Sara thought that the film was ..... interesting.  
a) terribly  
b) extremely  
c) extreme  
d) absolute
- 17 You can't win team games without working very ..... with the other people  
your team.  
a) hardly  
b) harden  
c) harder  
d) hard
- 18 There was a ..... end to the film, but I won't tell you what happened!  
a) surprise  
b) surprised  
c) surprisingly  
d) surprising
- 19 Mona did ..... in her exam. She was ill that day.  
a) terrible  
b) terribly  
c) terrific  
d) terrifically
- 20 It's ..... hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.  
a) rather  
b) quite  
c) extremely  
d) slightly
- 21 Everyone admires her because she plays the violin very .....  
a) well  
b) good  
c) better  
d) best
- 22 We could walk ..... around the aircraft during the flight.  
a) free  
b) freedom  
c) freeing  
d) freely
- 23 The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very .....  
a) carefully  
b) careful  
c) care  
d) carefulness
- 24 They were ..... delighted with the service in this hotel.  
a) very  
b) a bit  
c) absolutely  
d) extreme
- 25 In 2015, Messi was ..... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.  
a) a bit  
b) incredibly  
c) rather  
d) a little

Explain how a film affects you

Nowadays, films occupy a significant portion of the media products consumed by people.



In some countries, cinema is being considered as a means of individual and social transformation, which makes a contribution to the formation of the audience's outlook, including their attitudes towards topical social issues.

Watching a movie can either make your life better, destroy it, or have a neutral or no impact. In today's world, some of the most popular genres of cinema/ movies today are Anime, Drama, Comedy, Horror, Fantasy, Action. Each of these genres of movies can have both positive and negative impacts on young people. While some studies indicate that violent films make people aggressive and dangerous, other surveys highlight the benefits of showing some specific films to students.

Movies are a fantastic source of entertainment. They definitely add some spice to life and are great antidepressants: if you pick the right film to watch when you're in a bad mood, it can save your day!

A film is always an excellent opportunity to meet new people and to strengthen relationships with old friends. Films encourage us to take action. Our favourite characters, superheroes, teach us life lessons. They give us ideas and inspiration to do everything for the better instead of just sitting around, waiting for things to go their way. Films about famous personalities are the perfect way to affect social behaviour positively.

Films are a source of knowledge. They can help learn what's in the trend, find out more about ancient times, or fill out some knowledge gaps.

## Practice

- 1 What kind of films do you prefer? Why?
- 2 Which film had a great effect on you? Describe this effect.
- 3 How can films have positive and negative effects on children and young people?

## Life Skills

## Creativity

- Creativity is defined as the tendency to generate or recognise ideas, alternatives, or possibilities that may be useful in solving problems, communicating with others, and entertaining ourselves and others.

- **Three reasons why people are motivated to be creative:**

1. need for novel, varied, and complex stimulation
2. need to communicate ideas and values
3. need to solve problems

- In order to be creative, you need to be able to view things in new ways or from a different perspective. Among other things, you need to be able to generate new possibilities or new alternatives. Tests of creativity measure not only the number of alternatives that people can generate but the uniqueness of those alternatives. The ability to generate alternatives or to see things uniquely does not occur by chance; it is linked to other, more fundamental qualities of thinking, such as flexibility, tolerance of ambiguity or unpredictability, and the enjoyment of things heretofore unknown.

**Reference** <https://www.csun.edu/~vcpsy00h/creativity/define.htm>



## Writing

## Film review

- **Write about a film. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.**

- ▶ Introduce the film.
- ▶ Say if you would or would not recommend the film and why.
- ▶ Say what happens in the film.
- ▶ Try to include different adjectives and adverbs.

1) If you like action film, then you'll love the film **Casablanca**. It's about a gang of three companions who worked in illegal acts and their struggle for a huge sum of diamond which was stolen. The events of the film are divided between Egypt and Morocco. The main actors Amir Karara, Amr Abdel Gileel and Eiad Nassar are all marvellous. Although the film is full of illegal acts, the atmosphere and action scenes are amazing. I would recommend this film for people who like excitement and adventure.

2) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that **"El Harb El Alamia El Talta"** **"The Third World War"** was funny at all! It's about a young man who lives near a war museum where statues come alive at night. It is an imitation of an American film. The events are all farfetched, the script is not nice and acting is exaggerating. I really regret wasting my time on this film and I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.

# General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The manager blamed me ..... for causing the problem with the customer.
  - a) faintly
  - b) personally
  - c) gradually
  - d) funnily
- 2 Tourists come to Hurghada to enjoy water sports and the beautiful .....
  - a) site
  - b) treasury
  - c) audience
  - d) scenery
- 3 My friends thought that the film by Henidi so ..... that they couldn't stop laughing.
  - a) serious
  - b) hilarious
  - c) dangerous
  - d) romantic
- 4 Netherlands was famous for the many ..... in the countryside.
  - a) waterfalls
  - b) machinery
  - c) windmills
  - d) inspection
- 5 Solar panels enable us to ..... the power of the sun to generate electricity.
  - a) discover
  - b) harness
  - c) explore
  - d) expire
- 6 I couldn't ..... my friend Munir who has just returned home from his long stay in Europe.
  - a) realise
  - b) achieve
  - c) recognise
  - d) respire
- 7 The *Lion King* was the first ..... film to make more that profits of more than one hundred million dollars in its time.
  - a) allied
  - b) historical
  - c) apparent
  - d) animated
- 8 Mohamed was ..... to complain about the service in the restaurant; it is really bad.
  - a) right
  - b) punished
  - c) expected
  - d) rightly
- 9 Tea and coffee are considered the most ..... drinks all over the world.
  - a) hateful
  - b) detesting
  - c) popular
  - d) affecting
- 10 Mohamed Salah ..... his ambition of becoming a famous professional footballer through hard work.
  - a) recognised
  - b) realised
  - c) replied
  - d) puzzled
- 11 Please, call me when he comes, .....?
  - a) won't I
  - b) shall I
  - c) aren't you
  - d) will you
- 12 I don't suppose there is much damage, .....?
  - a) isn't it
  - b) do I
  - c) is there
  - d) isn't there
- 13 They're leaving soon, .....?
  - a) aren't they
  - b) don't they
  - c) are they
  - d) they aren't

- 10 He's been to Paris. \_\_\_\_\_ he?  
 a) doesn't b) hasn't c) has d) wasn't
- 11 A: The car isn't moving, is it?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ it's coming towards us.  
 a) No, it isn't b) No, it is c) Yes, it is d) Yes, it isn't
- 12 I'm feeling \_\_\_\_\_ thirsty.  
 a) really b) fantastically c) extreme d) terrible
- 13 The children are very \_\_\_\_\_. What are they doing?  
 a) quietness b) quiet c) quietly d) quieter
- 14 Fareeda was \_\_\_\_\_ exhausted after the race.  
 a) very b) a little c) a bit d) completely
- 15 The wind is blowing \_\_\_\_\_ outside.  
 a) extreme b) awful c) terrible d) extremely
- 16 At the run, he felt \_\_\_\_\_ tired.  
 a) totally b) absolutely c) very d) incredibly

2 Correct the following putting the right adjective or adverb:

Yesterday was the 1) (cold) day of the year. It had been raining 2) (heavy) all night and the streets turned to mud. The children woke up 3) (earlier) as usual to go to school. When they knew that it was 4) (difficulty) to go to school, they looked 5) (happily). They wanted to have a day off after they had studied 6) (hardly) the week before.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dana Miller is a bus driver. She drives a bus in the city of Philadelphia. She starts work at 10:00 at night and gets off at 6:00 in the morning. In the world of bus driving, this is sometimes called third shift. Dana has been driving a bus for 15 years. She started when she was 23 years old. She loves her job most of the time. She gets to see the beautiful city from her seat. She gets to meet all kinds of people. There is the guitar player. He lugs his heavy guitar on the bus every Friday night. He plays at a nightspot downtown. People call him Get Low. That is because he likes to play the guitar on his knees. If the bus is not too crowded, Get Low plays in the back of the bus. The bus is seldom crowded at night. He likes to warm up on the bus before shows. There is the woman who works at the pretzel factory. Each day the "Pretzel Lady" brings Dana a bag of fresh, soft pretzels.



They fill the bus with a wonderful smell! Sometimes Dana's job is hard. It is hard when Dana sees people down on their luck. One time, a young woman left her sleeping baby on the bus. There was a note on the baby's blanket asking for help. Dana had to call the police. Another time, a teenaged boy stole money from Dana on the bus. He had a fake gun. Dana thought it was real. She was very scared. Occasionally, driving the bus can be scary. But most of the time, driving the bus is great.

What a performance!

11

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 How old is Dana?  
a) 15.                      b) 23.  
c) 38.                      d) 39.
- 2 How long is Dana's shift?  
a) 6 hours.              b) 8 hours.  
c) 10 hours.              d) 12 hours.
- 3 Who gives Dana pretzels?  
a) The guitar player.  
b) The young mom.  
c) The teenager.  
d) The woman who works at the factory.
- 4 The main reason Get Low rides the bus is because \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) he likes to see the city                      b) he enjoys talking to Dana  
c) he likes to play guitar there              d) he needs to get to a show

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 Where does Dana drive the bus?
- 6 Why is the guitar player called Get Low?
- 7 Mention the two bad experiences that Dana faced.
- 8 Give two reasons why Dana loves her job.

**4 A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. Television is a very popular means of entertainment today. It provides the viewer with a wide collection of channels and programmes.
2. To solve the problem of unemployment, young people should take training that will allow them to get several kinds of jobs and mainly studies connected with technology.
3. Many people fear change, so they oppose those who have different ideas. We should accept others' opinions and be tolerant towards them. We also may expect that our own opinions may not be absolutely right.

4. Terrorism constitutes the severe and heartless enemy against development and progress. Individuals and communities who are involved in terrorist acts should be globally penalised.
5. Young men, nowadays, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character.
6. With the increasing worldwide demand for energy, the development of renewable energy has become one of the most important issues facing the global community nowadays.

**B) Translate into English:**

- رغم استعمار جائحة فيروس كورونا استطاعت مصر أن تنجح في استضافة بطولة كأس العالم لكرة اليد للرجال. مما يعزز مكانة مصر وصورتها أمام العالم.
- أصبحت التكنولوجيا الحديثة جزءًا هامًا من حياتنا اليومية. لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنها لدرجة أننا نتعجب كيف كان الناس يعيشون في العاضى بدون الأجهزة الحديثة التي نستخدمها يوميًا.
- تعتبر الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والبراكين فرصة لاختبار وحدة وتماسك أى أمة. فكلما كان الأفراد متعاونين قلت الخسائر التي يمكن لهذه الكوارث أن تخلفها.
- أصبحت القاهرة إحدى أكثر المدن اكتظاظًا بالسكان في العالم. ويؤدي هذا إلى تعقيد مشاكل الإسكان والنقل والخدمات العامة، لذا لزم بناء العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.

**Enrich your Vocabulary**

constitute	يشكل	issues	نضايا
demand	الطلب	penalised	يعاقب
heartless	قلس/ بلا رحمة	reinforce	يعزز
hosting	استضافة	spoil	يفسد
housing	الإسكان	unemployment	البطالة
integrity	تماسك		

5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The importance of scientific research"

# Advanced & Open General Exercises

What a performance!

11

Choose the **TWO** correct answers out of the **FIVE** options given:

- 1 The latest test results clearly demonstrate that the vaccine works. The synonyms of the verb "demonstrate" are \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) improve                      b) illustrate                      c) prove                      d) approve                      e) disprove
- 2 Queen Elizabeth has ruled over England since 1952. The antonyms of the word "rule" are \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) surrender                      b) seize                      c) conquer                      d) aspire                      e) serve
- 3 SpongeBob is probably the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ character whose movies are watched by people all over the world.
- a) historical                      b) romantic                      c) cartoon                      d) animated                      e) sci-fi
- 4 Don't miss class tomorrow - we're having a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of chapters three and four.
- a) research                      b) review                      c) article                      d) inspection                      e) revision
- 5 The bank's expectations of huge profits were not fully \_\_\_\_\_ this year.
- a) realised                      b) launched                      c) resulted                      d) achieved                      e) recognised
- 6 Many doesn't know how to cook, does he? Two of the following responses are correct.
- a) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking.                      b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
- c) No, he does. He likes cooking.                      d) Yes, he does. You are wrong.
- e) Yes, he doesn't. But he is trying to learn.
- 7 Help your brother with his homework, \_\_\_\_\_? Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
- a) don't you                      b) won't you
- c) isn't he                      d) will you
- e) shan't you
- 8 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
- a) I speak English fluently now.
- b) I speak fluent English now.
- c) I speak fluently English now.
- d) I speak English more fluently now than last year.
- e) I speak English fluency now.
- 9 Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.
- a) Yasser has a good chance to win the game.
- b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.
- c) Yasser has a better chance to win the game.
- d) Yasser has the best chance to win the game than others.
- e) Yasser has a more better chance to win the game.
- 10 Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.
- a) He works hard.
- b) He can hardly swim.
- c) He works hardly.
- d) He arrived lately at the party.
- e) The bird flew highly in the sky.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation in the muddy playground.

- 10 We couldn't help laughing out loud at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation in the muddy playground.
  - a) romance
  - b) comedy
  - c) tragedy
  - d) shortage
- 11 An essential piece of mountain climbing equipment is a climbing \_\_\_\_\_ to help you up and down.
  - a) windmill
  - b) slide
  - c) swing
  - d) harness
- 12 Mary talked about her new job with great \_\_\_\_\_ . She seemed very excited.
  - a) collocation
  - b) collection
  - c) animation
  - d) respiration
- 13 A talented young artist designed the \_\_\_\_\_ for the new play.
  - a) scenery
  - b) site
  - c) sight
  - d) delight
- 14 Hundreds of students \_\_\_\_\_ against the war outside the American Congress.
  - a) showed
  - b) demonstrated
  - c) denounced
  - d) advocated
- 15 The actress agreed to give her \_\_\_\_\_ of the accident to journalists.
  - a) vision
  - b) sight
  - c) version
  - d) serial
- 16 The young priest is appointed to work at a Catholic \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa.
  - a) duty
  - b) task
  - c) fiction
  - d) mission
- 17 There was widespread \_\_\_\_\_ support for the new governmental policy.
  - a) fascinated
  - b) private
  - c) popular
  - d) hilarious
- 18 My son has a lot of big \_\_\_\_\_ dreams of becoming an astronaut.
  - a) silly
  - b) romantic
  - c) historical
  - d) hopeless
- 19 Our team lost the game, but not for \_\_\_\_\_ of trying. It was bad luck.
  - a) lack
  - b) leak
  - c) aspiration
  - d) hope
- 20 Tamer and Samar \_\_\_\_\_ for Dubai at 8 o'clock next Tuesday morning.
  - a) have left
  - b) had left
  - c) have been leaving
  - d) are leaving
- 21 you \_\_\_\_\_ your magazines on the bed! Please clean up.
  - a) had always left
  - b) are always leaving
  - c) always left
  - d) have always left
- 22 He \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.
  - a) goes often
  - b) is often going
  - c) often goes
  - d) is going often
- 23 Gamal \_\_\_\_\_ computer games for an hour now.
  - a) has been playing
  - b) plays
  - c) has played
  - d) is playing
- 24 It was clever of him \_\_\_\_\_ the crossword in five minutes.
  - a) did
  - b) do
  - c) has played
  - d) is playing
- 25 I don't know when he \_\_\_\_\_ would you like to wait?
  - a) returned
  - b) will return
  - c) doing
  - d) to do
- 26 Ahmed \_\_\_\_\_ as an engineer for five years, then he became a university professor.
  - a) worked
  - b) has worked
  - c) has returned
  - d) returns
- 27 There's \_\_\_\_\_ lot of work! Do you think you could help me?
  - a) such a
  - b) such
  - c) has been working
  - d) works
- 28 The man \_\_\_\_\_ invented the telephone was called Alexander Graham Bell.
  - a) whose
  - b) what
  - c) so a
  - d) so
- 29 You must get here \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock or else we will have to leave without you.
  - a) on
  - b) by
  - c) which
  - d) who
- 30 \_\_\_\_\_ until \_\_\_\_\_

# Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The small company did not ..... the danger that was involved in the new project.  
 a) realise                      b) achieve                      c) recognise                      d) respire
- 2 The Nile passes through a rich variety of ..... in some African countries.  
 a) site                              b) treasury                      c) audience                      d) scenery
- 3 The children read the novel in its simplified .....  
 a) type                              b) version                      c) episode                      d) animation
- 4 You must present ..... proof of your admittance to the university.  
 a) correspondence                      b) copy  
 c) documentary                      d) competition
- 5 My cousin joined the ..... of a large fishing boat as had always dreamed of working in the sea.  
 a) staff                              b) crew                              c) cast                              d) group
- 6 Saudi Arabia is Egypt's principal trading ..... in the Arab World.  
 a) partner                              b) companion                      c) colleague                      d) consumer
- 7 Don't eat the whole chicken, .....?  
 a) will I                              b) won't you                      c) will you                      d) won't I
- 8 She likes classical music, .....?  
 a) isn't she                              b) did she                              c) does she                      d) doesn't she
- 9 They had a party last night, .....?  
 a) didn't they                              b) weren't they                      c) do they                      d) hadn't they
- 10 I'm shorter than her, .....?  
 a) am I                              b) aren't I                              c) have I                      d) don't I
- 11 Which one is grammatically incorrect?  
 a) I'm really helpful, aren't I?  
 b) Stay here, won't you?  
 c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?  
 d) Everybody is coming to the party, aren't they?
- 12 It's a pretty village, but there's ..... anything to do here.  
 a) hardly                              b) bare                              c) hard                              d) nearly

- 11 We all love our teacher of English because he treats us .....
- a) in a kind way      b) kind      c) kindly      d) kindness
- 12 Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives .....
- a) careful      b) carefully      c) in a careful way      d) care
- 13 My daughter is ..... in English and wants to work as an interpreter.
- a) the best fluent      b) more fluent      c) fluently      d) fluent
- 14 How ..... can a sportsman run?
- a) quick      b) quicker      c) quickly      d) quickest

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Generally, rainforests are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous ways but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

Rainforests have been called the womb of life because they are home to 50 – 90% of the species on earth although tropical forests cover 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated that as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day.

No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose, they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 17 Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of .....
- a) global warming      b) cutting down rainforests
- c) high rainfall and flood      d) global ecosystems

What a performance!

The species mentioned in the passage are .....

- a) plants and animals
- b) plants

- b) medicine and food
- d) animals

The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....

- a) rain and water
- b) absorbed water

- b) floods and erosion
- d) trees and plants

Two words give the opposite meaning to the word "veritable" .....

- a) real
- b) genuine
- c) deceitful

- b) false
- d) true

### B) Answer the following questions:

- How are rainforests useful for humans? Give two pieces of evidence.
- What happens when rainforests are cut down?
- Why is it wrong to save the rainforests just so that they can be used by humans?
- What would happen to Earth if rainforests disappeared?

### Translate into English:

- لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات، ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم، فتتمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

### Translate into Arabic:

Mass media - represented in television, the radio and the press - have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara.



# Unit 12

## Achievements and goals

### Objectives

- Reading : An article about a young entrepreneur
- Writing : A report about an experience
- Listening : A talk about SMART goals
- Language : Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- Speaking : Discussing goals and how to achieve them
- Life Skills : Self-management; Decision-making; Collaboration







Before you start any project, you need to go through the planning cycle.

## Plan

Think about your resources, how you are going to use them to achieve your goal.

## Implement

Start working on your project.

## Evaluate

See what went well and what didn't.

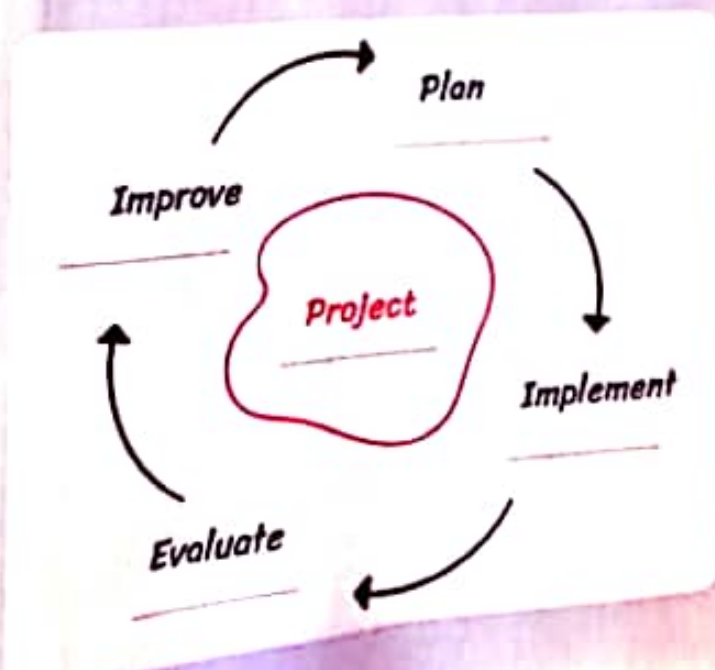
## Improve

Based on your findings, think of how you will overcome the obstacles to improve your product.

## Plan

In light of the whole cycle think again of the new resources and how you're going to use them effectively to achieve your new goals.

*Now apply this cycle on a new idea for a project you have.*



# Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق
entrepreneur (n)	رائد عمل
goal (n)	هدف
honeybee (n)	نحلة عسل
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس
profit (n) (v) (ed)	ربح / ايربح

recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
relevant (adj)	مؤصلة
set (v)	يحدد
specific (adj)	محدد
time-bound (adj)	محدد زمنياً

## Vocabulary on Reading

aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف / يحذف
business (n)	عمل تجارى
charity (n)	منظمة خيرية / عمل خيري
company (n)	شركة
conservation (n)	محافظة / حفاظ
donate (v) (d)	يتبرع بـ
educate (v) (d)	يعلم / يدرس
experience (n)	خبرة
give up (v)	يتوقف عن / يستسلم
highlight (v) (ed)	يلقى ضوءاً / يعيز نصاً
honey (n)	عسل
importance (n)	أهمية
locally (adv)	محلياً

manage (v) (d)	يبير اينجح / يتمكن
manager (n)	مدير
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
passionate (adj)	عاطفي / متحمس
possession (n)	ملكية
president (n)	رئيس شركة
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
range (n)	معدل / سلسلة
share (v) (d)	يشارك
smart (adj)	ذكي
unlikely (adv.)	من غير المحتمل
well-known (adj)	معروف
whenever (conj)	حينما

## Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

coach (n)	مدرب
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
drop (v) (ped)	يسقط/ يخرج (من فريق)
end date (n)	تاريخ الانتهاء
failure (n)	فشل/ حالة فشل
final (adj)	نهائي
long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد
physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء
progress (n)	تقدم/ يتقدم

qualify (v) (tried)	يتأهل
react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل
sensible (adj)	عقل/ حكيم
series (n)	سلسلة
short-term (adj)	قصير الأمد
stand for (v)	يمثل/ ينوب عن
vague (adj)	غامض/ غير واضح
winner (n)	فائز

## Language & Workbook Vocabulary

architecture (n)	العمارة
detailed (adj)	مفصل
essential (adj)	ضروري
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/ يخشى
fit in (v)	يجد وقتا لـ
forever (adv)	للأبد
guitar (n)	جيتار
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/ فردي
lucky (adj)	محقق
magnificent (adj)	رائع

memory (n)	ذاكرة
multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
non-essential (adj)	غير ضروري
objective (n)	هدف
practise (v) (d)	يعارس/ يتدرب
profession (n)	مهنة
record (v) (ed)	يسجل
related (adj)	مرتبط
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخي
tutorial (n)	دورة تعليمية/ مدرس خصوصي

## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms &amp; Prepositions

achieve their goals	يحققون اهدافهم	make a difference	يحدث فرقاً
feel different	يشعر بأنه مختلف	pass my driving test	يجتاز اختبار القيادة
had my first sight	رايت لأول مرة	play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار
in public	علناً/ أمام الجمهور	reach my goal	اصل لهدفي
depending on	اعتماداً على	look after	يعتني بـ
donate to	يتبرع لـ	passionate about	متحمس بخصوص
get over	يتغلب على	related to	مرتبط بـ
importance of	أهمية لـ	relevant to	نوعية بـ

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
conserve	يحافظ على	conservation	حفاظ	conservative	محافظ
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	إداري
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
		passion	عاطفة/حماس	passionate	عاطفي/متحمس
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملكي/القتنالي
profit	ربح/يربح	profit	ربح/يربح	profitable	مربح
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مسترخ/مسترخ
		relevance	صلة/علاقة	relevant	نوعية

## Reading Text (1)

## Pre-reading question:

- Do you set yourself some goals at the beginning of the school year?



To succeed in life, it's important to have **specific**<sup>(1)</sup> aims or goals. How often have you started something and then given up because it was either too difficult or took too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we achieve the goals we set ourselves? One way, often mentioned by **managers**<sup>(2)</sup>, is to have SMART goals. These are five different things you need to consider if you want to meet your goal.

Whenever you plan to set a **goal**<sup>(3)</sup>, you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it **measurable**<sup>(4)</sup>? Is it **achievable**<sup>(5)</sup>? Is it **relevant**<sup>(6)</sup>? and finally Is it time **bound**<sup>(7)</sup>? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are unlikely to reach your goal.

## Post-reading question:

- What can help you achieve your goals in life?

(1) محدد

(2) مديرون

(3) يحدد شيئاً

(4) قابل للقياس

(5) قابل للتطبيق

(6) ذو صلة

(7) متبند زمنياً

**Pre-reading question:**

- What qualities do you think a successful entrepreneur should have?

Andy Robson, who is still a teenager, is the president of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice business in Maine. What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.



Andy adapted a 1920s recipe that he got from his grandmother, but he added honey to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The reason he decided to add **honey**<sup>(1)</sup> was because he is **passionate**<sup>(2)</sup> about helping bees and wants to help protect them. His company now donates 15% of its profits to bee **conservation**<sup>(3)</sup> groups who are fighting to save the **honeybee**<sup>(4)</sup>.

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very well-known in Maine. And Green and Red, which has been sold in a range of shops across Maine for years, is now selling in some restaurants and is very popular.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own **charity**<sup>(5)</sup> with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young **entrepreneur**<sup>(6)</sup> - she sells her own honey locally. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about the importance of bees and why we need to look after them.

**Post-reading question:**

- How does Andy Robson help his community?

(1) عسل

(2) عاطفي / متحمس

(3) حفاظة / وقاية

(4) نحلة العسل

(5) منظمة خيرية

(6) رائدة أعمال



### Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

**Tarek**

Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have a little more time, and so I'm going to do it! I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to classes once a week. I've set myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I practise the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams.

**Salma**

I want to be a newsreader when I'm older, so I know I have to get over my fear of speaking in public. The presentations I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very nervous. I've been talking in front of the mirror and recording myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week, I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet. Wish me luck!



### Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

#### Cairo from a visitor's view

Cairo, 1) **which** is the capital city of Egypt, is a place which offers the visitor a wide range of experiences. Therefore, depending on 2) **who/whom** you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.

Last year was a time 3) **when** I decided to fit in as many difference experiences as possible and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend 4) **whose** family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My friend Fares, with 5) **whom** I had shared a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses Railway station 6) **where** I had my first sight of the magnificent architecture the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next blog post I will tell you about all the wonderful people 7) **who/whom** I will never forget and the places 8) **which** will forever live in my memory.



## Check Point

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The doctor gave the patient \_\_\_\_\_ instructions on how to care for the wound.
- a) silly  
b) hilarious  
c) timing  
d) specific
- 2 They are looking for someone with \_\_\_\_\_ experience in childcare.
- a) unaccepted  
b) achievable  
c) relevant  
d) unreliable
- 3 The president is a \_\_\_\_\_ supporter of the space programme.
- a) special  
b) passionate  
c) specific  
d) secret
- 4 After retirement, the head teacher now runs a local \_\_\_\_\_ that gives books to children.
- a) charity  
b) chain  
c) chorus  
d) church
- 5 It is important to encourage environmental \_\_\_\_\_ and awareness.
- a) imagination  
b) convention  
c) conservation  
d) condensation







## Listening Text (1)

### Pre-listening question:

How can you set yourself good goals?

Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are sensible and **definitely**<sup>(1)</sup> something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too general or you'll never reach them. So if your goal is to get fit by next month, it's too **vague**<sup>(2)</sup>. Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, 'I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.'



- (1) بالتأكيد
- (2) غامض الجير واضح
- (3) نهائى
- (4) يمتثل لينوب عن
- (5) سلسلة

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, short-term goals along the way. Instead of saying I want to run ten kilometres, start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller targets, you will find that it is easier to achieve your **final**<sup>(3)</sup> goal. So, the 'A' in SMART means 'achievable', and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible.

Now let's look at the last two letters 'R' and 'T'. The 'R' **stands for**<sup>(4)</sup> relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about the goal then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, T is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point saying, 'I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day,' because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a **series**<sup>(5)</sup> of SMART questions.

### Post-listening question:

In your opinion, what is the most important quality of SMART goals?

 Video Script

When you read about successful people who have achieved all their goals, it's easy to forget that most of them had many **failures**<sup>(1)</sup> before they became successful.

Failure is a word that most people don't want to hear. We all want to be successful, but when something goes wrong, many people just give up and try something different. Yet a lot of successful people failed many times before they achieved success. The main difference between long-term success and failure is the way we **react**<sup>(2)</sup> to it. The **winners**<sup>(3)</sup> are the people who think of ways to overcome the problems and keep working towards their goal.

We've all heard of Albert Einstein, who was brilliant at **physics**<sup>(4)</sup>, but at school he was not a good student. He had problems learning to speak and his teachers didn't think he was very clever. Yet, he continued studying and was accepted to university the second time he applied. He **qualified**<sup>(5)</sup>, worked hard and later he won the Nobel Prize for Physics.

Michael Jordan, who is probably one of the world's most famous basketball players, was once **dropped**<sup>(6)</sup> from his high school basketball team. Instead of giving up, Jordan practised and improved until he managed to get back into a basketball team. He says that during his career he lost over 300 games and failed over and over again, but his determination to succeed helped him achieve his goals.

(1) حالات فشل

(2) يقوم برد فعل

(3) فائزون

(4) الفيزياء

(5) يتأهل

(6) يخرج من فريق


**Check Point 2**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 As Walid Soliman was injured, he was ..... from Al Ahly team in FIFA Club World Cup in Qatar.
  - a) broken
  - b) included
  - c) dropped
  - d) contained
- 2 A team should learn from experience, both successes and .....
  - a) achievements
  - b) failures
  - c) exercises
  - d) trainings
- 3 World financial organisations say that much ..... was made in Egypt's economy and it is getting better.
  - a) suspicion
  - b) search
  - c) failure
  - d) progress
- 4 The instructions he wrote were ..... and difficult to follow.
  - a) vague
  - b) clear
  - c) precise
  - d) accurate
- 5 The colour white often ..... for innocence and purity.
  - a) sits
  - b) fights
  - c) stands
  - d) represents

## Focus on Vocabulary

achievable	قابل للتحقيق	when a goal is not impossible
entrepreneur	رائد عمل	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money
honeybee	نحلة عسل	a bee that makes honey
measurable	قابل للقياس	when you can test a goal and see if it has been completed correctly
profit	ربح	money that you gain by selling things or doing business
recipe	وصفة طعام	a set of instructions for cooking a particular type of food
relevant	نوصلة	when a goal is related to the plans of an individual person
set one goal	يحدد هدفاً واحداً	when there are not many objectives to meet
specific	محدد	when an objective is very detailed
time-bound	مقيد زمنياً	when an objective has to be met by a specific date

## Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
achievable	قابل للتحقيق	attainable	مستحيل
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	تدمير/إهدار
detailed	مفصل	precise/specific	غير دقيق/غير كامل
entrepreneur	رائد عمل	administrator/manager	موظف
forever	للأبد	everlasting/for good	مؤقتاً
			temporarily

Individual	فردى	single	team	فريق
manage	يدبر	direct	obey	يتبع
measurable	قابل للقياس	determinable	immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
passionate	عاطفى / متحمس	enthusiastic	unconcerned	غير مهتم
profit	ربح / يربح	benefit/interest	loss	خسارة
progress	تقدم	advance/growth	decline/failure	تدهور / فشل
related	مرتبط	associated/linked	irrelevant	ليس له صلة
relax	يسترخى	calm	worry	يتلقى
sensible	عقل / حكيم	reasonable/rational	irrational/ unwise	غير عقلى / غير حكيم
smart	ذكى	intelligent/brilliant	foolish/stupid	العقل الغبى

Notes on Vocabulary

work

work

- ▶ I started **work** when I was sixteen.
- ▶ Much of the heavy **work** on farms is now done by machines.

works

- ▶ The **works** of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

job

- ▶ It's not his **job** to tell us what we can and can't do.
- ▶ I've applied for several **jobs** without success.

career

- ▶ Choosing a **career** can be a very difficult decision.

profession

(the medical / legal / nursing / teaching profession)

- ▶ We admit that a few members of our **profession** have behaved badly.

عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)

مهمة (اسم يعد)

مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)

**recipe**

recipe

► Could you give me the **recipe** for that chocolate cake?

وصفة (مجموعة من الإرشادات لطبق معين)

prescription

► Dr. Magdy gave me a **prescription** for some sleeping tablets.

رخصة (وصفة طبية)

**goal**

goal

something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time

هدف (مستقبلى هام قد يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً)

► The country can still achieve its **goal** of reducing poverty by a third.

**objective** the specific thing that you are trying to achieve – used especially about things that have been officially discussed

هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديدته مسبقاً)

► We met to set the business **objectives** for the coming year.

**target** a particular amount or total that you want to achieve

هدف/مستهدف (كم أو مقدار محدد تعنى تحقيقه)

► The company is on track to meet its **target** of increasing profits by 10%.

**manage**

manage

► I don't think I can **manage** a long walk today.

► We **managed** to persuade him to come with us.

succeed

► Many women were able to **succeed** in politics.

► My brother **succeeded** in passing his final tests.

**succeed**

ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير) أو (العصر + to)

ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها noun أو in + verb + ing)

## Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

- 1 They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about.  
 لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (بالإضافة إلى) (as well as) لأن العائل في الجملة واحد.
- 2 Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too.  
 لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (saw) كما يمكن استخدام الفعل في صيغة المصدر أيضاً.
- 3 ... and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams  
 لاحظ استخدام المصدر بعد (help) ولاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (after) لعدم وجود فاعل بعدها.
- 4 Yet a lot of successful people failed many times before they achieved success.  
 لاحظ استخدام جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط مع أداة الربط (before) لأن استخدام الماضي التام ليس ضرورياً مع أداة الربط بعد.



### Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The dish is made according to a traditional Italian .....  
 a) prescription  
 b) recipe  
 c) direction  
 d) observation
- 2 We ..... to persuade our father to go to Aswan in January.  
 a) succeeded  
 b) passed  
 c) managed  
 d) accepted
- 3 Doctors and nurses belong to the medical .....  
 a) work  
 b) job  
 c) career  
 d) profession
- 4 The factory workers are working towards a ..... of twenty cars a week.  
 a) target  
 b) aim  
 c) consumption  
 d) goal

# Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 In order to succeed in your life, you must set \_\_\_\_\_ and specific goals.  
a) awful                      b) achievable                      c) hilarious                      d) imaginary
- 2 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.  
a) entertainer                      b) designer                      c) entrepreneur                      d) consultant
- 3 By the second year, the restaurant began to make a good \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) profit                      b) loss                      c) charity                      d) list
- 4 I'm not a great cook, but I can follow a \_\_\_\_\_ of any dish quite well.  
a) prescription                      b) study                      c) research                      d) recipe
- 5 The new nursery is looking for someone with \_\_\_\_\_ experience in childcare.  
a) charitable                      b) affecting                      c) relevant                      d) subsiding
- 6 Experts advise everyone to \_\_\_\_\_ realistic goals that they can achieve.  
a) cut                      b) set                      c) prevent                      d) destroy
- 7 The company began as a small family \_\_\_\_\_ and now it is a big corporation.  
a) business                      b) penalty                      c) income                      d) profit
- 8 Our neighbours are proud people who don't accept \_\_\_\_\_ although they are poor.  
a) entertainment                      b) charity                      c) ability                      d) loyalty
- 9 It is important to encourage awareness of environmental \_\_\_\_\_ and awareness to save the planet.  
a) condensation                      b) destruction                      c) conservation                      d) security
- 10 We usually \_\_\_\_\_ our old clothes to a home for homeless children.  
a) renew                      b) consume                      c) apply                      d) donate
- 11 Our teacher asserted that important names and dates in each chapter are \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) highlighted                      b) exported                      c) expelled                      d) expired
- 12 The shop is \_\_\_\_\_ by the owner's son as his father is now an old man.  
a) succeeded                      b) researched                      c) managed                      d) devised
- 13 My daughter has a/an \_\_\_\_\_ interest in animal rights and conservation.  
a) criminal                      b) passionate                      c) illegal                      d) awful
- 14 The young clerk was presented with an award by the bank \_\_\_\_\_ for his hard work.  
a) minister                      b) president                      c) member                      d) secretary
- 15 These curtains are available in a much wider colour \_\_\_\_\_ in the new shop.  
a) serial                      b) route                      c) range                      d) paint

- 16 The foreign investor had sold all his \_\_\_\_\_ and left the country.
  - a) memories
  - b) proportions
  - c) passions
  - d) possessions
- 17 Eating healthy food and doing exercises help to \_\_\_\_\_ people against many diseases.
  - a) infect
  - b) protect
  - c) heal
  - d) treat
- 18 Hossam El Badry is the head \_\_\_\_\_ of the Egyptian football team.
  - a) coach
  - b) player
  - c) advisor
  - d) teacher
- 19 I think that mankind is destroying the planet, all in the name of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) destruction
  - b) affection
  - c) reflection
  - d) progress
- 20 It would have been more \_\_\_\_\_ to save the money than to spend it all on unnecessary things.
  - a) sensitive
  - b) unreasonable
  - c) sensible
  - d) irresponsible

**Expressions, Idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms** Exercises

- 21 Just five minutes' exercise a day could \_\_\_\_\_ a difference to your health.
  - a) do
  - b) make
  - c) devise
  - d) design
- 22 The lady was able to give a detailed description of her attacker. The synonym of the adjective "detailed" is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) general
  - b) private
  - c) specific
  - d) public
- 23 The students hope to \_\_\_\_\_ their goal of raising 10,000 pounds for charity.
  - a) attain
  - b) set
  - c) arrive
  - d) reach
- 24 Most young people feel nervous about speaking \_\_\_\_\_ public.
  - a) at
  - b) in
  - c) of
  - d) about
- 25 The UN warns that too many nations already \_\_\_\_\_ chemical weapons.
  - a) possess
  - b) possession
  - c) possessed
  - d) possessive
- 26 Squash is an individual game in which a lot of Egyptians are champions. The antonym of the word "individual" is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) team
  - b) single
  - c) unique
  - d) distinctive
- 27 The amount of protein you need is directly related \_\_\_\_\_ your lifestyle.
  - a) in
  - b) to
  - c) at
  - d) for
- 28 There has been a \_\_\_\_\_ improvement in the company's performance.
  - a) measure
  - b) measurement
  - c) measurable
  - d) measuring
- 29 I listen to music for \_\_\_\_\_ before I go to bed.
  - a) relax
  - b) relaxation
  - c) relaxed
  - d) relaxes
- 30 I don't know how we're going to get \_\_\_\_\_ this problem.
  - a) off
  - b) in
  - c) into
  - d) over





## Language

## Relative clauses

## جمل الوصل

- هي الجمل التي تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمن

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

- يأتي ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

### verb + الذى/التي/الذين + who/that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهما فعل.

- ▶ Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.
- ▶ Mr Said, **who (He)** owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهي في محل فاعل)
- ▶ The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- ▶ The footballer **who/that (He)** took drugs has been banned from playing again.

- في الجملة الأولى Mr Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التي بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة **extra information** فالجملة الأصلية **Mr Said is very rich** تؤدي معنى تام بمفردها ولا نضع **that** هنا ونضع **comma**.

- في الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذي منع من اللعب، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل **defining** وهنا يمكن استخدام **that** وعدم وضع **comma**.

### subject الذى/التي/الذين + who/whom/that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who /whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهم فاعل.

- ▶ The woman was happy. We gave **her** the money.
- ▶ The woman **who/whom/that** we gave the money was happy.
- ▶ The people were very friendly. We met **them** at the party.
- ▶ The people **who/whom/that** we met at the party were very friendly. (بعدها فاعل فهي محل مفعول)
- ▶ Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to school with **him**.
- ▶ Ahmed, **who/whom** I go to school **with**, is my neighbour.

- لاحظ عدم وضع **that** لأن الجملة بها **comma** لأن جملة الوصل **non-defining** ولاحظ أيضا أن حرف الجر **with** لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإنا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا **whom**.

- ▶ Ahmed, **with whom** I go to school, is my neighbour.



## Check Point 4

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1 My mother, \_\_\_\_\_ works as a teacher, is always helping me with my study.
    - a) whom
    - b) that
    - c) who
    - d) whose
  - 2 This is the boy about \_\_\_\_\_ we have been talking.
    - a) whose
    - b) whom
    - c) who
    - d) that
  - 3 The boy \_\_\_\_\_ we met at the club is the cleverest one in our class.
    - a) whom
    - b) which
    - c) when
    - d) whose
  - 4 The police caught the boy \_\_\_\_\_ started the fight.
    - a) whose
    - b) he
    - c) whom
    - d) who
  - 5 I thought I recognised the assistant \_\_\_\_\_ sold me the suit.
    - a) whom
    - b) that
    - c) where
    - d) whose



### 3 verb/subject + الذى/الذى/التي/الذين + which/that + اسم غير عاقل

نحل (**which/that**) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

إن كانتا في محل فاعل يأتى بعدهم في الربط فعل وإذا كانتا في محل مفعول فيأتى بعدهما فاعل.

- ▶ The **food** went bad. **It** was left out of the fridge.  
The **food which/that** was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهي في محل فاعل)
- ▶ The **film** was boring. We watched **it** yesterday.  
The **film which/that** we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهي في محل مفعول)
- ▶ **The Nile** is the main source of water in Egypt. **It** flows from south to north.  
The Nile, **which** flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt. (في الجملة السابقة وضعت **that** لأن جملة الوصل **defining** ولم نضع **comma** أيضاً ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية)
- ▶ The Nile, **which** flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.  
جملة **which** ينسب من الجنوب إلى الشمال، معلومة إضافية فهي تعتبر **non defining** ولذلك لم نضع **that** ووضعنا **comma** إننا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم **that** ونستخدم **which** فقط
- ▶ The car **by which (that)** I go to work needs replacing.

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به مثل:

### ملحوظة

- ▶ The boy was very polite. We met **him** at Adly street yesterday.
- ▶ The boy **who/whom/that** we met at Adly street yesterday was very polite.
- ▶ The boy **who/whom/that** we met at Adly street yesterday was very polite.
- ▶ The stories were interesting. We read **them** at the school library.
- ▶ The stories **which/that** we read at the school library were interesting.
- ▶ The stories **which/that** we read at the school library were interesting.

اسم عاقل / غير عاقل + **whose** للملكية + Sentence (S + V + O)

- نستخدم **(whose)** للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذي قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية **his/her/its/their**.
- The writer was extremely delighted. **His** novel won the Nobel Prize.
- The writer **whose** novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely happy.
- My **cousin** visits Italy a lot. **His** wife is Italian.
- My cousin, **whose** wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

في الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل 'زوجته الإيطالية، معلومة إضافية non-defining

من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع **whose** كما في المثال التالي:

Ali is a generous man **in whose house** we had our meal.

ملحوظة



## Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The mistake \_\_\_\_\_ Ola made was fortunately not very serious.
  - whose
  - which
  - what
  - when
- The man \_\_\_\_\_ wife is seriously ill is very sad.
  - whose
  - where
  - which
  - that
- The programme \_\_\_\_\_ we missed is repeated this evening.
  - whose
  - when
  - what
  - that
- Mount Everest, \_\_\_\_\_ Omar Samra climbed, is the highest mountain in the world.
  - what
  - who
  - whom
  - which
- Hossam, \_\_\_\_\_ hobby is horse riding, has broken his leg.
  - who
  - when
  - whose
  - that

## where = which ..... حرف جر + Sentence

نستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.  
المكرر في الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + place/here - there)

- ▶ The **place** was really beautiful. We spent our holiday **there**.
- ▶ The place **where** we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- ▶ The **hotel** wasn't very clean. we stayed **there** for 3 days.
- ▶ The **hotel where** we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

نمثل **where** محل ظروف المكان **here - there** أما **which** حل محل **it/they** لغير العاقل ويمكن ان تأتي **which** وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضعيف المكرر **it** أو **they**.

- ▶ **Cairo** is the capital of Egypt. **It** is very crowded.
- ▶ **Cairo, which** is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.
- ▶ The flat is very small. I live **in it**.
- ▶ The flat **where** I live (**which** I live **in**) is very small. (حيث أسكن = التي أسكن فيها)
- ▶ The flat **where** I live (**in which** I live) is very small.

بأني قبل **which** حرف جر.

## When = that/which ... حرف جر + Sentence

نستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى (عندما) المكرر في الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- ▶ It's **seven o'clock**. I get up **at that time**.
- ▶ It's **seven o'clock** **when** I get up.
- ▶ **Ramadan** is a holy month. We fast **in it**.
- ▶ **Ramadan when** we fast (**which/that** we fast **in**) is a holy month.



### Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 August is the month ..... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.  
a) when                      b) which                      c) what                      d) where
- 2 The town ..... I grew up was very small.  
a) which                      b) where                      c) that                      d) when
- 3 The house ..... my grandparents lived is being demolished.  
a) whom                      b) that                      c) where                      d) whose
- 4 2001 is the year ..... my brother graduated from university.  
a) where                      b) whose                      c) when                      d) which
- 5 My son reached the age ..... he can have his independent bank account.  
a) at when                      b) on which                      c) in which                      d) at which

## أنواع جمل الوصل

1- النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية. وبين هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود ونستخدم هذا النوع (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلاً من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

The man **who (that)** robbed the bank was sent to prison.

The book **which (that)** tells you about history is useful.

2- النوع الثاني يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) في هذا النوع.

My father, **whom** I love, works as a teacher.

Alaa's car, **which** he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.

My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- في المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهنا يعني أن لدى أخت واحدة فقط فلا احتاج للتعريف.

- في المثال الثاني جملة الوصل تعطي معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهنا يعني أنني معي أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق عن التي زررت من



**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

**خذ أصدقاءك**  
وعش تجربة التحدي مع الأضواء

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The man \_\_\_\_\_ killed his wife has gone to prison.  
a) whose                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) which
- 2 My uncle, \_\_\_\_\_ I love most, helps me with maths.  
a) which                      b) that                      c) whose                      d) whom
- 3 I must tell you about the courageous man \_\_\_\_\_ I met on my last holiday.  
a) which                      b) what                      c) that                      d) whose
- 4 Heba, \_\_\_\_\_ works as a nurse, comes from Alexandria.  
a) whose                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) that
- 5 The book \_\_\_\_\_ I'm reading now is very exciting.  
a) who                      b) whom                      c) whose                      d) which
- 6 This is the factory \_\_\_\_\_ my father used to work.  
a) where                      b) why                      c) which                      d) when
- 7 Mother's Day is the time \_\_\_\_\_ people buy their mothers presents.  
a) why                      b) when                      c) which                      d) what
- 8 I'm not one of those people \_\_\_\_\_ deceive others.  
a) whom                      b) whose                      c) who                      d) where
- 9 We met the man \_\_\_\_\_ car was advertised in the local newspaper.  
a) whose                      b) who's                      c) who                      d) whom
- 10 The ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ comes from Italy is delicious.  
a) when                      b) whose                      c) who                      d) which
- 11 That's the beach \_\_\_\_\_ I used to go swimming.  
a) which                      b) where                      c) why                      d) when
- 12 The person \_\_\_\_\_ the police were questioning has been released.  
a) which                      b) where                      c) that                      d) whose
- 13 You wanted to tell me about the time \_\_\_\_\_ you lost your keys. What happened?  
a) whose                      b) where                      c) which                      d) when
- 14 My mother \_\_\_\_\_ is the best person in the world.  
a) who I love                      b) , who I love,                      c) that I love                      d) , which I love,
- 15 My friend with \_\_\_\_\_ I went out was generous.  
a) whom                      b) that                      c) whose                      d) , which I love,
- 16 El-Shamadan is a food company \_\_\_\_\_ most famous product is chocolate.  
a) who                      b) which                      c) whose                      d) who
- 17 My sister's brother made a big mistake, \_\_\_\_\_ she should apologise for.  
a) which                      b) whom                      c) who                      d) where

- That's the hospital ..... Ola went when she was ill.
  - a) whose
  - b) where
  - c) who
  - d) which
- Tom, ..... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.
  - a) that
  - b) whom
  - c) whose
  - d) who
- The meeting at ..... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
  - a) where
  - b) what
  - c) when
  - d) which
- Cairo, ..... we live, is a crowded city.
  - a) what
  - b) which
  - c) where
  - d) that
- This is the bus ..... I have been waiting for.
  - a) who
  - b) where
  - c) whom
  - d) that
- What is the name of the teacher ..... used to teach us maths?
  - a) who
  - b) whom
  - c) who's
  - d) whose
- 18 is the age ..... we can get licences and identity cards.
  - a) at when
  - b) at which
  - c) in which
  - d) on which
- Alexandria, ..... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.
  - a) where
  - b) when
  - c) which
  - d) whose

- I have one sister.
  - a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old.
  - b) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France.
  - c) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France.
  - d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France.

- Tarek has four cats. Two of them are black.
  - a) Tarek's two cats, which are black, can play outside.
  - b) Tarek's two cats which are black can play outside.
  - c) Tarek's two cats, that are black, can play outside.
  - d) Tarek's two cats, whose are black, can play outside.

- Look! That's the boy .....
  - a) the teacher punished
  - b) who the teacher punished
  - c) that the teacher punished
  - d) a, b and c are all possible

- She went to a school .....
  - a) where they studied all subjects in English
  - b) they studied all subjects in English
  - c) which they studied all subjects in English
  - d) that they studied all subjects in English

- Hong Kong is a place .....
  - a) where has a lot of tall buildings
  - b) where there are a lot of tall buildings
  - c) which has a lot of tall buildings
  - d) b and c are both possible.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 When I visited Italy, I was amazed by the \_\_\_\_\_ of Old Venice; the buildings are nearly surrounded by water canals.  
 a) fracture                      b) architecture                      c) structure                      d) lecture
- 2 Mobil Oil Company is a \_\_\_\_\_ corporation which has branches all over the world.  
 a) national                      b) local                      c) multi national                      d) multi media
- 3 To finish the project, we need to perform as a team rather than a group of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) individuals                      b) parts                      c) hikers                      d) fighters
- 4 A high proportion of people in the nursing \_\_\_\_\_ are women.  
 a) work                      b) profession                      c) mission                      d) fiction
- 5 During the war in Iraq, many valuable works of art were lost \_\_\_\_\_ and can't be regained.  
 a) fordable                      b) regularly                      c) likely                      d) forever
- 6 My grandfather is taking pills that can improve his bad \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) souvenir                      b) memorial                      c) memory                      d) millennium
- 7 The cost of a hotel room depends \_\_\_\_\_ the time of year.  
 a) at                      b) on                      c) in                      d) of
- 8 The doctor had to \_\_\_\_\_ ten appointments in one morning as he won't work in the evening.  
 a) fit                      b) give                      c) make                      d) assign
- 9 Mariam has never \_\_\_\_\_ anything to us about her twin sister.  
 a) reminded                      b) remembered                      c) mentioned                      d) honoured
- 10 Your \_\_\_\_\_ as a parent is to help your child become an independent adult.  
 a) target                      b) fiction                      c) training                      d) goal
- 11 Before school started, we conducted \_\_\_\_\_ a campaign to \_\_\_\_\_ students about COVID-19.  
 a) learn                      b) educate                      c) mobilise                      d) bring
- 12 The mobile company aims to boost \_\_\_\_\_ by reducing costs and new designs.  
 a) profits                      b) losses                      c) loans                      d) expenses
- 13 I'll \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture on video and we can all watch it later.  
 a) rehearse                      b) overload                      c) reload                      d) record
- 14 Her comments were not relevant \_\_\_\_\_ the discussion we had.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) to                      d) into
- 15 We spent an hour trying to buy the movie tickets, but eventually \_\_\_\_\_ up and went home.  
 a) took                      b) gave                      c) looked                      d) got



- Achievements and goals**
- 1 The bomb ..... went off this morning caused a lot of damage.  
 a) when                      b) whom                      c) which                      d) where
- 2 Look at that building ..... windows are all broken.  
 a) that                      b) whose                      c) which                      d) where
- 3 Mr Emad is the person from ..... I got the information.  
 a) whom                      b) that                      c) who                      d) whose
- 4 We met the woman ..... husband went to school with my father.  
 a) that                      b) which                      c) where                      d) whose
- 5 In hospitals they wake patients at 6 am, ..... is much too early.  
 a) when                      b) which                      c) where                      d) why
- 6 We called a doctor ..... works at a hospital in Aswan.  
 a) where                      b) whose                      c) who                      d) whom
- 7 The accountant ..... for my father's company was arrested.  
 a) that works                      b) who work                      c) works                      d) whose works
- 8 Arthur Conan Doyle, ..... wrote the Sherlock Holmes stories, was born in Edinburgh.  
 a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) that
- 9 The man ..... son I shouted was extremely furious.  
 a) who                      b) whose                      c) at whom                      d) at whose
- 10 Mohamed Salah is very famous.  
 a) Mohamed Salah that I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.  
 b) Mohamed Salah whom I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.  
 c) Mohamed Salah, whom I met at the Book Fair, is a famous footballer.  
 d) I met Mohamed Salah who is a famous footballer at the Book Fair.

**3) Fill in the gap with the suitable word:**

**media – launched – progress – entrepreneurs – business – goals**

One of the best solutions to face our economic problems is to encourage young people to start their own ..... (1) ..... . They can be ..... (2) ..... and follow some of the most famous people who could achieve their ..... (3) ..... and become millionaires or perhaps billionaires. One of these people is Mark Zuckerberg, the Founder of Facebook. He ..... (4) ..... it when he was only 19 years old. Within few years of its launch, Facebook became one of the most used social ..... (5) ..... platforms across the world. Today, Facebook continues to grow and employ thousands of people. Zuckerberg's business is estimated to be worth 61.7 billion dollars today and continues to ..... (6) ..... as an entrepreneur.

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

My school, 1) (which/where) is called Alzahraa, has about 2,000 students. My favourite teacher, 2) (whom/who) is called Mr Walid, teaches PE. The sports centre, 3) (which/where) I play basketball and tennis, is the largest in the area. I walk to school every day with my friend Mohamed, 4) (whose/who) father teaches us history. I still remember the day 5) (which/when) I joined my school three years ago. I have a lot of friends with 6) (who/whom) I study and play.

**4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Nine thousand years ago, people did not have money. They traded animals for things they wanted. They traded crops for what they wanted.

In China, in about 1200 B.C., people traded shells for the things they wanted. Chinese people also traded metal tools for the things they wanted. For example, they traded metal knives and shovels for the things they wanted. Later in China, people made metal money. In about 100 B.C., the Chinese made money of animal skin. The first paper money was made from white coloured deer skin. It came from China about 900 years later.

In about 700 B.C., people made the first-round metal coins. The coins were made of gold and silver. They looked very similar to the coins we use today. These coins came from Lydia. Lydia was located where the country called Turkey is located today. After people made coins in Lydia, people in Rome, Iran, and Greece also began making coins. Coins were very durable – they were strong and could last a long time without becoming damaged.

Wampum are necklaces made from beads and seashells. The beads had holes in them. People put beads on strings. American Indians used wampum for money in the 1500's. Money changes with time. No matter what it looks like, money is an idea. It is the thought that people can trade something they have for something they want. Money makes trading easier.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1** Before people had money, they traded .....

a) crops for what they wanted

c) metal tools for what they wanted

b) animals for what they wanted

d) all of the previous

- a) the year 1200 B.C. in China.
  - b) the year 700 B.C. in Lydia.
  - c) the year 800 A.D. in China.
  - d) the 1500's in North America.
- 3 A deer is .....
- a) a kind of money
  - c) made of shells
- 4 If something is durable, it .....
- a) is strong and can last a long time
  - b) is made of metal
  - c) can be used as money
  - d) none of the above

- b) a kind of animal
- d) gold or silver

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 What idea is all money based on?
- 6 What was the first paper money made of?
- 7 What are coins?
- 8 How do you think money would be like in the future?

**A) Translate into Arabic:**

1. Bill Gates was one of the first entrepreneurs in the world. He set up his first business when he was only a teenager. Now he is one of the richest people of the world.
2. Technology is a double-edged weapon. It is the ladder by which humanity upgrades and develops but it may also be a means of destruction and ruin.
3. Scientific research proved that there are different kinds of food, which have a great effect on preventing the elderly from having cancer such as garlic and cabbage.
4. The issue of protecting (immunizing) people from misguidance happened by publishing false news remains the most important case relating to journalism profession.
5. The essence of good manners is consideration for other people. You cannot help admiring decent people who naturally think of others and help them with good will.
6. As people will get used to everything being digital, e-book will be more common with book mania. But, there will always be some people who like books to hold and feel.

## B) Translate into English:

بعد تثير من المنظمات برامج خاصة لتدريب الشباب على أن يكونوا رواد أعمال صغاراً وأن يبدؤوا مشروعاتهم الصغيرة  
 ونسبة تلك التي ترتبط بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة والتي لا تحتاج إلى استثمارات كبيرة.  
 تشجع الحكومة الشباب على أن يتخلوا عن حلم الهجرة والعمل بالخارج بتوفير القروض للمشروعات الصغيرة والمتوسطة  
 بمراتب ميسرة حتى يتسنى لهم النجاح في بلادهم.  
 بشكل الوالدان شخصية أبنائهم منذ بداية طفولتهم، فهم يعلمونهم القيم والعادات وأيضاً يشاركونهم الاحتمات  
 والتعب ويطورون الروابط العاطفية معهم.  
 يؤكد الأطباء أن الحياة الصحية وممارسة التمرينات بانتظام من أهم وسائل الوقاية من الأمراض، لأن ذلك يدعم جهاز  
 المناعة الذي يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض.

## Enrich your Vocabulary

decent	محترم	issue	قضية
destruction	تدمير/إعمار	loans	قروض
double-edged	ذو حدين	misguidance	تضليل
essence	جوهر	prevention	وقاية
immigration	الهجرة	upgrade	ترقية
interests	فوائد	values	قيم

6 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The advantages and disadvantages of social media"



# Lessons 3&4



## Vocabulary

### Vocabulary on Reading

afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
boil (v) (ed)	يغلي
competition (n)	منافسة
corn cob (n)	غليون كوز الذرة
create (v) (d)	يبتدع/يبدع
describe (v) (d)	يصف
device (n)	جهاز
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض/يعرض
dried (adj)	مجفف
electricity (n)	كهرباء
entry (n)	دخول
expand (v) (ed)	يعد/يوسع
filter (n) (v) (ed)	مرشح/يرشح
finalist (n)	متسابق نهائي
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
interest (n)	اهتمام
invention (n)	اختراع

inventor (n)	مخترع
life-changing (adj)	مغير للحياة
motivated (adj)	مستمتع/متحمس
organiser (n)	مخطط
outline (v) (d)	يحدد/يخطط الخطوط العريضة
overall (adj) (adv)	شامل/الكل
pedal-powered (adj)	يعمل بمسدال (دراجة)
present (v) (ed)	يقدم
prize (n)	جائزة
purpose (n)	غرض
recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
simple (adj)	بسيط
solve (v) (d)	يحل
sort out (v) (ed)	يفرز/يقوم بإيصال
variety (n)	تنوع
venue (n)	مكان إقامة حدث
vote (v) (d)	يعت/يبدل بصوته

## Vocabulary on Listening

access (n)	مدخل/اسيل	experiment (n)	تجربة
accessible (adj)	سهل المنال	innovation (n)	إبداع
available (adj)	متاح/متوفر	laboratory (n)	معمل
benefit (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	liquid (n)	سائل
bleeding (n)	نزيف	major (adj)	رئيسي
blood (n)	دم	nationality (n)	جنسية
breakthrough (n)	إنجاز/اختراق (علمي)	operation (n)	عملية جراحية
cent (n)	سنت/عملة أمريكية	percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
context (n)	سياق	pharmaceutical (adj)	دوائي
deaths (n)	وفيات	research (n)	بحث علمي
detailed (adj)	مفصل	soldier (n)	جندي
ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد	surgeon (n)	جراح

## Workbook Vocabulary

accessories (n)	مستلزمات/إكسسوارات	minor (adj)	ثانوي/غير أساسي
amongst (prep)	بين	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحي
collection (n)	مجموعة	non-governmental (adj)	غير حكومي
come across (v)	يصادف	option (n)	الخيار
community (n)	مجتمع	outfit (n)	ملابس أزي
complex (adj)	معقد	promote (v) (d)	يطور/يرقى
crawl (v) (ed)	يزحف	practical (adj)	عملي
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
dairy (n)	منتجات ألبان	range (n)	تنوع
effort (n)	مجهود	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل/يخفض
everyday (adj)	يومي	secondary (adj)	ثانوي/غير أساسي
fast (n) (v) (ed)	صوم/يصوم	sleep suit (n)	بذلة نوم
fruity (adj)	بطعم/برائحة الفاكهة	solution (n)	حل
global (adj)	عالمي	train (v) (ed)	يعرب
joint (adj)	مشترك	unique (adj)	متميز
matching (adj)	متجانس		

by accident

(be) a great success

keep you fit

aim at

available to

crawl around

experience with

match with

بالصدفة

ينجح كثيرا

يحافظ على لياقتك

يهدف إلى

متوفر لـ

يزحف حول

خبرة بـ

يتناسب مع

make life easier

make recommendations

stay healthy

plenty of

sell ... to

solution to/for

successful in

vote for

يجعل الحياة أسهل

يقدم ترشيحات

يظل بصحة جيدة

وفرة/كثرة من

يبيع ... لـ

حل لـ

نلجج في

بصوت لصالح

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
attend	يحضر	attendance	حضور		
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي/اجمعي
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
expand	يوسع/يوسع	expansion	مد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
motivate	يحفز	motivation	حافز/دافع	motivated	متحفز/منذفع
promote	يطور/يرقى	promotion	تطور/ترقية	promotional	مطور/مترقى
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled	معد تدويره
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	خفض/انقيل	reduced	مخفض
remove	يزيل	removal	إزالة	removable	قابل للإزالة
train	يدرّب	training	تدريب	trained	متدرب

## Reading Text (1)

### Pre-reading question:

- What do you think a pedal powered washing machine is like?

### Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention. When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she **recycled**<sup>(1)</sup> some bicycle parts and built a **pedal-powered**<sup>(2)</sup> washing machine which saves time and keeps you fit! Her invention help families whose homes don't have electricity.

Her next goal is to make a simple **device**<sup>(3)</sup> that can create electricity to use at home.

### Post-reading question:

- How did the girl help herself and her community as well?

- (1) سبيل
- (2) آلات
- (3) جهاز

## Reading Text (2)

### Pre-reading question:

- In your opinion, why is important to filter drinking water?

### Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't afford to buy expensive **filters**<sup>(1)</sup>. In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of **corn**<sup>(2)</sup>, but they only sell part of the plant. The rest of the corn cob isn't used.

When she saw all the dried corn cobs on the side of the road, she wondered if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter **removes**<sup>(3)</sup> 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be **boiled**<sup>(4)</sup> to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the cheap device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

**Post-reading question:** - How did Lalita recycle things to help her community?

- (1) مرشحات
- (2) ذرة
- (3) يزيل
- (4) يغلي





## Reading Text (3)

### Pre-reading question:

Why are scientific competitions for young inventors important?

## Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

### Introduction

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's **competition**<sup>(1)</sup> and recommend any changes that could improve how it worked.

### The organisation

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition **finalists**<sup>(2)</sup> were invited to go to Toronto to present their inventions. The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements. They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition **venue**<sup>(3)</sup>.

### The competition

The competition was very well organised and there was plenty of time for the finalists to **display**<sup>(4)</sup> and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to **attend**<sup>(5)</sup>, so I was lucky to get lots of interest in my invention.

### Suggested improvements

Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should be **expanded**<sup>(6)</sup> to include teenagers from other countries too.

### Conclusion

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

### Post-reading question:

According to the writer, what are the good points of the competition?

- |                         |
|-------------------------|
| (1) مسابقة              |
| (2) المتعلمون للتعليمات |
| (3) مكان حدث            |
| (4) يعرض                |
| (5) يحضر                |
| (6) يمدد يوسع           |

## Solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all inventors have been successful in finding good solutions to everyday problems. Some of the craziest ideas include mini umbrellas to attach to your shoes or even a **sleepsuit**<sup>(1)</sup> made for babies to clean the floor as they **crawl**<sup>(2)</sup> around the house! However, luckily enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community experiences.

Several teenagers from Aswan have been trained to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a **range**<sup>(3)</sup> of useful solutions. One of the tastiest options by Azhar is a fruity dessert for those who are breaking fast and don't want to eat **dairy**<sup>(4)</sup> products.

Eman has created a collection of clothes with a complete range of **matching accessories**<sup>(5)</sup> so those in her neighbourhood do not have to go to several different shops to get the perfect outfit. The **unique**<sup>(6)</sup> selling point of these ideas is that they are offering practical solutions to real problems, and also help to reduce pollution, as the customers do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhood.

The training project, which a **joint**<sup>(7)</sup> effort between governmental and non-governmental organizations, has been a great success amongst both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those common problems we **come across**<sup>(8)</sup> every day.

(1) بملء نوم

(2) يزحف

(3) تنوع

(4) منتجات الألبان

(5) إكسسوارات

(6) متميز

(7) مشترك

(8) يعترض

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Experts are studying various ways to ..... garbage into fuel.
  - a) rewind
  - b) cycle
  - c) rewrite
  - d) recycle
- 2 The store sells TVs, VCRs, and other electronic .....
  - a) devices
  - b) mails
  - c) books
  - d) designers
- 3 The list of ..... in most squash championships usually includes Egyptian players.
  - a) finders
  - b) bounders
  - c) finalists
  - d) journalists
- 4 The museum has a magnificent ..... of ancient silver and leather objects.
  - a) show
  - b) display
  - c) present
  - d) shape
- 5 The communication industry has ..... greatly over the last decade.
  - a) expanded
  - b) expired
  - c) expelled
  - d) exhaled
- 6 The soldiers ..... under the wire fence to reach the enemy camp.
  - a) flew
  - b) crawled
  - c) ran
  - d) drew
- 7 The bride bought some ..... to wear with her wedding dress
  - a) machines
  - b) tools
  - c) accessories
  - d) fictions
- 8 As I was walking through the town, I came ..... a group of street performers.
  - a) out
  - b) in
  - c) off
  - d) across

Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you detailed information about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of **deaths**<sup>(1)</sup> in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a solution to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena, whose parents are Egyptian, carried out her first experiment on plants. Since that moment she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her objective has always been to find answers to the everyday issues we all face. At the age of fifteen, and with the help of her father, who works in a lab, Deena gained access to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal **liquid**<sup>(2)</sup> drops.

Before she had made the **breakthrough**<sup>(3)</sup> the usual time it took for medicines to stop **bleeding**<sup>(4)</sup> in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her chemical invention can stop bleed- in as little as 10 seconds. This **major**<sup>(5)</sup> **innovation**<sup>(6)</sup> means the difference between patient losing millilitres or litres of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontro- loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's invention can save a huge number of lives in a wide range of **contexts**<sup>(7)</sup>. While this is clearly good news for **soldiers**<sup>(8)</sup> in the army, **surgeons**<sup>(9)</sup> in hospitals are also looking forward to be- able to use the liquid in the case of unexpected problems during **operations**<sup>(10)</sup> and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to **ensure**<sup>(11)</sup> her solution reaches as many people as possible at an affordable price, which is why she is in discussion with **pharmaceutical**<sup>(12)</sup> companies. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is widely **accessible**<sup>(13)</sup>.

In a recent interview Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will inspire others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

- (1) وفيات
- (2) سائل
- (3) اختراق
- (4) نزيف
- (5) رئيسي
- (6) ابتعا
- (7) سياقات
- (8) جنود
- (9) جراحون
- (10) عمليات
- (11) يضمن
- (12) مؤاتى
- (13) سهل الوصول

## Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The information about the new disease should be \_\_\_\_\_ to all people of the world.  
a) accessible                      b) avoidable
- 2 The Ministry of Transport took steps to \_\_\_\_\_ the safety of the train passengers.  
a) damage                          c) stressful                      d) unreliable
- 3 The peace treaty was a historic \_\_\_\_\_ in political history of the area.  
a) expansion                      c) test                          d) approach
- 4 There is an extensive competition between \_\_\_\_\_ companies to produce the most effective vaccine for COVID-19.  
a) breakthrough                      b) access
- 5 We need to encourage \_\_\_\_\_ in industry in order to be able to compete foreign products.  
a) estimation                      d) argument
- 6 We need to encourage \_\_\_\_\_ in industry in order to be able to compete foreign products.  
a) failure                          b) agricultural                      d) pharmaceutical
- 7 We need to encourage \_\_\_\_\_ in industry in order to be able to compete foreign products.  
a) failure                          b) reduction                      c) innovation                      d) solution

## Focus on Vocabulary



crawl	يزحف	▶ to walk on your hands and knees
accessories	مستلزمات / اكسسوارات	▶ bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes
outfit	ملابس / ازي	▶ different clothes which you can wear together
range	تنوع	▶ a synonym for 'variety'
come across	يصادف	▶ to discover something usually by accident

# Synonym & Antonym (Opposite)

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
afford	يتحمل نفقات	manage	refuse
collection	مجموعة	selection	separation
complex	معقد	complicated	simple
display	عرض/يعرض	demonstrate/present	hide/cover
filter	مرشح/يرشح	clean/refine	pollute
global	عالمي	worldwide	local
outline	يوجز	summarize	expand
practical	عملي	useful/factual	theoretical
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse	waste
unique	متعيز	extraordinary/uncommon	common
variety	تنوع	range /diversity	similarity

## Notes on Vocabulary

### position

### venue

**position** (the place where someone or something is, especially in relation to other objects and places)

▶ She showed me the **position** of the village on the map.

**venue** (a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game etc. takes place)

▶ The meeting will be held at a **venue** in the south of the city.

### display

### show

**display** (an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy)

▶ There was a special **display** of local photographs.

**show** (a performance for the public, especially one that includes singing, dancing or jokes.)

▶ Tonight's **show** is live from Cairo Stadium.

### International

عالمي

دولي

affecting or including the whole world

Only the UN can tackle **global** problems like pollution of the atmosphere.

**International** relating to or involving more than one nation  
This is CNN, bringing you all the latest **international** news.

### Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention

The competition organisers were very good **at sending** me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد (year) في مثل هذه التعبيرات

They also **organised** for my invention **to be sent** to the competition venue.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb+ing) بعد حرف الجر (at)

..... a sleepsuit **made** for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول (to be sent) بعد الفعل (organised)

..... a sleepsuit **which is made** for babies to clean the floor as they crawl around the house!

- هذه الجملة أصلها

- لاختصار الجملة حذف ضمير الوصل (which) و صيغة (verb to be)

### Check Point 3

- 1 Morocco is the ..... for the latest round of talks between Libyan politicians.
  - a) venue
  - b) position
  - c) road
  - d) placement
- 2 The young actress is presenting a new television quiz ..... these days.
  - a) display
  - b) show
  - c) presentation
  - d) fair
- 3 The New Administrative Capital will surely have a/an ..... airport.
  - a) internal
  - b) global
  - c) international
  - d) outside
- 4 Radars are the devices which are used to determine the aircraft's ..... .
  - a) venue
  - b) scenery
  - c) placement
  - d) position

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Father says that we can't ..... to go anywhere this summer because of financial <sup>مالى</sup> problems.  
a) produce                      b) afford                      c) attend                      d) apply
- 2 All members of the team are requested to ..... this important meeting.  
a) afford                      b) reject                      c) refuse                      d) attend
- 3 Prices are lower when there is ..... between the big stores.  
a) compilation                      b) accommodation                      c) competition                      d) consolidation
- 4 The children were silenced by the sudden ..... of the serious headmaster Mr. Kamel.  
a) entry                      b) exit                      c) display                      d) show
- 5 The robber was ..... as tall and dark, and aged about 20.  
a) prescribed                      b) described                      c) ascribed                      d) fossilized
- 6 Our national team will play three of last year's beaten ..... in the champions.  
a) minors                      b) losers                      c) finalists                      d) locals
- 7 I'll make ..... for you to be met at the airport by my driver.  
a) agreement                      b) accommodation                      c) disputes                      d) arrangements
- 8 There are some plans to ..... the local airport in Hurghada to make it fit for bigger flights.  
a) devalue                      b) reduce                      c) expand                      d) balance
- 9 The ozone layer ..... harmful ultraviolet rays from the sun.  
a) charges                      b) filters                      c) fossils                      d) stores
- 10 The concert's still on Saturday but its ..... has been changed.  
a) venue                      b) position                      c) scenery                      d) avenue
- 11 The film won the top ..... at the Berlin Film Festival.  
a) gift                      b) present                      c) souvenir                      d) prize
- 12 In tomorrow's election, many young people will be ..... for the first time.  
a) voicing                      b) voting                      c) compelling                      d) revising
- 13 The manager briefly ..... what we are trying to achieve this year.  
a) lined                      b) inclined                      c) outlined                      d) underlined
- 14 There is wheelchair ..... to most of the public buildings in the city.  
a) access                      b) road                      c) rail                      d) stop
- 15 These data about the job are still ..... for download on the company's website.  
a) comfortable                      b) available                      c) flexible                      d) responsible



- 1 you can't find your difficulties by running away. You should face them.  
 a) get b) solve c) increase d) crawl
- 2 the young couple were very excited when their baby first \_\_\_\_\_ across the floor.  
 a) dug b) flew c) deployed d) crawled
- 3 this creative project shows the \_\_\_\_\_ effort exerted by a group of good students.  
 a) single b) joint c) pointed d) pointed
- 4 my uncle's shop sells bathroom \_\_\_\_\_ such as mirrors and towel-rails  
 a) accessories b) accesses c) tools d) jewelry
- 5 the book suggests some \_\_\_\_\_ ways to save money. You should read  
 a) minor b) unimportant c) practical d) invaluable

Expressions, idioms, prepositions, derivatives, synonyms and antonyms Exercises

- 1 experts say the mild exercises such as jogging can \_\_\_\_\_ you fit as much as training hard.  
 a) stay b) keep c) give d) do
- 2 each person's fingerprints are unique. The word "unique" is the opposite of the word \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) common b) fascinating c) dull d) agreed
- 3 the small company was successful \_\_\_\_\_ winning the contract for the new Mall.  
 a) at b) to c) for d) in
- 4 the art gallery has an impressive \_\_\_\_\_ of modern art.  
 a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected
- 5 the colour of the curtains must match \_\_\_\_\_ your furniture.  
 a) at b) in c) with d) by
- 6 the committee \_\_\_\_\_ recommendations to the board on teachers' pay and conditions.  
 a) followed b) took c) did d) made
- 7 you can \_\_\_\_\_ healthy by eating well and exercising regularly.  
 a) stay b) pass c) save d) rescue
- 8 the new water tank has a \_\_\_\_\_ filter to clean the water in it.  
 a) remove b) removal c) removable d) removed
- 9 few people understand the complex issues of environmental science. The adjective complex is similar in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) simple b) complicated c) clear d) fragile
- 10 the aim of the meeting is to \_\_\_\_\_ trade between the two countries.  
 a) promote b) promotion c) promotional d) promoted



## Relative pronouns

نستخدم **what** كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهي تساوي **the thing(s) that**

فاعل/فعل **What** فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هي عليه

▶ I didn't understand **what** he had said. (what had been said).

I can't give him (Ahmed) **what** he needs.

▶ **What** makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

نستخدم **(which)** لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

▶ My brother won a valuable prize, **which** made me happy.

نستخدم **whose** بدلاً من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

▶ The girl **with blue** eyes is my sister.

The girl **whose** eyes are blue is my sister.

▶ The man is rich. **He has** a red car.

The man **whose** car is red is rich.

▶ The car won the race. **Its** colour is red.

The car **whose** colour is red won the race.

انظر الفرق بين **whose/who's**

**who's + V-ing/noun = who is... who's + P.P. = who has...**

▶ The boy **who's** running there is my cousin.

▶ The boy **whose** phone was stolen was furious.

أنتك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ **whose** (ومن الممكن أن نعرف أن هذه الكلمات

اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

**stay, dream, work, play, likes stand dislikes, end, hopes, etc.**

▶ People **whose likes and dislikes** are the same are good friends.

▶ I like the stories **whose ends** are happy.

نستخدم **that** بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

**all - any (thing) - every (thing) - few - little - many - much - no (thing) - none - some (thing)**

▶ Is this all **that** you want me to do?

▶ There isn't anything **that** we can eat in this house.

▶ This is the best book **that** I have ever read.

يمكن استخدام **why (for which)** كضمير وصل كالاتي:  
 he decided not to come.

### حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

1 إذا كان في محل مفعول به .  
 The meat was delicious. We ate it yesterday.

2 إذا كان بعد مبنى للمجهول نحذف **which + v-to be** ونضع P.P:  
 The meat (which/that) we ate yesterday was delicious.

3 إذا كان بعد مبنى معلوم نحذف **which/who** ونضع **v-ing**:  
 The man is my neighbour. I meet him every day.

4 إذا كان بعد اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **who/which + v-to be** ولا نضع شيئا:  
 The man (who/whom/that) I meet every day is my neighbour.

5 إذا كان بعد اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **who/which + v-to be** ولا نضع شيئا:  
 I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

6 إذا كان بعد مبنى معلوم نحذف **which/who** ونضع **v-ing**:  
 The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

7 إذا كان بعد اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف **who/which + v-to be** ولا نضع شيئا:  
 Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)



## Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He told me about all ..... happened to him in his childhood.

- a) that                      b) what                      c) which                      d) where

2 Shakespeare, ..... plays are well-known worldwide, is a great playwright.

- a) who's                      b) that                      c) whose                      d) who

3 My cousin, ..... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.

- a) that                      b) who's                      c) whom                      d) whose

4 I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find ..... I wanted.

- a) which                      b) whose                      c) that                      d) what

5 There's a girl ..... for you outside the gate to help her.

- a) waiting                      b) waits                      c) waited                      d) is waiting

## Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Khalid, \_\_\_\_\_ father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.  
a) whose his      b) whose      c) who's      d) who
- 2 Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, \_\_\_\_\_ was a doctor by profession, invented Sherlock Holmes.  
a) whose      b) that      c) whom      d) who
- 3 Biology is a subject about \_\_\_\_\_ I know very little.  
a) when      b) which      c) that      d) whom
- 4 My local tennis club, \_\_\_\_\_ I learned to play tennis, was on television yesterday.  
a) where      b) that      c) which      d) when
- 5 I study four languages, \_\_\_\_\_ is a lot for me to learn.  
a) that      b) who      c) which      d) what
- 6 The president met the man \_\_\_\_\_ son came first in the competition.  
a) whom      b) whose      c) that      d) who's
- 7 Here's the barber's \_\_\_\_\_ I have my hair cut.  
a) that      b) who      c) whom      d) where
- 8 In the summer holidays, \_\_\_\_\_ most people take their holidays, seaside towns are usually very busy.  
a) when      b) which      c) that      d) whose
- 9 The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ I had a tutorial last week explains things really clearly.  
a) that      b) whom      c) who      d) with whom
- 10 The company, \_\_\_\_\_ is in Helwan, employs 1,000 employees.  
a) which      b) what      c) where      d) that
- 11 Judy, \_\_\_\_\_ father works for a multi-national company, often travels abroad with her family.  
a) who      b) whose      c) who's      d) that
- 12 They treated the poor man rudely, \_\_\_\_\_ made me angry.  
a) which      b) whom      c) who      d) in which
- 13 The furniture \_\_\_\_\_ by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.  
a) which made      b) made      c) is made      d) which making
- 14 Ten people \_\_\_\_\_ three children were injured in the plane crash.  
a) included      b) which included  
c) including      d) who were included
- 15 Heba lost the book \_\_\_\_\_ her last month.  
a) which I lent it      b) which lent      c) who lent      d) I lent
- 16 The reason \_\_\_\_\_ I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.  
a) where      b) which      c) why      d) whose

- I don't like people \_\_\_\_\_ words are so rude.
- a) whose                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) that
- The flat \_\_\_\_\_ is overlooking the Nile.
- a) which he bought it                      b) he bought                      c) whom                      d) that
- c) he bought it                      d) he buying
- Helal \_\_\_\_\_ works are shown in the gallery has won the first prize.
- a) which                      b) who                      c) whom                      d) whose
- Strikers are soccer players \_\_\_\_\_ to score goals for their team.
- a) try                      b) who try                      c) Whose try                      d) Which try
- A stamp is something \_\_\_\_\_ on a letter if you want to send it.
- a) you put                      b) you put it                      c) which you put it                      d) putting
- The Thames is a river \_\_\_\_\_ through London.
- a) ran                      b) which runs                      c) running                      d) B and c
- I didn't buy anything because I didn't see \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted.
- a) which                      b) what                      c) that                      d) when
- The man \_\_\_\_\_ this luxurious house is very modest.
- a) owned                      b) owning                      c) who is owned                      d) owns
- A calendar is something \_\_\_\_\_ you the date
- a) it tells                      b) tells                      c) which it tells                      d) which tells
- My teacher is a person \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) who everybody likes him                      b) everybody likes him
- c) everybody likes                      d) that everybody likes him
- I've got a friend \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) her husband goes skydiving                      b) who husband goes skydiving
- c) whose husband goes skydiving                      d) which husband goes skydiving
- My father \_\_\_\_\_ always forgets his password.
- a) , whom I helped to install his computer,
- b) whom I helped to install his computer
- c) , that I helped to install his computer,
- d) who I helped to install his computer
- Tom Cruise \_\_\_\_\_ is a famous American actor.
- a) who has starred a lot of films                      b) whose starred a lot of films
- c) , whom films are starred,                      d) , who has starred a lot of films.



## Discussing goals and how to achieve them

People who have reached some level of success know that the secret behind achieving goals is not in what you do to achieve them, but what you do when you fail - you keep trying. And if that doesn't work, well, you try yet another approach. And on it goes. You keep pushing until eventually you create a breakthrough. Winners aren't born knowing how to achieve goals - they persevere until they reach their objectives.

### How to Set Goals and Achieve Them - 10 Goal Setting Tips.

1. Choose goals that are worthwhile.
  2. Choose goals that are achievable stretches.
  3. Make your goals specific.
  4. Commit to your goals.
  5. Make your goal public.
  6. Prioritize your goals.
  7. Make your goals real to you.
  8. Set deadlines to accomplish your goals.
  9. Evaluate your goals.
  10. Reward yourself for accomplishment.
- References: <https://www.tonyrobbins.com/ask-tony/how-to-achieve-everything/>  
<https://www.thebalancesmb.com/goal-setting-tips-2948134>

## Practice

**With your partner, find answers to the following questions:**

- 1 What is the first goal you have ever achieved/failed?  
.....
- 2 What do you think the most important thing to achieve goals is? Why?  
.....
- 3 If you did your best but couldn't achieve your goal, what is the next step you would do?  
.....

## Life Skills

### Decision-making

Decision making is the process of making choices by identifying a decision, gathering information, and assessing alternative resolutions.

Using a step-by-step decision-making process can help you make more deliberate, thoughtful decisions by organizing relevant information and defining alternatives. This approach increases the chances that you will choose the most satisfying alternative possible.

Step 1: Identify the decision

Step 2: Gather relevant information

Step 3: Identify the alternatives

Step 4: Weigh the evidence

Step 5: Choose among alternatives

Step 6: Take action

Step 7: Review your decision & its consequences

Reference <https://www.umassd.edu/fycm/decision-making/process/>



تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

جمع نقاطك

و استبدالها الآن بمجموعة من الهدايا  
الرائعة على متجر الأضواء.

دخل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)



### A report about an experience تقرير عن تجربة عملية

Imagine that you attended a three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur. The organisers have asked you to write a report on your experience.

**Plan your report. Your report should:**

- outline what the course involved and how it was organised.
- explain what was good for you.
- make recommendations for how the course could be improved.
- say if you would recommend the course or not.

### **Report on the Young Inventor's Competition**

#### **Introduction**

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience the three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur in Centre of Leader Preparation in Helwan.

#### **The organisation**

I live in Alexandria. I took part in a competition for young people who have ideas or inventions that could be used as a basis for a business. I was chosen for the course with some other young people. The organisers arranged our accommodation at a youth hostel near the centre and there were good lectures with practical ideas about the course.

#### **Suggested improvements**

Although it was great to be part of this course, one thing was missing. In my opinion, the course organisers should have invited some businessmen who can support and help the best young people to start a new business.

#### **Conclusion**

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend taking part in such courses. In my view, this may lead to good results for the participants and our country.



# General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The students in our school are all highly \_\_\_\_\_ to get the first prize in the competition.  
 a) moved                      b) motivated                      c) applauded                      d) accelerated
- 2 Ali El Hagar showed a keen \_\_\_\_\_ in music from his childhood.  
 a) interest                      b) hatred                      c) neglect                      d) ignorance
- 3 The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to \_\_\_\_\_ their work.  
 a) prove                      b) improve                      c) buy                      d) display
- 4 The medical company uses animals in \_\_\_\_\_ tests for some of its drugs.  
 a) crime                      b) history                      c) laboratory                      d) print
- 5 I was very happy when I \_\_\_\_\_ across my old friend in the car park.  
 a) went                      b) came                      c) gave                      d) took
- 6 The government has made a big \_\_\_\_\_ to tackle the problem of poverty.  
 a) effort                      b) attack                      c) fight                      d) right
- 7 My little daughter always prefers yoghurt with a \_\_\_\_\_ flavour especially strawberry.  
 a) leafy                      b) fruity                      c) spicy                      d) meaty
- 8 The young couple arrived at the party in fine and matching white \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a) forms                      b) outwears                      c) outfits                      d) accesses
- 9 Through the big national projects, the government plans to \_\_\_\_\_ more jobs for young people.  
 a) lose                      b) avoid                      c) consume                      d) create
- 10 Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help \_\_\_\_\_ damaged hair.  
 a) repair                      b) destroy                      c) defect                      d) preface
- 11 Scientists carried out a series of \_\_\_\_\_ to test the new vaccine.  
 a) experiences                      b) experiments                      c) results                      d) purposes
- 12 All new staff will be \_\_\_\_\_ in customer service skills.  
 a) requested                      b) applied                      c) trained                      d) offered
- 13 Some employees were given the \_\_\_\_\_ of retiring early.  
 a) violence                      b) obligation                      c) necessity                      d) option
- 14 The scientist will present his \_\_\_\_\_ findings at the international conference.  
 a) search                      b) research                      c) purpose                      d) rehearse
- 15 The two old friends met \_\_\_\_\_ accident at the airport.  
 a) in                      b) for                      c) at                      d) by

- 16 Show me ..... you've got in your hand.  
 a) which                      b) what                      c) why                      d) that
- 17 The meat ..... yesterday was delicious.  
 a) eating                      b) which ate                      c) eaten                      d) which eaten
- 18 This is the hotel ..... rooms have a view of the sea.  
 a) which                      b) where                      c) what                      d) whose
- 19 That house, ..... was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.  
 a) which                      b) whose                      c) where                      d) that
- 20 Vegetables ..... contain vitamin C. are very important to our health.  
 a) whose                      b) who                      c) what                      d) which
- 21 A racket is something ..... to hit a ball when you play tennis or badminton.  
 a) which you use                      b) which you use it  
 c) You use it                      d) b and c
- 22 I work for a company .....  
 a) that exports clothing.                      b) which exports clothing.  
 c) exporting clothing.                      d) a, b and c are all possible.
- 23 I spoke to the assistant .....  
 a) which deals with complaints                      b) who deals with complaints  
 c) deals with complaints                      d) a and b are both possible
- 24 I bought a laptop .....  
 a) that's got a Chinese -English dictionary built-in  
 b) which has got a Chinese - English dictionary built-in  
 c) got a Chinese - English dictionary built-in  
 d) a and b are both possible.

**2 Choose the correct answer:**

My son, (1) (who/that) is studying medicine at Cairo, is going on holiday. His uncle Sameh invited him to Alex. (2) (which/where) he bought a new house last month. He is putting all his clothes into the suitcase (3) (which/whose) he has just bought. The train (4) (where/which) he is going to catch leaves at 11 a.m. His uncle, in (5) (whose/which) house he is going to stay, is a doctor too. My son, (6) (whose/who) wish is to visit Alex., is very excited about it.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Yugoslavian nun, Mother Theresa first came to India to teach young girls from wealthy Indian families. However, in her travels around the country, she saw how the poor Indian people lived.

There were homeless people living in the streets. Some were too poor to feed themselves and died of starvation. No one in the country who could help them did anything for these poor people. She felt determined to do something to help.

She realised that this was the job that God wanted her to do, so she left her highly paid job to help the poor in India. At first, it was hard for her. She did not have much support. Whatever little food and money she had, she gave them to those who came to her for help. No one was ever turned away from her doorstep.

She went around the city looking for the homeless and starving and took them off the streets. When the people in the area saw how hard she was trying to help their own people, they felt ashamed.

They wanted to follow her example. They donated food and money to help the poor. With more support from the community, she set up many homes all over India. Soon, she was known all over the world as the saviour of the poor.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Where was Mother Theresa from?  
a) Europe.                      b) Africa.                      c) Asia.                      d) South America.
- 2 It seemed that the people in India had ..... hearts before Theresa's arrival.  
a) Kind                      b) gentle                      c) caring                      d) cruel
- 3 "No one was ever turned away from her doorstep" means .....  
a) No one came to her house for help.  
b) She didn't let anyone leave without help.  
c) She didn't help all those who came for help.  
d) No one came to support her.
- 4 The phrase "have nothing to eat" is the synonym of ".....".  
a) ashamed                      b) support                      c) starving                      d) homeless

**B) Answer the following questions:**

- 5 What was her original job in India?
- 6 Why was she determined to help the poor in India?
- 7 Why didn't the work of helping the poor start off well?
- 8 Give evidence that Mother Theresa wasn't known only in India?

#### 4 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Encouraging young inventors can provide us with suitable technological solutions for our problems. These inventors can be the hope for a better society in Egypt.
2. Egyptian investors and businessmen have a great responsibility to finance the new inventions. This can lead to great progress for Egypt and reasonable economic benefits for them.
3. The next decades will witness a shortage of food as a result of over population. Genetic engineering is one of the solutions to this problem.
4. All economists expect a rise in the global economy as a result of the announcement of more vaccines for Coronavirus. However, the bad effects of the virus won't end soon.
5. The spread of Coronavirus had one good effect. It helped the spread of awareness among people about health care and ways to prevent diseases.
6. New technical schools are built in Egypt nowadays. One of these schools is the nuclear school in Matrouh which will provide us with skilled technicians in the field of nuclear energy.

#### B) Translate into English:

تتظم المؤسسات العلمية المختلفة المسابقات المختلفة لصفار المخترعين، ولكن الكثير من الاختراعات لا ترى النور بسبب نقص التمويل اللازم.

يتميز طلاب مدارس العلوم والرياضيات والتكنولوجيا المعصرى (ستيم) بجوائز في المسابقات العلمية التي يشاركون بها مما يؤكد الموهبة المعصرية في كل المجالات.

أثبتت أزمة فيروس كورونا أهمية الاكتفاء الذاتى وخاصة في مجال الغذاء، لأنها أدت إلى توقف رحلات الطيران التجارية مما سبب نقصا في كثير من الدول.

كان لاتخاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية في مواقع العمل في المشروعات القومية الكبرى أثر في استعراة العمل فيها مما ساعد نقعا كبيرا من الشعب المعصرى.

### Enrich your Vocabulary

awareness	الوعى	nuclear	نوى
economists	الاقتصاديين	sector	نمط
finance	يعمول/ تمويل	self sufficiency	لاكتفاء الذاتى
foundations	المؤسسات	technical	فنى
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	technological	تكنولوجى
investors	المستثمرين		

- 5 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following "How can we encourage young inventors to get better?"

# Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the **TWO** correct answers out of the **FIVE** options given:

The supermarket's daily profit is usually around 5 thousand pounds. The synonyms of the verb 'profit' are

benefit  
a) benefit  
b) proudly displayed her certificate to her parents. The antonyms of the word 'display' are

show  
a) show  
b) hide  
c) exhibition  
d) interest  
e) charity

We need to set the ..... of the present project before starting it.

causes  
a) causes  
b) aims  
c) uncover  
d) invent  
e) cover

research  
a) research  
b) exit  
c) goals  
d) diaries  
e) losses

Professor Shaheen ..... to the best universities.

created  
a) created  
b) consumed  
c) entry  
d) avoidance  
e) admittance

Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.

a) This is the dress my mother has made for me.  
b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.  
c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.  
d) This is the dress whose my mother has made for me.  
e) This is the dress that my mother has made for me.

Two of the following sentences are grammatically correct.

a) The village where I grew up is very small.  
b) The village which I grew up is very small.  
c) The village in which I grew up is very small.  
d) The village when I grew up is very small.

This is the man ..... for a job.

a) looking  
b) that looking  
c) who's looking  
d) whose looking  
e) who looking

Give me the plate ..... the table.

a) which is on  
b) that is on  
c) where is on  
d) on which is  
e) , which is on,

Two of the following sentences are grammatically incorrect.

a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections.  
b) I know the candidate which I am going to support in the next elections.  
c) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections.  
d) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.  
e) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Learning from experience is a good ..... for continuous improvement.  
a) analysis  
b) prescription  
c) recipe  
d) guidebook  
e) excerpts  
b) highlights  
c) wings  
d) losses

- 13 Local newspapers took ..... at the famous actor for his indecent remarks.  
a) aim b) goal c) target d) objective
- 14 We need someone outside the company to give us a/an ..... analysis.  
a) target b) goal c) aim d) objective
- 15 The team ..... their first win of the season at the Premier League.  
a) recorded b) reported c) gave d) took
- 16 If you are fed up with spams and unwanted ads, you can install a spam .....  
a) cleaner b) caller c) filter d) advisor
- 17 Two men were arrested as the police officer proved that they were ..... to the terrorist action.  
a) outfits b) accessories c) accesses d) appliances
- 18 The number of people claiming unemployment ..... rose as a result of the Corona Virus crisis.  
a) crisis b) loss c) profit d) benefit
- 19 The students were left to their own ..... when the teacher was late for the class.  
a) tools b) equipment c) devices d) defects
- 20 We are taking a ..... view of our business to make the right decision.  
a) global b) local c) national d) simple
- 21 I'm going home now because all the work .....  
a) has been done b) will be done c) had been done d) are done
- 22 We will make a move as soon as the train .....  
a) had stopped b) stopped c) will stop d) has stopped
- 23 Rameses II ..... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.  
a) was ruling b) ruled c) have ruled d) had ruled
- 24 When he ..... on holiday, he lay on the beach every day.  
a) was b) was being c) had been d) is
- 25 You will have to be fined. You ..... driven very fast.  
a) could have b) mustn't have c) shouldn't have d) must have
- 26 I wanted to know .....  
a) how much did the car cost? b) how much the car costs?  
c) how much the car cost. d) how much had the car cost.
- 27 After he ..... at the airport, he realised that he had forgotten his passport at home.  
a) had arrived b) was arriving c) has arrived d) arrived
- 28 Amira looks very tired. She ..... the flat for a long time.  
a) cleaned b) was cleaning  
c) has been cleaning d) had been cleaning
- 29 I suggest ..... for them to answer before getting in touch with them again.  
a) you to wait b) you waiting c) to wait d) you wait
- 30 My father can't afford ..... a new car.  
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The businessman is a ..... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.

a) secret

b) passionate

c) specific

d) heavy

2 There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife ..... in Egypt.

a) imagination

b) convention

c) conservation

d) condensation

3 The chef of this famous restaurant keeps all his ..... a secret.

a) prescriptions

b) recipes

c) directions

d) observations

4 The ..... of the famous artist's painting at the gallery asserted his talent.

a) show

b) display

c) present

d) shape

5 My friend won the first prize in the art ..... at the university.

a) compilation

b) accommodation

c) consolidation

d) competition

6 The young man is wanted by the police as a/an ..... to murder.

a) accessory

b) device

c) equipment

d) outfit

7 A student ..... doesn't study hard enough cannot be successful.

a) which

b) whom

c) whose

d) who

8 One should quit smoking, ..... is very harmful to health.

a) which

b) what

c) who

d) that

9 They have three sons, all of ..... are living abroad.

a) who

b) that

c) whom

d) whose

10 All the students ..... to organise a picnic were discouraged when they saw the dark clouds.

a) wish

b) wishing

c) wished

d) are wished

11 This is the restaurant ..... I usually go for my meals.

a) to which

b) which

c) at which

d) in which

12 The boys ..... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.

a) who

b) who's

c) which

d) whose

13 Confusing topics ..... are well-expressed can be understood.

a) who

b) that

c) where

d) when

14 The questions ..... in the exam were specially chosen.

a) asking

b) which asked

c) asked

d) that ask

- 15 Shakespeare, most of ..... plays were adapted to the cinema, is still read by many.
- a) whose                      b) his                      c) whom                      d) who

- 16 We stayed in a hotel .....
- a) where every room had a broadband connection  
 b) which every room had a broadband connection  
 c) that every room had a broadband connection  
 d) every room had a broadband connection

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17 A sportsman is fond of .....
- a) playing games                      b) reading books  
 c) eating much food                      d) sleeping early
- 18 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is .....
- a) coming to new states                      b) coming to new harbours  
 c) meeting people                      d) going shopping



The underlined word (one) refers to

- a) the lazy man
- c) the sportsman

- b) the passenger
- d) anyone

The best title of this text is

- a) Sportsmen
- c) A passenger ship

- b) Lazy people
- d) An ideal holiday

B) Answer the following questions:

Why do you think a sportsman won't be happy with a lazy man?

What are we told about the foods and drinks on a modern passenger ship?

Find words in the text, which mean:

- a) use of any part of the body to strengthen and improve it.
- b) a long journey by sea

What do you think of the writer concerning trying foods?

Translate into Arabic:

Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries however, terrorists are still getting support from various organisations to achieve their goals in many countries.

Translate into English:

- تشتهر مصر بكثير من أماكن الجذب السياحي التي لو أحسننا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التي يمكن أن نحصل عليها من السياح القادحين لعصر.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"



**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

تابع مستواك الدراسي أسبوعياً  
من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات شاملة  
لجميع المواد.  
حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

# Revision (4)

## Units 10, 11 & 12

### Vocabulary

afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك	material (n)	مادة
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة	media (n)	وسائل الإعلام
check (v) (ed)	يراجع	national (adj)	قومي
contribute (v) (d)	يساهم	obvious (adj)	واضح
crime (n)	جريمة	ordinary (adj)	عادي
current events (n)	أحداث جارية	outstanding	رائع / معبر
decorate (v) (d)	يزين	pay for (v)	يدفع ثمن
depression (n)	الإحباط	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
dramas (n)	أعمال درامية / مسرحيات	reality (n)	واقع / حقيقة
educational (adj)	تعليمي	real-life (adj)	حقيقي / واقعي
entertainment (n)	ترفيه / تسلية	seeds (n)	بذور
essential (adj)	ضروري	series (n)	سلسلة
excellent (adj)	ممتاز	solar panel (n)	لوح شمسي
find out (v)	يكتشف	Southern Africa (n)	جنوب إفريقيا
focus (v) (ed)	يركز على	survey (n)	بحث / دراسة
habit (n)	عادة	ultraviolet (adj)	نقطة بنفسجي
Kalahari Desert (n)	صحراء كالهارى	viewer (n)	شاهد
manager (n)	مدير		

Nowadays, so many people write 'news' stories and blogs we decided to interview three professionals involved in the world of news to find out what they think about the stories.

**Anya** : I'm a news reporter for a national television channel and my job is really interesting, but it can also be difficult to find real stories. I believe that it is very important to have good sources which you can trust. Nowadays there is so much news on the internet it's difficult to know which facts are true, and which are not true which is why all facts must be checked carefully.



**Haruki**: As the editor of a local newspaper, it is essential that all my journalists write stories that interest our readers. The national newspapers have stories which are about the whole country, but we like to focus on happier news happening in our area.



**Nina** : I'm a photographer and I work with a reporter who writes about crime. We usually travel together so I can take photos and he can talk to the police and people who saw anything. When he has finished his article, he sends it to the newspaper with my pictures which go under the headline.



**Square eyes; Are we watching too much TV; Is TV good or bad?**

Nowadays, many parents are worried about the amount of time their children spend watching television, but in fact the amount of time children actually sit in front of the TV is less than it used to be. A recent survey in the UK found that children watch TV for about thirteen hours a week.

However, they spend more than fifteen hours a week on the Internet, and this is increasing. It seems that most children connect to the media from their tablets and phones, which is where they get their entertainment, news and music.

However, sitting watching television together can be a very positive way of spending time with your family. There are a lot of channels on TV nowadays, so there are plenty of different kinds of programmes to choose from. As well as the usual programmes, such as comedies and dramas, there are a huge number of reality shows, which have become very popular. These are shows where ordinary people appear in real-life or everyday situations, or in situations or competitions which the programme makers have created.

Television also offers people the opportunity to learn new things, not just about the news, but about the world around them. Documentaries about animals, the environment, history or culture are an excellent way to teach both children and adults things they may not have learnt at school. And if everyone is finding out new information together, it's a great way to discuss new ideas and share opinions.

## Reading Text (3)

**Green World** is a new television series about some of the most amazing and beautiful places around the world. I loved the first programme, which was about the Kalahari Desert in southern Africa and the people and animals that live there. The programme was introduced by Marcus Thompson, a journalist who had lived in the Kalahari for years, and it was obvious that he loves the place. I'm glad they used someone who really knew about the place and not a famous celebrity. The photography was outstanding with brilliant photos of the desert, which were taken during the day and at night. I watched the programme with my two children, and we all learnt a lot of things we hadn't known about the Kalahari Desert. We also enjoyed discussing the programme afterwards, and my son looked up more information on the internet. I'm pleased that there are going to be some magazines to go with the series too. I'd certainly recommend this series to anyone interested in the natural world. The next programme is about the Rocky Mountains in Canada, and I hope it's as good as the first one.



ALADWAA

تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمة أسأل الأضواء،  
وسنقدم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص

تفضل بالتسجيل الآن معنا من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)



## Listening Text

**Mrs Badawy** : I'd like to introduce Amal Hassan, a successful entrepreneur who started her own business five years ago. Amal, can you tell us something about your company?

**Amal** : Sure. I run a business called Sustain Life which I started with my sister. We connect people with companies that sell sustainable products and holidays.

**Mrs Badawy** : You haven't always wanted to run your business, have you?

**Amal** : No. I worked in a supermarket when I first left school. I hadn't done very well in my exams so I took the first job I found.

**Mr Badawy** : Did you enjoy it?

**Amal** : It was boring, but I did learn a lot from it. You see I realised that if I wanted to achieve something in my life I had to make my own plans. I couldn't expect someone else to help me.

**Mrs Badawy** : So what did you do?

**Amal** : Well I knew that I enjoyed selling, so I got a job in a clothes shop. The manager, who'd worked there for years, taught me all about buying good quality clothes made without destroying the environment. It was there that I got the idea for my own business.

**Mrs Badawy** : Was it difficult to start the business?

**Amal** : No, but you need to set clear goals and be prepared to work very hard. Our company is online so we don't have to pay for a big building but we needed a brilliant website which we spent a lot of money on.

**Mrs Badawy** : Have you had any problems?

**Amal** : I think the hardest thing is to stay focused. When we started we'd had lots of ideas but realised that we couldn't do them all. It's important to make sure you can achieve each goal.

**Mrs Badawy** : Thank you, Katia. After the break, we're going to look more closely at how to write a business plan.

# Workbook Exercises (Units 10-12)

Units (10, 11 & 12)

4

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 We expected cold, wet weather in England, but it was \_\_\_\_\_ hot and sunny.  
a) quietly                      b) surprisingly                      c) powerfully                      d) easily
- 2 What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the information you used to write your essay?  
a) name                      b) source                      c) way                      d) type
- 3 My cousin is very \_\_\_\_\_. She can dance, sing and speak four languages!  
a) sustainable                      b) hostile                      c) powerful                      d) talented
- 4 Don't try to revise everything at the same time, but \_\_\_\_\_ a goal to revise one thing a day.  
a) set                      b) get                      c) take                      d) score
- 5 The teacher said that my answer to the exam question was not \_\_\_\_\_ I wrote about the wrong book!  
a) easy                      b) measurable                      c) relevant                      d) achievable
- 6 If you want to find out some information on the internet, use a good \_\_\_\_\_ engine.  
a) channel                      b) search                      c) electric                      d) machine
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ are very important to nature because they help plants to produce seeds.  
a) Honeybees                      b) Flies                      c) Honey                      d) Animals
- 8 What \_\_\_\_\_ is that TV programme on tonight?  
a) scene                      b) correspondent                      c) channel                      d) canal
- 9 The tourists were tired this morning because they \_\_\_\_\_ to the top of a high mountain yesterday afternoon.  
a) had taken                      b) took                      c) were taking                      d) had been taken
- 10 You've worked as an investigator for many years now, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) didn't you                      b) weren't you                      c) haven't you                      d) have you
- 11 Don't talk loudly because the children are \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.  
a) often                      b) still                      c) first                      d) not
- 12 The footballer, \_\_\_\_\_ face is often on TV, scored three goals today.  
a) who                      b) that                      c) whom                      d) whose
- 13 We made a cake from a recipe \_\_\_\_\_ we found online.  
a) that                      b) who                      c) what                      d) whom
- 14 The village, \_\_\_\_\_ my grandparents were born, is near the Nile.  
a) what                      b) that                      c) which                      d) where

- 1 Before Ali went to Canada in the winter, he \_\_\_\_\_ snow.
  - a) didn't see
  - b) would see
  - c) had never seen
  - d) has not seen
- 2 This action film is incredibly exciting, \_\_\_\_\_?
  - a) hasn't it
  - b) wasn't it
  - c) doesn't it
  - d) isn't it

**2 Complete the text with the words in the box.**

**Brilliant - constantly - horror - incredibly - interviewed - reviewed**

Last week, my school visited the offices of a famous online newspaper. We had spent time with the editor and two photographers before we met a famous reporter! He had 1) \_\_\_\_\_ many famous people, both in Egypt and around the world. The person I found most interesting was a journalist who reviews films for the newspaper. She had 2) \_\_\_\_\_ two of my favourite films: a science fiction film which is about a robot that goes wrong; and a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ film called Alone! which is 4) \_\_\_\_\_ scary! The journalist, who is only 25, is 5) \_\_\_\_\_ watching new films, but she says she never gets bored with her job. I think her job is totally 6) \_\_\_\_\_ and I would love to do something like that one day. That would be amazing, wouldn't it?

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

- 1 The students knew how to do the experiment because they \_\_\_\_\_ (show) by their teacher.
- 2 We couldn't see the birds, but we could hear them calling to each other \_\_\_\_\_ (loud) in the trees.
- 3 The students said that the musical was very \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy).
- 4 Those goals are not really \_\_\_\_\_ (achieve) unless you practise incredibly hard.
- 5 When we got to the shop, it \_\_\_\_\_ (already close), so we had to go home again.
- 6 The house by the sea needed decorating again, although it \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) just a year before.
- 7 I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ (lost) my keys, but I found them in my jacket pocket.
- 8 They didn't like horror film because it was too \_\_\_\_\_ (frighten).

**4 Translate the following into Arabic.**

Did you read the article about famous entrepreneurs? The journalist had interviewed a lot of people before she wrote it. It's a very powerful report, isn't it?

**5 Translate the following into English.**

تلك، واحد من أهداف في الحياة يسعى إلى تحقيقها، ولكن لا بد أن تكون هذه الأهداف ممكنة التحقيق وواقعية بقدر المستطاع  
 هي لا تصاب بالإحباط إذا لم ندرها.



We all love to hear about entrepreneurs, don't we? Especially when a talented entrepreneur invents something that can help the planet. That is what Carvey Ehren Mague did in 2020 when he invented a way to produce electricity from old fruit and vegetables.

Carvey, who works at Mapua University in the Philippines, had worked on his idea for many years before it was successful, and for a time he was not sure if it was achievable. He knew that waste from fruit and vegetables contributes to nearly 50 per cent of all the food that people waste each year. So, incredibly, he invented a new type of solar panel using material that is made from this type of waste.

Carvey realised that usual solar panels, which need constant sunlight to produce electricity, could be improved. He found that some light – called ultraviolet light – hits the ground even on cloudy days. He discovered this when he had been outside on a cloudy day. He was wearing special sunglasses that go darker when the sun comes out, but he realised that they went darker even though it was cloudy. So, he invented a material using old fruit and vegetables which could use ultraviolet light, like sunglasses. This light is then used to produce electricity. Another advantage to Carvey's invention is that his solar panels can go on the side of buildings, not only on the top of roofs or standing in fields in the countryside, which can take up a lot of space. Because his panels can go on the side of buildings, they can be used in any town or city.

Carvey's brilliant invention won an important award in 2020. Hopefully, we can see his solar panels in all our cities one day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Carvey Ehren Mague invented a .....  
a) new type of sunglasses  
b) way to remove fruit and vegetables from the ground  
c) new type of solar panel  
d) new type of electricity
2. The word contributes means .....  
a) takes away      b) helps towards      c) pays for      d) buys
3. Carvey's invention is made from .....  
a) old rubbish      b) glass  
c) old sunglasses      d) old fruit and vegetables

4. Carvey's invention is able to .....
- use ultraviolet light to produce electricity
  - produce ultraviolet light
  - turn old fruit and vegetables into electricity
  - make buildings from old fruit and vegetables

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- How did Carvey realise that ultraviolet light is always there?
- In what ways are Carvey's solar panels better than usual solar panels? Mention two things.
- Carvey spent long years in his invention. What do you think he did during all these years?
- If you were in Carvey's place, what more improvements would you make to his invention?

**7 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.**

- Salah El-din is a famous historic film.
- A fact maker is someone who checks the facts in reports before they are sent to an editor.
- My brother prefers watching science fraction films.
- Your sister hates horror films, does she?
- Kamel tried hardly to solve the problem that he faced. He always depends on himself.
- A newsreader is a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV.
- The team are playing terrible today, they're going to lose.
- The workers of the company usually get an increase in salary when they achieves high profiles.
- Alexandria is the city which I usually spend the summer holiday.
- Camels are amazing animals what can live for days without water.

**8 Write an essay of about 180 words on one of these topics:**

- A news report to your favourite news website on a topic of your choice.
- Your goals in life.

# King Lear: Acts 4-5

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
- 1 Some people put birds in ..... and keep them as pets.  
a) cages                      b) trees                      c) boxes                      d) tents
  - 2 The French soldiers ..... in England in 1066.  
a) crept up                      b) suffered                      c) arrived                      d) tempted
  - 3 He's a ..... . He never tells the truth.  
a) liar                      b) thief                      c) prisoner                      d) soldier
  - 4 He's blowing that ..... too loudly. I can't hear the other instruments.  
a) drums                      b) trumpet                      c) guitar                      d) piano
  - 5 The patients were carried to the hospital on .....  
a) tents                      b) chairs                      c) stretchers                      d) floor
  - 6 Can you ..... all the old paper and put it on the fire?  
a) put up                      b) tear up                      c) give up                      d) creep up
  - 7 If you don't have anything to eat, you'll .....  
a) sleep                      b) hungry                      c) resign                      d) starve
  - 8 He's talking a lot of ....., you should listen to him.  
a) rubbish                      b) sense                      c) things                      d) nonsense
  - 9 Do you ..... the man in the photo? I don't know who he is.  
a) tell                      b) believe                      c) recognise                      d) look
  - 10 Here everyone is ..... . Nobody is better than anyone else.  
a) same                      b) different                      c) similar                      d) equal
  - 11 All the actors are standing on the .....  
a) theatre                      b) stage                      c) cage                      d) camp
  - 12 The men listened to their ..... who gave them instructions.  
a) officers                      b) soldiers                      c) prisoners                      d) enemies

Answer the questions with the names of the characters in the box.

**Albany - Cordelia - Edgar - Edmund - Gloucester - Goneril - Oswald - Regan**

Who ...?

- 1 tries to kill Gloucester?
- 2 dies of poison?
- 3 wears the crown at the end of the play?
- 4 cannot read the letter Lear gives him?
- 5 kills herself?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- 6 admits he is wrong?
- 7 Is the King happy to be with?
- 8 decides to resign and help Lear?

**3 Answer these questions.**

- 1 Why does Lear tell Gloucester to get some glass eyes?
- 2 Where does Edgar offer to take Gloucester?
- 3 What does Cordelia ask her father when he first wakes up in the tent?
- 4 What does Lear ask Cordelia to do?
- 5 Why does Albany tell everyone they must get ready to fight?
- 6 What does Edmund tell the captain to do?
- 7 Why does Albany call Goneril 'an evil woman'?
- 8 Whose blood was on the knife? Why?
- 9 What does Kent say he is surprised about?

**4 Read the quotations and answer the questions.**

1 Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

a) Who says this?

b) What do they mean?

2 The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army have invaded. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

a) Who is Albany talking to?

b) Albany thinks they have been too cruel. Does he change the way he behaves after this?

3 Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

a) Who died smiling?

b) What does it mean to die smiling?

**5 Discuss these questions in groups.**

1 What are the main themes in King Lear?

2 Which of these themes can be found in stories and plays written today?

**6 Write a paragraph about the relevance of King Lear in today's world. Give examples of films which include some of the themes from the play.**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mohamed Salah has become one of the most famous sporting \_\_\_\_\_ across the world.

- a) directors      b) celebrities      c) producers      d) accessories

With the spread of the Coronavirus, many students depend on \_\_\_\_\_ programmes to continue their learning.

- a) quiz      b) news      c) educational      d) comic

Passengers can enjoy free \_\_\_\_\_ such as watching movies and surfing the net on modern planes.

- a) entertainment      b) enforcement      c) endorsement      d) excitement

I'm trying to break the \_\_\_\_\_ of staying up too late, but it is very hard.

- a) tradition      b) custom      c) hobby      d) habit

It is well known that \_\_\_\_\_ radiation contributes to the development of skin cancer.

- a) fine      b) light      c) ultra-violet      d) lunar

A solar \_\_\_\_\_ is a piece of equipment, often on the roof of a building, that uses light and heat energy from the sun to produce hot water and electricity

- a) reactor      b) panel      c) tank      d) heater

We weren't hungry. We \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

- a) have just had      b) had      c) 'd just had      d) were having

Amany \_\_\_\_\_ a lot before she took the test.

- a) studies      b) had studied      c) has studied      d) would study

We got into the restaurant only because we \_\_\_\_\_ our places.

- a) had reserved      b) have reserved      c) hadn't reserved      d) reserve

You aren't going to wear those funny glasses, \_\_\_\_\_ you?

- a) do      b) won't      c) are      d) aren't

She had an operation yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ she?

- a) didn't      b) doesn't      c) hasn't      d) doesn't

I think you behaved \_\_\_\_\_ when you wanted the camera for yourself.

- a) selfish      b) selfishness      c) self      d) selfishly

As he was found \_\_\_\_\_ the dead man, he was accused of killing him.

- a) nearly      b) near      c) nearby      d) nearest

- 10 My uncle Ahmed, ..... is a businessman, lives in Tanta.  
 a) who                      b) that                      c) when                      d) where
- 11 I respect most of my friends ..... I spend much time.  
 a) whom                      b) who                      c) with who                      d) with whom
- 12 Sham Elnesseim, ..... marks the beginning of spring, is a day of family gathering.  
 a) when                      b) which                      c) where                      d) that

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Throughout history there have been reliable reports on dolphins playing with people and helping them. The earliest accounts are from over 2000 years ago.

There is no doubt that many dolphins are interested in people. They often seek human companionship, enjoy playing ball games and like being petted. However, their life-saving is perhaps not due to concern for us, but is a result of the fact that they naturally support a sick brother to keep him near the surface so that he can breathe. When they help a human, perhaps they are just doing what comes naturally.

Their intelligence is difficult to determine. We qualify animals as intelligent if they can do things that we ourselves are good at. When a monkey uses a stick as a tool, we say that this shows intelligence. On the other hand, some birds fly accurately for thousands of kilometres, but we do not normally call this intelligence.

What then of dolphins? First, they navigate extremely accurately, even in dirty water, relying on sound reflection like bats. Second, they communicate – in ways we do not understand – both facts and feelings. One dolphin can pass on to another, without touching it or showing it something that it has learnt. They also know when another is sad. So evidence suggests that dolphins are both friendly and intelligent, but in order to be sure we'll just have to learn. Then we can simply ask them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 13 When were the earliest reports about dolphins made?  
 a) Over 2000 years ago.                      b) A short time ago.  
 c) 20 years ago.                      d) 1000 years ago.
- 14 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?  
 a) Dolphins                      b) People  
 c) Birds                      d) Reports

It's clear from the text that dolphins .....

a) are afraid of human beings.  
c) can't learn anything.

When do we usually call an animal "intelligent"?  
a) When it imitates us.  
c) When it saves a person.

b) often save drowning people.  
d) kill other sick dolphins.

b) when it travels long distances.  
d) when it runs fast.

**B) Answer the following questions:**

What is the best title to the passage?

What shows that dolphins are interested in people?

Why do dolphins keep a sick person near the surface?

Dolphins are friendly and intelligent. Do you agree? Why?

**Translate into English:**

- يتطلب تحقيق الأهداف في الحياة الكثير من التنظيم والصبر والمثابرة، كما تزداد صعوبة تحقيقها كلما تقدم بك العمر.

**Translate into Arabic:**

The great development in the internet made the spread of news and information faster. However, some people argue that most of online news aren't trustworthy and causes many social problems.

**Write an email of ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

Your friend Sameer has a great idea for a new project that may help the community and make him a lot of money. However, he doesn't have enough money to start it. He asks your advice about this. Your name is Hassan.



**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

**اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية**  
من خلال خاصية محاكاة الامتحان.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)



## King Lear

By: William Shakespeare



## Introduction

### (A) The Writer (William Shakespeare)

William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright **كاتب مسرحي**, and actor born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon. His birthday is most commonly celebrated on 23 April, which is also believed to be the date he died in 1616.

Shakespeare's father worked as a **glove-maker** **صانع قفازات**, but he also became an important figure in the town of Stratford. His high **position** **مكانة** meant that he was even more likely to have sent his children, including William, to the local grammar school. When he was eighteen, Shakespeare married Anne Hathaway. They had three children. Their first daughter, Susanna, was followed by twins Hamnet and Judith. Hamnet died when he was just 11 years old.

Shakespeare's career started in London. During his time in London, Shakespeare's first printed works were published. They were two long **poems** **قصيدتان**, 'Venus and Adonis' (1593) and 'The Rape of Lucrece' (1594). He also became a **founding** **مؤسس** member of The Lord Chamberlain's Men, a company **فرقة** of actors. Shakespeare was the company's regular **dramatist** **كاتب المسرحيات**, producing on average two plays a year, for almost twenty years.

He remained with the company for the rest of his career, during which time it evolved into "The King's Men" under the patronage **رعاية** of King James. During his time in the company Shakespeare wrote many of his most famous tragedies **تراجيديا**, such as *King Lear* and *Macbeth*, as well as great **romances** **قصص رومانسية**, like *The Winter's Tale* and *The Tempest*.

Although Shakespeare's professional career was spent in London, he maintained close links with his native town. His success in the London theatres made him considerably wealthy, and by 1597 he was able to buy a large house in Stratford-upon-Avon. He eventually returned to his hometown and lived there until he died.

Shakespeare's **legacy** **تراث** is as rich and **diverse** **متنوع** as his work; his plays have received countless **adaptations** **نسخ** across multiple **genres** **أنواع متعددة** and cultures. His plays have had an **enduring presence** **وجود مستمر** on stage and film. William Shakespeare continues to be one of the most important literary figures of the English language.

### (B) The Play

*King Lear* is a play written by William Shakespeare. It is a tragedy about the king of Britain, who is planning how to divide his **kingdom** **مملكة** between his three daughters. In order to decide, Lear asks his daughters to tell them how much they love him. The answer from his youngest daughter, Cordelia, makes him angry and he disowns her. His other daughters betray **يخدع** him and he eventually realises he has made a bad decision.

## (C) Characters in the Play

<b>KING LEAR</b>	: The King of Britain
<b>GONERIL</b>	: King Lear's eldest daughter
<b>REGAN</b>	: King Lear's second daughter
<b>CORDELIA</b>	: King Lear's youngest daughter
<b>KING OF FRANCE</b>	: He wants to marry Cordelia
<b>DUKE OF BURGUNDY</b>	: He also wants to marry Cordelia
<b>DUKE OF ALBANY</b>	: Goneril's husband
<b>DUKE OF CORNWALL</b>	: Regan's husband
<b>DUKE OF KENT</b>	: A good friend of King Lear
<b>DUKE OF GLOUCESTER</b>	: A good friend of King Lear
<b>EDGAR</b>	: Gloucester's eldest son
<b>EDMUND</b>	: Gloucester's youngest son
<b>FOOL</b>	: Lear's clown
<b>OSWALD</b>	: A servant
<b>OLD MAN</b>	: A man who helps Gloucester
<b>GENTLEMAN</b>	: A friend of Kent
<b>CAPTAIN</b>	: One of Edmund's soldiers
<b>DOCTOR</b>	
<b>HERALD</b>	
Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family	

**(D) Summary of the Plot****Act I**

*King Lear* begins as the Earl of Gloucester introduces his illegitimate son, Edmund, to the Earl of Kent. Lear, King of Britain, enters with his court that he is an old man, Lear has decided to divide his kingdom between his three daughters. The division will depend on the quality of each princess' declarations of love for her father before the court. Goneril, Duchess of Albany, and Regan, Duchess of Cornwall, both speak enthusiastically and earn their father's praise. But Cordelia, the youngest, says nothing because she cannot voice her deep love for Lear. Misunderstanding this daughter, Lear disowns and banishes her from the kingdom. He also banishes the Earl of Kent, who had taken Cordelia's side against the King.

This action by the king divides the kingdom, both figuratively and literally. Cordelia's suitor, the Duke of Burgundy, rejects her once she is dowerless, but the King of France values her honesty and takes her as his wife. Lear's kingdom is shared between Goneril and Regan and their suitors (the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall, respectively). Lear plans to alternate living with each of them.

**Act II**

Meanwhile, Edmund is determined to be recognised as a rightful son of Gloucester. By a trick, he persuades his father that his legitimate brother, Edgar, is plotting against Gloucester's life. Warned by Edmund that his life is in danger, Edgar flees and takes the disguise of a Bedlam beggar. Edmund becomes a courtier to Goneril. Goneril meanwhile grows increasingly exasperated by the behaviour of Lear's hundred companions who are upsetting her life at Albany's castle, and she criticises her father.

Kent has returned from exile in disguise and wins a place as a servant to Lear. Kent accompanies Lear when, in a rage against her criticisms, he curses Goneril and leaves. Lear goes, unannounced, to live with Regan and Cornwall who, it turns out, have gone out to visit Gloucester. When Lear arrives at Gloucester's house to find Regan, she spurns him and his followers, namely his devoted companion, the Fool.

Despairing **يائس** for his daughters, and deeply regretting rejecting Cordelia, Lear goes mad at the height of a great storm. He and the Fool **run wild** **يهيم بلا هدف** on the heath **في بور** until Gloucester takes them into a **hut** **كوخ** for shelter **ملجأ**. He then seeks the aid of Kent to get them away to the **coast** **ساحل**, where Cordelia has landed with a French army to fight for her father against her sisters and their husbands. Gloucester then leaves and returns home.

Meanwhile, Edmund is employed as a **messenger** **مبعوث/رسول** between the sisters and is courted by each in turn. He persuades Cornwall that Gloucester (his father) is an **enemy** **عدو** because he has been in touch with France and helped Lear and when they are turned away by Regan. As **punishment** **عقاب** for Gloucester's seeming **betrayal** **خيانة**, Cornwall and Regan **pluck out** **يقتلع** his eyes and **abandon** **يهدر** him. During the act of blinding Gloucester, a servant **stabs** **يطعن** Cornwall, who dies. But Regan continues to rule with Edmund's help.

### Act IV

Out in the storm, Lear finds shelter where Edgar has also taken **refuge** **رلجأ**, still disguised as the beggar. The Fool, the mad king, and the disguised "insane" **بeggar** **غير عاقل** become unlikely **companions** **رفاق** before they are separated. Edgar finds Gloucester **wandering** **يهيم** the heath alone and in **agony** **عذاب/كرب**. Since his father is blind, Edgar leads the despairing man to the coast and helps him along the journey to come to an **acceptance** **قبول** of his life. Gloucester later meets the mad Lear on Dover beach, near Cordelia's camp. With Kent's aid, Lear is rescued and **re-united** **يلم شمل** with Cordelia. Gloucester, now reunited with Edgar, dies quietly alone.

### Act V

The French **forces** **قوات** are overcome by Albany's army led by Edmund, and Lear and Cordelia **are captured** **يتم القبض عليهم**. Goneril has already poisoned Regan in their **jealous** **مغامر** rivalry **مناظرة** over Edmund's attention. Edgar, disguised now as a loyal **knight** **فارس**, challenges Edmund to a **duel** **مبارزة بالسيف** and wounds him mortally. Seeing no way out, Goneril kills herself, and the dying Edmund **confesses** **يعترف** his misdeeds and releases Cordelia. However, it is too late to save Cordelia from the **hangman** **الجلاد**. Lear's heart breaks as he carries the body of his beloved youngest daughter in his arms, and he dies. Albany and Edgar are left to **re-organise** **يعيد تنظيم** the kingdom and resolve the civil wars.

# Act III, Scenes v-vii

## Key Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على	prove	يثبت
authority	تفويض/سلطة/نفوذ	punish	يعاقب
betray	يخون/يفضح/يفشي سرًا	rest	استراحة/راحة
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول	revenge	انتقام/ثأر/يثأر/ينتقم
cruel	قاسي القلب	spy	جاسوس
cure	يعالج/يشفي/يدأوى	stand for	يسمح بـ/يدافع عن
deceive	يخدع/يضل	stupid	أحمق/غبى
enemy	عدو	take revenge for	ينتقم لـ
get rid of	يتخلص من	thief	لص
guilty	مُذنب	traitor	خائن
interrupt	يقاطع	trust	ثقة/يثق
kneel	يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه	truth	حقيقة
loyalty	إخلاص/وفاء	wound	جرح/يجرح
madness	جنون/حماقة		



*[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]*

**CORNWALL:** Listen, Edmund. I'll have my revenge before I leave Gloucester's house.

**EDMUND:** I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It proves that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

**CORNWALL:** We'll go and see Regan.

**EDMUND:** If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

**CORNWALL:** If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

**EDMUND:** *[To himself.]* If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

*[To Cornwall.]* I'll continue to show you my loyalty, although it hurts me to do this to my father.

**CORNWALL:** I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

*[They exit.]*

## Act III, Scene vi

[Gloucester enters.]

**GLOUCESTER:** My friend, where's the King?

**KENT:** He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

**GLOUCESTER:** Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of him. There's a carriage waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

**KENT:** [To Lear.] You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure your madness.

[To the Fool.] Come, help me to carry the King.

**GLOUCESTER:** Hurry up! We must leave now.

[They all exit except for Edgar.]

**EDGAR:** The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!

[He exits.]

## Act III, Scene vii

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]

**CORNWALL:** Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.

[To the Servants.] Find the traitor, Gloucester.

**REGAN:** Arrest him now!

[Some of the Servants exit.]

**CORNWALL:** Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

[Oswald enters.] Where's the King?

**OSWALD:** The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

**CORNWALL:** Get horses for Regan. Goodbye Edmund.

[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to bus like a thief.

*[The other Servants exit.]*

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority, but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

*[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]*

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

**REGAN:** It's him.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel in front of me.

**GLOUCESTER:** What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

**CORNWALL:** Make him kneel, I said!

*[The Servants make him kneel.]*

**REGAN:** You cruel man. You've deceived your son Edmund.

**GLOUCESTER:** You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

**REGAN:** You are a traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** Cruel lady, what are you saying?

**CORNWALL:** What letters have you recently received from France?

**REGAN:** Give us your answer. We know the truth.

**CORNWALL:** And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

**REGAN:** Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

**GLOUCESTER:** Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening. It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an enemy.

**CORNWALL:** That's clever.

**REGAN:** And untrue.

**CORNWALL:** Where have you sent the King?

**GLOUCESTER:** To Dover.

**REGAN:** Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him ...

**CORNWALL:** *[He interrupts Regan.]* Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

**GLOUCESTER:** Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

**CORNWALL:** You will never see that! *[Picks up a sword.]* Come! Fight me!



*[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, help me! My eyes!

**SERVANT 1:** Stop, my lord! Stop now.

**CORNWALL:** Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

**SERVANT 1:** Very well, come on.

*[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]*

**REGAN:** *[To a soldier.]* Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it!

*[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]*

**SERVANT 1:** Oh, I'm going to die! *[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must take revenge for this terrible thing.

**REGAN:** Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmund!

**REGAN:** Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

*[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]*

*[To Cornwall.]* What's the matter, my lord?

**CORNWALL:** I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

*[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]*

## Act III Scenes V-VII Exercises (SB)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 If one of your friends helps your enemies, you can call this person \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cruel                      b) a servant                      c) mad                      d) a traitor
- 2 One of my friends was very ill, but this medicine helped to \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
a) get rid of                      b) rest                      c) cure                      d) heal
- 3 If you \_\_\_\_\_ rid of someone, you kill this person.  
a) get                      b) make                      c) take                      d) give
- 4 When the police found the stolen phone at the man's home, it \_\_\_\_\_ that he was the thief.  
a) discovered                      b) arrested                      c) deceived                      d) proved
- 5 The head of the police asked the government for the \_\_\_\_\_ to change the law.  
a) authority                      b) punishment  
c) powerful                      d) revenge
- 6 If someone doesn't like you and wants to hurt you, this person is your \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) spy                      b) duke                      c) enemy                      d) relative
- 7 Instead of \_\_\_\_\_ someone while they're talking, you should stay quiet.  
a) kneeling                      b) interrupting  
c) punishing                      d) deceiving
- 8 Your behaviour is totally unacceptable and I won't \_\_\_\_\_ for it!  
a) stand                      b) do                      c) kneel                      d) wait
- 9 They tried to \_\_\_\_\_ us by saying they had lots of money when they didn't.  
a) spy on                      b) deceive  
c) punish                      d) take revenge for
- 10 An old-fashioned vehicle which is usually pulled by horses is called a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) carriage                      b) boat                      c) train                      d) lorry
- 11 He is disloyal. He \_\_\_\_\_ us.  
a) obeyed                      b) betrayed                      c) helped                      d) denial
- 12 The Egyptian tennis champion Mayar Sherif showed \_\_\_\_\_ to the Egyptian flag.  
a) necessity                      b) dishonesty  
c) loyalty                      d) certainty

## Match the characters with the events.

Act III, Scenes v-vii

1. Edmund
2. Gloucester
3. Cornwall
4. The King
5. Regan

- a) This character is injured after attacking someone.
- b) This character's new title is used for the first time.
- c) This character is travelling towards Dover in a carriage.
- d) This character has killed a servant to protect someone.
- e) This character is injured and can't see anything.

## Are the sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Edmund decides to help Cornwall find the King so that Cornwall will think his father is even more guilty.
- 2 Gloucester tells Kent to drive the King to Gloucester's castle because the King's life is in danger.
- 3 Cornwall and Edmund try to find and punish Gloucester for being a traitor.
- 4 Gloucester tells Cornwall that he arranged for the King to be taken somewhere.
- 5 The servant tries to stop Cornwall attacking Gloucester, but Regan kills the servant.
- 6 Gloucester feels stupid and says he should have trusted Cornwall instead of Edmund.
- 7 Cornwall orders Gloucester to be thrown out of the palace.

## Write sentences for each character to explain how they're feeling at the end of this part of the play and why.

- a) Gloucester
- c) Cornwall

b) Edmund

**Gloucester:** I am feeling happy that I punished a traitor because ...



**تطبيق الأضواء**  
ALADWAA

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟  
الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك من خلال خدمه اسأل الأضواء  
وسيتهم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص.  
حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

## Act III Scenes V-VII Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

authority  
kneel

carriage  
madness

cure [v]  
prove

deceive  
traitor

enemy

- 1 The police have the ..... to stop drivers in the street.
- 2 The parents were ..... on the floor so they could play with the baby.
- 3 In the past, people did not understand that ..... is an illness.
- 4 In the story, the king's best friend was really a ..... who wanted to kill him.
- 5 Scientists have the information to ..... that global warming is a problem.
- 6 Doctors hope that they will ..... many more illnesses in the future.
- 7 In the past, horses pulled a ..... where people could sit.
- 8 The opposite of a good friend is a/an .....
- 9 I thought he was telling me the truth, but he ..... me.

2 Match the words and expressions with a similar meaning.

1. get rid of

2. not stand for it

3. loyalty

4. take revenge for

a) remain faithful to your friends, country, etc.

b) do something bad because someone has done something bad to you

c) kill

d) not allow

3 Put the events from Chapter 1 in the correct order.

- a)  Gloucester tells Kent to take King Lear to Dover.
- b)  Gloucester loses his eyes in a fight.
- c)  Regan sees that Cornwall is injured.
- d)  Gloucester admits to Cornwall that he sent the King to Dover.
- e)  Cornwall says he can't kill Gloucester but he can punish him.
- f)  Edmund shows Cornwall a letter from his father.
- g)  Gloucester realises that he should trust Edgar, not Edmund.

Match the items in column A with those in column B.

- 1) The letter from Gloucester
- 2) If Kent and Lear wait an hour,
- 3) Cornwall does not have the authority
- 4) Cornwall makes Gloucester
- 5) Regan wants Gloucester
- 6) Cornwall fights a servant

- a) to find his way to Dover.
- b) and is hurt.
- c) they may both be killed.
- d) kneel in front of him.
- e) proves that he is a spy.
- f) to kill Gloucester.

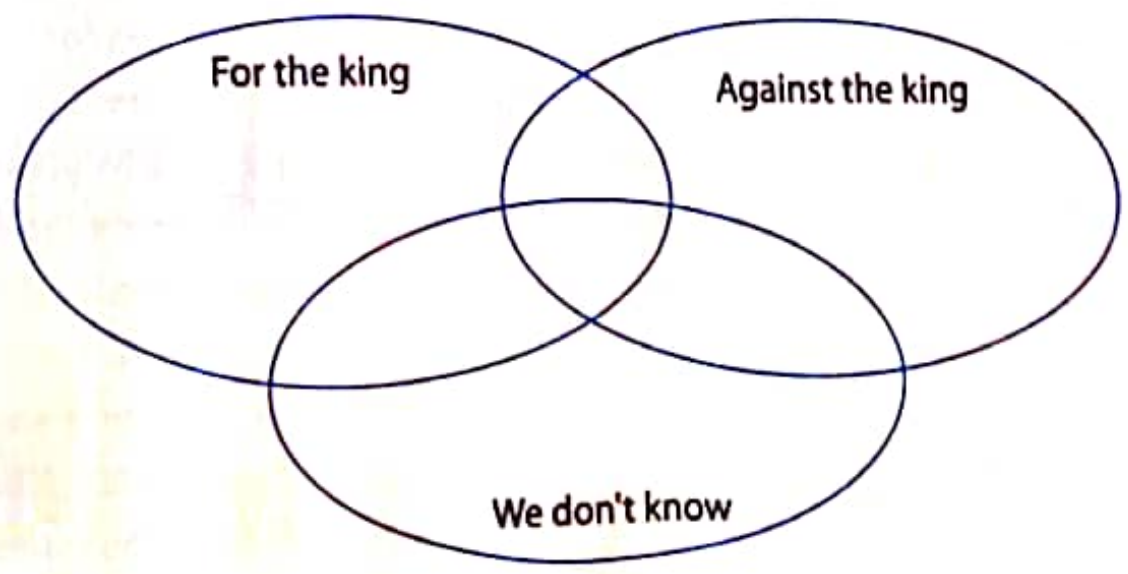
Read these quotations. Who is the speaker of each sentence? Why do they say this?

Cornwall                      Edgar                      Edmund                      Regan

- 1 'I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is'
- 2 'The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!'
- 3 'I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad.'
- 4 'Edmund told us that you betrayed us. He will not help you.'

Complete the diagram.

Albany Cornwall Edgar Edmund Fool Gloucester Goneril Kent Regan

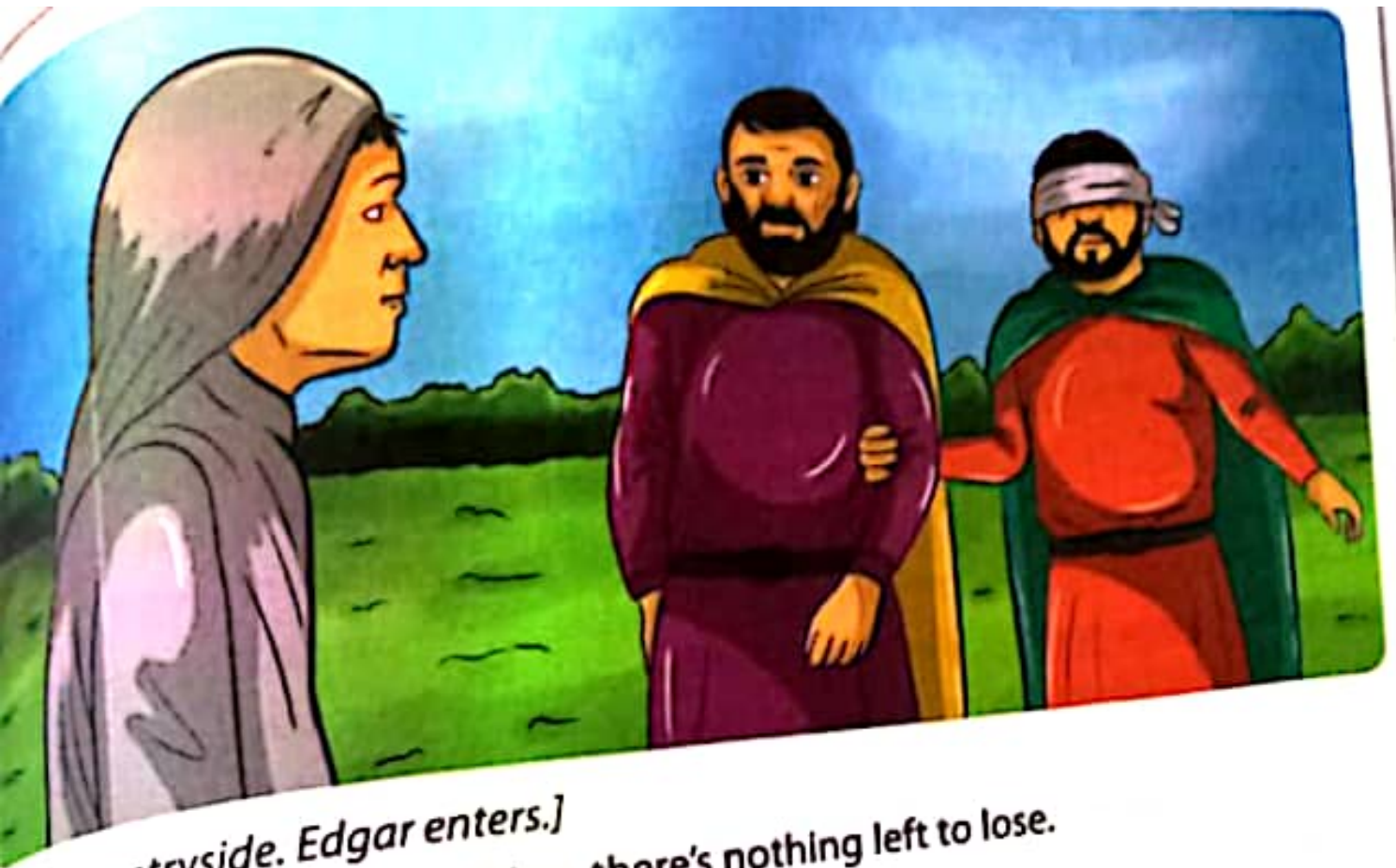


Write 180 words explaining why you think these people like or dislike the King

# Act IV, Scenes i-iii

## Key Vocabulary

beggar	متسول / اشحاذ	lead	يقود
bleed	ينزف	lose	يفقد
bring	يحضر	nearby	قريب
camp	معسكر / مخيم / يخيم	pretend	يتظاهر
cliff	منحدر صخري	remind	يذكر
evil	شر / شرير	rule	يحكم
fall apart	يتداعى / يصبح مهترئاً	storm	عاصفة
hide	يخفي / يختبئ	sword	سيف
hold	يعسك / يثبت	thoughts	أفكار
hungry for power	راغب في السلطة	tiger	حيوان النمر
kingdom	مملكة		



in the countryside. Edgar enters.]

**EDGAR:** When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

**GLoucester enters led by an Old Man.]**

**GLoucester:** Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

**OLD MAN:** But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

**GLoucester:** I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see. Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that

I needed eyes again!

**OLD MAN:** Who's there?

**EDGAR:** [To himself.] Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

**GLoucester:** Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

**OLD MAN:** Is it a beggar in front of us?

**GLoucester:** Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

**GLoucester:** I saw a beggar in last night's storm. He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, truth.

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has fallen apart. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar.

*[To Gloucester, his father.]* Hello, sir!

**GLOUCESTER:** Is that the mad beggar?

**OLD MAN:** Yes, it is, my lord.

**GLOUCESTER:** If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

**OLD MAN:** He can't help you, sir. He's mad!

**GLOUCESTER:** Please help him.

**OLD MAN:** OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

*[He exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Come here, my friend.

**EDGAR:** Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you know the way to Dover?

**EDGAR:** Yes, sir.

**GLOUCESTER:** Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

**EDGAR:** Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

*[They exit.]*

### Act IV, Scene ii

*[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]*

**GONERIL:** Welcome, Edmund.

*[Oswald enters.]*

Where's my husband, Oswald? I haven't seen him.

**OSWALD:** Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."

**GONERIL:** I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.



[To Edmund.] You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

[Edmund exits.]

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

**OSWALD:** Madam, here comes your husband.

[The Duke of Albany enters.]

**ALBANY:** Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!

**GONERIL:** Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

**ALBANY:** What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this? He has had so much from your father!

**GONERIL:** Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?

**ALBANY:** Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

[A messenger enters.]

**ALBANY:** What is the news?

**MESSENGER:** Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

**ALBANY:** Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

**MESSENGER:** Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can rule over all the kingdom. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's. I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

[Goneril exits.]

**ALBANY:** Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

**MESSENGER:** He was travelling here with my lady.

**ALBANY:** But he's not here.

**MESSENGER:** No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

**ALBANY:** Does he know what has happened?

**MESSENGER:** Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish Gloucester.

**ALBANY:** *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.

*[To the Messenger.]* Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.  
*[They exit together.]*

Act IV, Scene III

*[The French camp near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]*

**KENT:** Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

**GENTLEMAN:** He had something important to do there.

**KENT:** Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.

**KENT:** Did she say anything?

**GENTLEMAN:** Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm! In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

**KENT:** Have you spoken to her since then?

**GENTLEMAN:** No.

**KENT:** Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

**GENTLEMAN:** Why, sir?

**KENT:** Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

**GENTLEMAN:** The poor man!

**KENT:** Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies?

**GENTLEMAN:** They are nearby.

**KENT:** Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

*[They exit.]*

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. If someone is cruel to you, you might want to take \_\_\_\_\_ on him or her.
  - a) revenge
  - b) rule
  - c) a look
  - d) over
- 2. A king or queen has the power to \_\_\_\_\_ over a country.
  - a) pretend
  - b) rule
  - c) deceive
  - d) hold
- 3. Someone who really wants to lead a country is \_\_\_\_\_ for power.
  - a) hungry
  - b) thirsty
  - c) angry
  - d) pleased
- 4. If someone is finding life very difficult because something bad has happened, you might say that he/she has \_\_\_\_\_ apart.
  - a) spoken
  - b) broken
  - c) fallen
  - d) taken

Complete the summaries of each scene with the words in the box.

**bleeding - camp - cliff - fallen - apart - revenge - tigers**

**Act 4, Scene i**

Gloucester is 1 \_\_\_\_\_ when he meets his son, who is pretending to be a mad beggar. Gloucester asks the beggar to take him to the top of a high 2 \_\_\_\_\_.

**Act 4, Scene ii**

Albany says that Goneril and her sister are like 3 \_\_\_\_\_. He finds out that Gloucester was attacked and Albany promises to take 4 \_\_\_\_\_ because Gloucester was hurt.

**Act 4, Scene iii**

There is a conversation between Kent and a gentleman at the French 5 \_\_\_\_\_ near Dover. They talk about how the King has 6 \_\_\_\_\_.

Answer the questions about what happens in this part of the play.

1. Why does Albany feel frightened of Goneril?
2. What name does Edgar call himself while he's pretending to be a beggar?
3. What does Goneril tell Edmund to do? What does she plan to do?

## King Lear

- 1. Why does Goneril think it will be easier for her to rule over the whole kingdom now?
- 2. Why has the King of France returned to his country?
- 3. Where are Cornwall and Albany's armies?

### 4. What do we learn about the characters in this part of the play?

1. Gloucester
2. Edgar
3. Goneril
4. Albany
5. The Gentleman

- a) pretended to be someone else but hated it.
- b) is angry because someone isn't doing something.
- c) misses his son.
- d) thinks that King Lear is a poor man.
- e) feels that another character is evil.

### 5. Write six more lines for one of the following conversations:

1. The start of the conversation between Edgar and Gloucester as they start their journey to a very high cliff in Dover at the end of Act 4, Scene i.
2. The next part of the conversation between Albany and the messenger at the end of Act 4, Scene ii.
3. The conversation between Kent and the Gentleman as Kent takes the Gentleman to King Lear at the end of Act 4, Scene iii.



تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

جمع نقاطك  
و استبدالها الآن بمجموعة من الهدايا  
الرائعة على متجر الأضواء.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال  
www.aladwaa.com

# Act IV Scenes I-III Exercises (WB)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words or phrases.

bleed (v)

camp

cliff

hungry for power

rule (v)

fall apart

- 1 Ahmed's grandfather was very sad when his wife died. We hope he doesn't .....
- 2 In many books, there is a bad person who is ....., and wants to control others.
- 3 There is an army ..... outside my town, near the mountains.
- 4 I cut my finger this morning, but luckily, it did not ..... very much.
- 5 How long has Queen Elizabeth ..... the UK?
- 6 Be careful when you walk near the ....., it is very high.

Complete the time line with these events from the story.

- a)  Albany wants revenge for what has happened to Gloucester.
- b)  Gloucester asks Poor Tom to take him to a cliff in Dover.
- c)  The French army arrives.
- d)  Goneril is angry with Albany and asks why he is not going to fight.
- e)  Goneril sends Edmund to get Cornwall's army together.
- f)  Albany says that his wife Goneril is evil.

Match the people with these descriptions.

Albany

Cornwall

Gloucester

Goneril

Old Man

Poor Tom/Edgar

- 1 His eyes are bleeding. ....
- 2 He looks like a mad man and a beggar. ....
- 3 She wants to use Edmund to get more power. ....
- 4 He was killed by his servant. ....
- 5 He wants revenge for what has happened to Gloucester. ....
- 6 He wants to help Gloucester. ....

**4 Read the quotations and answer the questions.**

- 1 "I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see."  
Why does Gloucester say this?
- 2 "My father is so sad, he has fallen apart. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar."  
Who says this? Why was he sorry for pretending to be a beggar? What does it tell you about him?
- 3 "There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else."  
Why does Gloucester say this to Edgar and what is he planning to do?
- 4 "You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him."  
Who says this and why?
- 5 "You and Regan are tigers, not daughters."  
Who says this and why?
- 6 "He does not want to see his daughter ... because he was so unkind to her before."  
Who is Kent talking about?
- 7 Do you think he regrets the decisions he made against his daughter? Why?

**5 Complete the sentences with these verbs.**

**bring - hides - lose - pretend - rule**

- 1 When you have nothing, there's nothing left to .....
  - 2 My father's so sad. I wish I didn't have to ..... to be a beggar.
  - 3 If you really want to help me, ..... some clothes for this poor beggar.
  - 4 Evil ..... inside that criminal.
  - 5 Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can ..... the whole kingdom.
- 6 After reading one of the letters from Kent, Cordelia says, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm! In the night! What have you done!" Write the letter Cordelia received from Kent, explaining what happened to Lear before and during the storm.**

# Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

## Key Vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة	look down	ينظر إلى أسفل
climb	يتسلق	look for	يبحث عن
the countryside	الريف	look up	ينظر لأعلى
cure	علاج/يعالج	mice	فئران
dead	ميت	blood runs cold	يخاف
dress	يلبس	purse	حافظة نقود
duty	واجب	reward	مكافأة
edge	حافة	scared	خائف
fall	يسقط	steep	شديد الانحدار
field	حقل	strange	غريب
fight for	يحارب من أجل	take power	يستولي على السلطة
flat	مسطح/منبسط	valuable jewel	جوهرة ثمينة
foolish	أحمق	wake up	يستيقظ
get to	يصل إلى		



*[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]*

**CORDELIA:** I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

*[An Officer exits.]*

Can anyone cure him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

**DOCTOR:** There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

**CORDELIA:** Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

*[A Messenger enters.]*

**MESSENGER:** I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

**CORDELIA:** Our French army is ready for war. Oh dear father, I haven't returned England to take power for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father.

*[They exit.]*

### Act IV, Scene v

*[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]*

**REGAN:** Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

**OSWALD:** I don't know, madam.



... foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

**OSWALD:** I must give this letter to Edmund.

**REGAN:** Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

**OSWALD:** I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

**REGAN:** Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

**OSWALD:** Madam, you can't ...

**REGAN:** Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund.

When you see him, give him this.

*[She gives him a letter.]*

If you see the blind traitor, remember this: There will be a reward for the man who kills him.

**OSWALD:** If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow.

*[They exit.]*

**Act IV, Scene vi**

*[In the countryside near Dover. Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** When will I get to the top of this hill?

**EDGAR:** You're climbing up the hill now.

**GLOUCESTER:** But I'm sure the ground is flat here.

**EDGAR:** No, it's very steep. Listen, can you hear the sea?

**GLOUCESTER:** No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

**EDGAR:** You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

**GLOUCESTER:** I think that you speak like an important person.

**EDGAR:** Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice from up here; I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold, I'm scared that I might fall.

**GLOUCESTER:** Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

**EDGAR:** Give me your hand. You are now very close to the edge of the cliff.

*[They are on flat ground.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Let go of my hand. Here's a purse for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

**EDGAR:** Goodbye, sir. *[To himself.]* I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.

**GLOUCESTER:** I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive. So, goodbye, my friend.

*[He falls forward onto the ground.]*

**EDGAR:** Goodbye, sir.

*[To himself.]* If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.

*[To Gloucester in a different voice.]* Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

*[To himself.]* He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

**GLOUCESTER:** Go away and let me die.

**EDGAR:** You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

**GLOUCESTER:** But have I fallen or not?

**EDGAR:** Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

**GLOUCESTER:** Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

**EDGAR:** Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

**GLOUCESTER:** I can.

**EDGAR:** This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

**GLOUCESTER:** He was a poor beggar.

# Exercises (SB)

a, b, c, or d:

- 1. When his mother died the prince was very sad but had to ..... power and run the country.
  - a) make
  - b) take
  - c) have
  - d) do
- 2. If you are at the furthest point of something, you are on the .....
  - a) left
  - b) right
  - c) sand
  - d) edge
- 3. Areas that don't have any hills are .....
  - a) flat
  - b) steep
  - c) high
  - d) cliffs
- 4. When a sight or sound frightens you, your blood runs .....
  - a) high
  - b) up
  - c) away
  - d) cold
- 5. A ..... is a shiny stone that is often used in necklaces or bracelets.
  - a) cure
  - b) cliff
  - c) jewel
  - d) rule
- 6. When you are trying to make someone well again when they have an illness, you are trying to find .....
  - a) a purse
  - b) a cure
  - c) a sound
  - d) a voice
- 7. When a hill is rising or falling at a sharp angle, it's .....
  - a) strange
  - b) edge
  - c) flat
  - d) steep

Read this part of the play again. Answer the questions with the name of the correct character.

## Cordelia - Edgar - Gloucester - King Lear - Oswald - Regan

- 1. Who wants to find someone because they're worried that he's gone mad?
- 2. Who says that it was a mistake to hurt someone?
- 3. Who stops someone from opening a letter which is for someone else?
- 4. Who stops pretending to be someone else by using his own voice?
- 5. Who thinks that he has fallen over the edge of the cliff when he hasn't?
- 6. Who is wearing wild flowers in his hair?

## King Lear

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false sentences.

- 1  Cordelia finds her father in a field.
- 2  Oswald now knows that he will be rewarded for killing Gloucester.
- 3  Gloucester is cured of his madness and can now see again.
- 4  Edgar tries to make Gloucester believe that someone tried to kill him.
- 5  Gloucester is able to recognise King Lear's voice.

4 What do you think will happen in the rest of the play? Make predictions about each of the following characters:

- Cordella
- Gloucester
- King Lear



تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

اجتبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية

من خلال خاصية محاكاة الامتحان.

حمل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

cure

purse

edge

steep

flat

valuable

jewel

war

We should walk around the ..... of the field so we do not damage the crops.

This part of the country is very ..... There are no hills or mountains.

When my sister married, our grandmother gave her a beautiful ..... She says it is very .....

It will be difficult to climb that mountain because it is very .....

There is a new medicine which will ..... many diseases in children.

Long time ago, there were many ..... between France and England, but the countries are good neighbours now.

Edgar's mother always keeps her money in a red leather .....

Match the people with the descriptions.

**Edgar - Gloucester - Goneril and Regan - King Lear**

Edgar is now mad and needs a lot of rest. ....

Goneril calls him a blind traitor. ....

Edgar does not speak like a poor beggar now. ....

Edgar pretended to be kind to Lear. ....

Match the items in column A with those in column B.

Edmund hears that her father  
Edmund wants to fight for  
Wherever Gloucester goes,  
Without a husband, Regan needs  
Edgar pretends to take his father  
Gloucester knows

- a) to the top of a cliff.
- b) people feel sorry for him.
- c) love and as a duty to her father.
- d) the voice of the King.
- e) is now mad.
- f) a clever man like Edmund to help her.

4 Read these quotations. Who is the speaker of each sentence? Why do they say this?

- 1 "I wish I could make him feel better again." \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 "I haven't returned to England to take power for myself." \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 "I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold, I'm scared that I might fall." \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 "There will be a reward for the man who kills him." \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 "But who is this man? Only a mad person would dress like that." \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Complete the sentences from the story with these words.

cure - edge - jewel - reward - voice - cliff

- 1 The doctor says there is a \_\_\_\_\_ for King Lear.
- 2 Regan will give a \_\_\_\_\_ for the person who kills Gloucester.
- 3 Edgar takes Gloucester to the top of a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Gloucester thinks he is at the \_\_\_\_\_ of a cliff.
- 5 Gloucester gives Eduard a valuable \_\_\_\_\_ to thank him.
- 6 Gloucester hears the \_\_\_\_\_ of the King.

6 Read the quotations and answer the questions.

- 1 Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.
  - a) Who is Regan talking about?
  - b) Why do people feel sorry for him?
  - c) Why are people angry with her?
- 2 They pretended to be kind to me and told me how wise I was. But when the rain and wind came and the lightning wouldn't stop, I learnt the truth.
  - a) What does Lear mean by 'rain and wind'?
  - b) What truth is Lear talking about?
  - c) Do you think he is right? Why?

7 Write a letter from Cordelia to her father, King Lear. Explain why you have returned to England and what you hope will happen. Write 180 words.

# Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

## Key Vocabulary

battle	معركة
believe	يعتقد/ يؤمن
creep	يزحف/ يتسلل
crime	جريمة
rum	طبل
el one's way	يتحسس طريقه
dge	قلض
go of	يفلت
jesty	فخامة
sense	كلام فارغ/ هراء
ent	صبور/ مريض

pocket	جيب
prisoner	سجين
prize	جائزة
riches	مال/ ثروة
right	سوى/ على
sense	كلام عاقل
stage	خشبة المسرح
take out	يسحب/ يخرج
(be) tempted to	يتم إغواؤه
theatre	مسرح



*[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]*

**KING LEAR:** Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But look at you, what have you done?

**GLOUCESTER:** Your majesty, let me kiss your hand!

**KING LEAR:** I must clean it first.

**GLOUCESTER:** Do you not know me, sir?

**KING LEAR:** I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

**GLOUCESTER:** But I can't see it.

**EDGAR:** *[To himself.]* If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

**KING LEAR:** Read it!

**GLOUCESTER:** But look at my eyes!

**KING LEAR:** Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But you understand how things work in this world.

**GLOUCESTER:** I feel my way.

**KING LEAR:** But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge will punish a poor man's crime before a rich man's crime.

**GLOUCESTER:** Yes, sir.



**KING LEAR:** Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

**EDGAR:** The King is talking both sense and nonsense!  
*Gloucester cries.*

**KING LEAR:** Wait. I know you: your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, what a sad day this is!

**KING LEAR:** *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a stage in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!

*[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]*

**GENTLEMAN:** Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

*[To King Lear.]*  
Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

**KING LEAR:** What? Am I a prisoner now? Be good to me and I'll reward you. But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

**GENTLEMAN:** You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

**KING LEAR:** I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

*[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Oh, someone kill me before I am tempted to kill myself!

**EDGAR:** Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

**GLOUCESTER:** Thank you.  
*[Oswald enters.]*

**OSWALD:** Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!  
*[He takes out his sword.]* Get ready to die, you old traitor!

**GLOUCESTER:** I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.  
*[Edgar stands between them.]*

**OSWALD:** Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

**EDGAR:** I will not let go.

**OSWALD:** Let go of this man or you'll die too!

**EDGAR:** Don't come near the old man.

**OSWALD:** Then take out your sword!

*[They fight. Oswald falls.]*

**OSWALD:** Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!  
*[He dies.]*

**GLOUCESTER:** Is he dead?

**EDGAR:** Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest. Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

*[He finds a letter and reads it.]*

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle. If you help me, I will give you more power and riches.

Yours

Goneril!

That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's lucky that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

*[The sound of a drum.]*

**EDGAR:** *[To Gloucester, his father.]* Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

*[They exit together.]*

### Act IV, Scene vii

*[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]*

**CORDELIA:** Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

**KENT:** I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

**CORDELIA:** I understand, my lord. *[To the Doctor.]* How's the King?

**DOCTOR:** Madam, he's still sleeping.

**CORDELIA:** My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

**DOCTOR:** If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

**CORDELIA:** You know what's best for him.

*[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]*

**DOCTOR:** Please, play some music.

**CORDELIA:** Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

**KENT:** Kind and dear princess!

**CORDELIA:** How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.

*[To the Doctor.]* He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you recognise me?

Act IV, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

# Act IV Scenes vi & Scenes vii Exercises (SB)

Match the words and phrases to their definitions.

- 1. sense
- 2. battle
- 3. stage
- 4. drum
- 5. creep up on

- a) a musical instrument you play by hitting it
- b) an area where actors perform
- c) something that people can understand
- d) come close to someone, secretly
- e) a fight between two armies

Complete the sentences using the words and phrases in the box.

**Judge - nonsense - prisoner - recognise - take out - tempted**

- 1 The ..... escaped from the police station and disappeared!
- 2 Please ..... your books and read page 10.
- 3 I can't understand this story. It's .....
- 4 He was ..... to eat the last piece of cake, but he didn't.
- 5 The ..... decided to send the criminals to prison for their crime.
- 6 I hadn't seen her for years and so I didn't ..... her.

Who is the speaker of each quotation? Who are they speaking to and why do they say it?

**Cordelia - Doctor - Edgar - Gloucester - King Lear - Oswald**

- 1 "I must clean it first."
- 2 "Oh, what a sad day this is!"
- 3 "Why are you helping a traitor?"
- 4 "I'll take you to a friend's house."
- 5 "He's slept for a long time."
- 6 "You know what's best for him."

Answer these questions.

- 1 What does King Lear want Gloucester to read for him?
- 2 Why does King Lear want a doctor?
- 3 Who is Oswald carrying letters for?
- 4 Who are the letters from?
- 5 What does Cordelia ask Kent to do?

Discuss these questions in pairs.

- 1 Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'?
- 2 How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this?

## Act IV Scenes vi &amp; Scenes vii Exercises (WB)

1 Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.

- 1 Soha's mum asked her to take out/take up the rubbish.
- 2 I'm innocent and don't deserve to be punished for/by something I didn't do!
- 3 Hany tried to creep on/creep up and take the last cake without his sister hearing him.
- 4 A plane on the moon? That's no sense/nonsense! It's not possible.
- 5 That recipe looks delicious! I am tempt/tempted to make it.
- 6 I don't understand this text message. It makes no sense/nonsense.
- 7 I haven't seen my cousin since 2012. I don't think I will creep up/recognise her.
- 8 The actor stood on a stage/drum so that everyone could see him.

2 Read the story and decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false sentences.

- 1  King Lear recognises Gloucester immediately.
- 2  Edgar thinks that the King is mad and is telling the truth at the same time.
- 3  King Lear uses a rock to pretend to be on a stage.
- 4  The King is taken prisoner by the Gentlemen.
- 5  Oswald tries to kill Gloucester to become rich.
- 6  Edgar is killed by Oswald.
- 7  Edgar discovers the plan to kill Goneril's husband.
- 8  Cordelia understands why her sisters treated the King badly.

3 Put the pictures in the correct order in which they happened in the story. Then write a short summary about what is happening in each picture.

1 2 3 

In this scene King Lear meets Gloucester and Edgar. Gloucester knows that it is King Lear, even though he cannot see. King Lear does not recognise Gloucester.



.....



.....

.....

5 In Act IV, scene vi, King Lear says 'This rock is like a stage in a theatre.' What do you think he means when he says this? Do you agree?

# Act V, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

## Key Vocabulary

part	بعيداً	honestly	
birth	ميلاد	Invade	بشرفاً / بالمانعة
bitter pill to swallow	حقيقة صامدة	Join	يفزو
ow	ينفخ	officers	يتحدوا / يضم
ave	شجاع	poison	ضابط
ge	قفص	ruler	سم
or night	نهاراً أو ليلاً	starve	حاكم
th	موت	suffer	يتضوروا / يموت جوعاً
uise	يتخفى	support	يعانى
	يجفف	take control	يدعم
il	مثيل / اند	trumpet	يستولى على السلطة
et	ينسى	trust	بوق
ve	يسامح / يغفر	wheel	ثقة / يثق
	يحرس		عجلة



[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

**KING LEAR:** What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire.

**CORDELIA:** Sir, do you know who I am?

**KING LEAR:** Where am I? Is it day or night?

**CORDELIA:** Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

**KING LEAR:** Lady. I'm a very foolish old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ... [He points to Kent.] ... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

**CORDELIA:** It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

**KING LEAR:** Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please don't cry. If you have some poison for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

**CORDELIA:** I'll never be cruel to you, father.

**KING LEAR:** Am I in France?

**KENT:** No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

**KING LEAR:** This can't be true.

**DOCTOR:** I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

**KING LEAR:** *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you forgive me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.

## Act V, Scene I

*[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]*

**REGAN:** Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

**EDMUND:** I am not, madam.

**REGAN:** So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

**EDMUND:** No, you mustn't think these things.

**REGAN:** I don't trust my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

**EDMUND:** Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany ...

*[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]*

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

**ALBANY:** Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army has invaded. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

**REGAN:** Why are you telling me this now?

**GONERIL:** We must join together against the enemy.

**ALBANY:** Let's plan what to do with the officers. Then we can go into battle.

**EDMUND:** I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

**REGAN:** Are you coming with us, Goneril?

**GONERIL:** No.

**REGAN:** Please, come with us.

**GONERIL:** *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.

*[To Regan.]* I'll come soon.

**EDGAR:** [To Albany.] I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your trumpet so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

*[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]*

**EDMUND:** I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think ... Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to take control of the kingdom!

*[He exits.]*

### Act V, Scene ii

*[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]*

**EDGAR:** King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. This is a bitter pill to swallow. Quick, we must leave.

**GLOUCESTER:** I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

**EDGAR:** No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

**GLOUCESTER:** You're right.

**EDGAR:** Let's go.

*[They exit.]*

### Act V, Scene iii

*[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]*

**EDMUND:** Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.



**CORDELIA:** I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?  
sing like birds in a cage!

**EDMUND:** Take them away from me.

**KING LEAR:** I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will starve before they make us cry! Let us go.  
[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]

**EDMUND:** Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.  
[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]

**CAPTAIN:** I'll do what the message says, my lord.  
[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]

**ALBANY:** Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

**EDMUND:** Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

**ALBANY:** Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal. You shouldn't make these decisions.

**REGAN:** I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

**GONERIL:** Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

**REGAN:** [To Edmund.] Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their lord and ruler!

## Act IV Scenes VII &amp; Act V Scenes I-II Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the play.

cage - equal - invaded - officers - starve - suffered - trumpet - trust

- 1 I don't ..... him, he stole some money from our teacher.
- 2 My brother is learning to play the .....
- 3 Men and women earn ..... pay when they do the same job.
- 4 The ..... told the soldiers where to go.
- 5 If you don't get anything to eat you'll .....
- 6 The French army ..... Britain.
- 7 The old man ..... from a lung disease.
- 8 It's unkind to keep an animal in a .....

2 Find these phrases in the text and choose the correct answer.

- 1 When Edmund says, "Now it is time for me to start to take control of the kingdom" he means that .....
  - a) he wants to manage the situation
  - b) he is now the King
  - c) he will have power
- 2 When Edgar says, "This is a bitter pill to swallow." he means that .....
  - a) he needs to take some medicine
  - b) the situation is difficult, but he has to accept it
  - c) he needs to leave immediately

3 Arrange these events in order on the timeline.

- A)  King Lear loses the battle against the French.
- B)  Cordelia asks her father if he knows her.
- C)  Regan asks Edmund to help her take power from Goneril.
- D)  Edgar gives Albany a letter.
- E)  Regan tells Edmund that she doesn't trust her sister.
- F)  Edmund sends Lear and Cordelia to prison.

Are these statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

Lear finally realises that Cordelia is his daughter.

Lear tells Cordelia to drink poison with him.

Edmund tells both Regan and Goneril that he will help them.

Cordelia isn't worried about herself, only about her father.

Edmund tells Albany that nobody likes the King.

Albany says that Edmund is his equal.

Discuss these questions in pairs.

Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why?

What do you think will happen to the two sisters, Regan and Goneril?


تطبيق الأضواء  
ALADWAA

اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية  
من خلال خاصية محاكاة الامتحان.

تقل التطبيق الآن مجاناً من خلال

www.aladwaa.com

## Act IV Scenes vii &amp; Act V Scenes iii Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences using words from the word box.

cage - equal - invade - starve - suffered - took - control of trust

- 1 My grandmother kept a small yellow bird in a .....
- 2 If animals don't get enough to eat during the long winter, they might .....
- 3 In the past, many countries tried to ..... their neighbours, so they needed strong borders!
- 4 I see my sister as my ..... I am the same as her in many ways.
- 5 I always ..... my friends. They always do the right thing.
- 6 We all ..... after the walk over the mountains. My feet really hurt!
- 7 Who ..... the company after Mr Atef retired?

2 Put the events from Act IV, Scene vii in the correct order.

- a)  Edmund plans to use Albany to help him win the battle with the French.
- b)  Lear asks his daughter, Cordelia, to forgive him.
- c)  Regan wants Edmund to help her take power from Goneril.
- d)  Edgar shows Albany a letter.
- e)  Albany is not happy when Edmund sends Lear to prison.
- f)  Edmund helps to win the battle against King Lear and the French.
- g)  Albany tells Regan that the French army have invaded.

3 Read the quotations and answer the questions.

- 1 "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not."  
Why does Lear say this to Cordelia?
- 2 "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King."  
What does this tell us about Albany?
- 3 "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other."  
What does this tell us about Edmund?
- 4 "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you."  
What does this tell us about Regan?

Match to make collocations.

- 1. blow
- 2. feel
- 3. go
- 4. laugh
- 5. take

- a) at someone
- b) power from someone
- c) a trumpet
- d) sorry for someone
- e) into battle

Complete the sentences from the story with a word from Exercise 4, then answer the questions.

- 1. Let's plan what to do with the officers. Then we can go into \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. Who will Albany and his officers do this against?
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ your trumpet so I know what has happened.
- 4. What will Edgar know if Albany does this?
- 5. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for him.
- 6. Why does this worry Edmund?
- 7. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ at me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?
- 8. Why does Lear think she might do this?
- 9. Edmund, help me to \_\_\_\_\_ power from my evil sister.
- 10. What does Regan promise him if he does this?

Answer the questions.

- 1. Why do you think that Lear kneels before Cordelia?
- 2. Why does Regan not want Goneril to talk to Edmund?
- 3. What does *This* refer to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow"?
- 4. Why does Edmund say he sent Lear to prison?
- 5. What do Regan and Goneril both want Edmund to do?

Do you think Edmund will choose to help Goneril, Regan or both of them? Why?

Write a paragraph giving your reasons.

# Act V, Scene iii

## Key Vocabulary

come full circle	يعود لنقطة البداية	rat	فأر
crown	تاج	resign	يستقيل
equally	بصورة متعادلة/ بالتساوي	soldier	جندي
guide	مرشد	stretcher	نقالة
heavy heart	حزين	tear up	يهدم/ يمزق
laws	قوانين	title	لقب
liar	كاتب	treason	خيانة
murderer	قاتل	trick	يخدع
offstage	خارج المسرح	work for	يعمل لصالح

## Scene Text



[In the British camp, near Dover.]

**GONERIL:** My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

**ALBANY:** You can't do this, Edmund.

**EDMUND:** You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

**ALBANY:** Yes I can!

**REGAN:** [To Edmund.] Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

**ALBANY:** Listen to me. Edmund, I arrest you for treason.

[He points to Goneril.] And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!

**GONERIL:** But we could have more power, husband!

**REGAN:** I feel ill. My stomach hurts!

**GONERIL:** [To herself.] Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

**ALBANY:** You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

**EDMUND:** I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar. Come then, who wants to fight me?

**REGAN:** Help me. I feel worse.

**ALBANY:** Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

*[Regan is helped offstage.]*

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

*[Edgar enters.]*

Who are you?

**EDGAR:** I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

**EDMUND:** I'm here.

**EDGAR:** Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and your father. I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

*[They fight. Edmund falls.]*

**ALBANY:** Edmund is hurt, can you save him? I want to find out what he knows!

**GONERIL:** They tricked you into fighting, Edmund.

**ALBANY:** Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

*[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]*

*[To Goneril.]* No, don't try to tear up the letter! You know what you wrote.

**GONERIL:** Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land. The laws of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

**ALBANY:** You're an evil woman!

*[Goneril exits.]*

**EDMUND:** Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. *[To Edgar.]* But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

**EDGAR:** Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I am your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

**EDMUND:** I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle.

**ALBANY:** *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man. I promise you, I never hated you, or your father!

**EDGAR:** I know that, Albany.



**ALBANY:** Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

**EDGAR:** I've been helping him, my lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.  
[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood.]

**OFFICER:** Help! Oh, help me!

**EDGAR:** What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

**OFFICER:** It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

**ALBANY:** Who's dead? Tell us.

**OFFICER:** Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

[Kent enters.]

**EDGAR:** Here is Kent.

**KENT:** I have come to see the King. Is he here?

**ALBANY:** Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?  
[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers by soldiers.]

**KENT:** Oh, no! What's happened?

**ALBANY:** Cover their faces.

**EDMUND:** I must do one good thing before I die.

Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

**EDGAR:** Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

**EDMUND:** [To the Officer.] Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

**ALBANY:** Run! Quickly!

[The Officer exits.]

**EDMUND:** The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

**ALBANY:** Please let her be safe! Take him away.

[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]

**KING LEAR:** Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

**KENT:** Oh, your majesty!

**KING LEAR:** You're all murderers and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

*[He sees Kent.]* Aren't you Kent?

**KENT:** Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.

**KING LEAR:** You're welcome here.

**KENT:** My heart is heavy. Your eldest daughters have died too.

*[The Captain enters.]*

**CAPTAIN:** Edmund is dead, my lord.

**ALBANY:** He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign and give my power back to the old King, Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

**KING LEAR:** *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

*[King Lear dies.]*

**KENT:** Oh, my heart will break!

**EDGAR:** He's gone.

**KENT:** He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

**ALBANY:** Carry him out carefully.

*[To Kent and Edgar.]* My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

**EDGAR:** We must remember this sad day.

*[He puts on the crown.]*

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

*[They exit.]*

THE END

**Replace the words or phrases in bold with the words and phrases in the box.**

**a liar - laws - resign - stretchers - tear up - treason - tricked**

- Edmund says he will fight anyone who says he is **an untruthful person**.
- Albany tells Edmund that he will arrest him for **wanting to kill the King**.
- Goneril says that the **rules** of the land belong to her.
- The soldiers used **carrying beds** to move Goneril and Regan's bodies.
- Albany offers to **give up his job** and support the King.
- Goneril tells Edmund that he was **fooled** into fighting.
- Albany tells Goneril not to **destroy** the letter.
- King Lear says they are all **killers** because he thinks they are responsible for Cordelia's death.

**Find these two phrases in the text. What do they mean?**

- Edmund says that, 'The wheel has come full circle' because .....
  - a) he believes he started with no power, then had power and then lost it.
  - b) his brother was rich and then dressed as a poor person.
  - c) Edgar calls him a traitor and says he's happy to work for everyone.
- Kent says, 'My heart is heavy' because .....
  - a) the King recognises him.
  - b) King Lear is mad.
  - c) he is very sad.

**Answer the questions with the names of the characters in the box.**

**Albany - Edgar - Goneril - Kent - Regan**

- Who wants Edmund to fight?
- Who believes they are a brave soldier?
- Who does Albany call 'evil'?
- Who tells the Officer to hurry to stop the death of Lear and Cordelia?
- Who does Lear finally recognise?

**Answer these questions.**

- What does Albany say he will do to Edmund?
- Why does Regan feel ill?
- Whose blood is on the knife that the officer is carrying?
- How will the Captain know that Edmund has changed his mind?
- Why does Lear say everyone is a traitor and a murderer?
- What does Albany promise to do for his friends?
- Who rules the kingdom when Lear dies?

**5 Discuss these questions in groups.**

- 1 Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?
- 2 How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?
- 3 Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.
- 4 What is the moral lesson in King Lear in your opinion?

## Act V Scenes iii Exercises (WB)

**1 Match the words in the box with their definitions.**

murderer - a liar - laws - resign - stretcher - tear up - treason - trick

- 1 when you decide to stop working in a job you do this .....
- 2 something you can use to carry an ill person .....
- 3 a crime against your country .....
- 4 rules that everyone must follow in your country .....
- 5 someone who does not tell the truth .....
- 6 to fool someone into doing something .....
- 7 destroy paper and pull it into small pieces .....
- 8 someone who kills someone else with a motive .....

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct word from Exercise 1.**

- 1 They had to use a ..... to carry the injured footballer off the pitch.
- 2 The manager had to ..... when it was clear he was ..... and hadn't told the truth.
- 3 The job of the police is to make sure we obey the ..... of the country.
- 4 The spy was arrested on suspicion of .....
- 5 My brother is always trying to ..... me into doing his homework!
- 6 The author decided to ..... her first story because she wasn't happy with it.
- 7 That criminal is a .....; he killed the old woman and stole her jewellery.

**3 Match to make collocations.**

1. punish
2. trick
3. be guilty
4. prove
5. arrest
6. stop

- a) of doing something
- b) someone for something
- c) someone into doing something
- d) someone for something
- e) something to someone
- f) someone from doing something

Order the pictures in the order in which they happened in the story. Then write a short summary about what is happening in the picture.




---



---



---



---



---



---

In this scene, Edmund is telling his soldiers to take King Lear and Cordelia to prison. He has done this because he believes Goneril and Regan will become the queens. He thinks that he will become powerful if he helps them.

Read and decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false sentences.

Regan wants Edmund to fight Albany.

Goneril gave poison to Regan.

Edgar wants to fight Albany.

The two brothers feel bad about their past actions.

Edgar's father died happily.

Edmund saves Cordelia before he dies.

Goneril, Regan and Edmund go to a different city.

After King Lear dies, Albany becomes King.


Write your answers to these questions.

Who is your favourite character in the play? Explain why.

Who is your least favourite character in the play? Explain why.

Did you expect such a dramatic end to the play? Why/Why not?

What message do you think this final part of the play gives us?

What lessons does the play teach us?

قاموس بمعاني الكلمات الواردة في قطع النهم

actually	بالفعل/حقا	competition	منافسة	fires	حرائق
absorb	يمتص	complex	مركب	flow	ينساب
acupuncture	العلاج بالإبر	confidence	ثقة	friendship	صداقة
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	contestants	متنافسون	fuel	وقود
announce	ينبئ/ينادي	creature	مخلوق	gasoline	بنزين
appear	يظهر	cultivate	يزرع	giant	عملاق
applause	تهليل/تهنئ	cure	يعالج/علاج	graceful	رشيق
appropriate	ملائم	customs	عادات	hang /hung	يفنى
ashamed	خجلان	cute	ظريف	highway	طريق سريع
assembly	المعجم	decompose	يتحلل	homeless	مشردين
attention	انتباه	deer	غزال	idea	فكرة
attract	يجذب	dependent	اتكالى/معتمد على	ideal	مالي
attractive	جذاب	determine	يقرر	ignored	يتجاهل/يتغافل
avoiding	يتجنب/متجنب	determined	مصمم	imaginary	خيالي
awake	مدرك/واع/يقظان	disappointed	خائب الأمل/مكتئب	incident	حدث
backstage	وراء الستار	disappointment	خيبة الأمل	ingredients	مقايير
bead	عقد	disposal	إدارة	initial	استعلاى/الولى
behave	يتصرف	doorstep	درجة أمام الباب الخارجى	injury	صابة
beliefs	معتقدات	durable	مستديم	inseparable	: ينفصل
beneficial	مفيد	eager	ملهوف	instead	دلا
berry	توت	ecosystem	نظام بيلى	instructions	تعليمات
biofeedback	الارتجاع البيولوجى	elbow	كوع	internal	أخفى
bounty	منحة/محصول	eliminate	يزيل/يبعد	interpersonal	ن الأشخاص
breathe out	يزفر	emphasise	يؤكد/يشدد	involve	ضمن/يتورط
bulb	بصلة (النبات)	endure	يتحمل	jostling	انفعا بالعناكب
burn	يحرق	enthusiasm	حماس	judges	كلم
candidate	مرشح	erosion	تآكل	jungles	ال
chew	يمضغ	errand	مامورية	juted	ع
civilisations	حضارات	estimate	بخمن/يقدر القيمة	lake	رة
coins	عملات معدنية	explore	يستكشف	leap	.
comfortable	مريح	extinct	منقرض	livestock	بة
comfortably	بصورة مريحة	fabulous	خرافى	located	ا فى مكان معين
community	مجموعة تعيش معا	fertile	خصب	lug	ب
compere	منبج	finalists	صاعدين للدور النهائى	manage	فى/ينبج

arriver	كيفية/طريقة	previously	سابقاً	stage	مرجع/منصة
manufacturers	لمصنعي المصانع	principal	رئيس/مدير	starvation	جوع
mental	عقلي	process	عملية	sternly	بجد
mentioned	المذكور	produce	يُنتج	straight	مستقيم/مباشرة
month	شهر	provide	يُقدم	strategic	استراتيجي
most	أغلب	purpose	هدف	subjective	ذاتي/موضوعي
minister	وزير	push	يدفع	support	دعم
road	طريق/طريق	puzzled	مربك/متحير	sweating	يعرق/يسعد
mysterious	غامض/مبهم	qualifications	مؤهلات	takes place	يحدث
oodles	الإبر	raft	عوامة	threat	تهديد
highlight	ملهي ليلي	rainforests	الغابات	thud	صوت/صوت الخبط أو السقوط
numerous	مؤثر/متعدد	react	يتفاعل	thunderous	رعد
sun	راهبة	readily	بسهولة/طوعاً	thus	هكذا
at	جوز الهند	recess	فسحة	tongue-lashing	سلب اللسان
uments	مواد مغذية	reckon	يحسب/يخمن	tools	أدوات
pective	موضوعي	recreation	تسلية	tracks	بنتعب
asionally	من وقت إلى آخر	savior	المنقذ	trade	تجارة
opportunity	فرصة	scared	خائف	transportation	نقل
organs	الأعضاء البشرية	scream	صرخة/يصرخ	tropical	استوائي
look	نظرة	settle	يستقر	upset	يزعج/مزعج
verheard	يتنصت/يسمع	settlements	مستوطنات	vacuum	يكس
ersuade	يقنع	settlers	مستوطنون	variety	تنوع/الاختلاف
ests	حشرة	shallow	ضحل	veritable	حقيقي/أصلي
philosophers	الفلاسفة	shame	خجل/استحياء	vital	حيوي
photosynthesis	البناء الضوئي	shells	صدف	volcanoes	براكين
egment	صبغة	shift	وردية	wampum	عقد من الصدف
ayful	لعوب/ألعاب	shovels	معاول	wander	يتسكع/يتنقل
enty	وفرة/كثرة	shoving	الندافع	watchful	مستيقظ
lunged	ينفمض	sickness	مرض/اسقم	whimpering	شكا باكيناً
opulation	سكان	sources	مصادر	womb	رحم
ound	حظيرة	species	صنف/أصيلة		
pretzels	قطعة بسكويت مملحة	splash	يطرطش		

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١/٢٠٦٢٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٤/٢٠٢١/٢٦٢





استمتع بتجربة التعلم التفاعلي مع  
الأضواء واحصل مجاناً على جميع  
مزايا التطبيق.



هم يعمل البروفایل  
الخاص بك.



هم يتسریل تطبيق الأضواء  
أودخل على الموقع الإلكتروني  
www.aladwa.com.

أرسل كودك الشخصي الموجود  
على ظهر هذا الهاتف أو اسع  
معادة الماركود من خلال التطبيق.

## حصرنا لحاملی كتب الأضواء

### احرص على اقتناء:

- الأضواء في:
- اللغة العربية
  - التاريخ
  - الجغرافيا
  - التربية الإسلامية

### مجاناً مع الكتاب

- التقويم المستمر والمراجعة النهائية
- والامتحانات
- ملحق المهارات والقواعد العامة

### Inside the Book:

- Important and new vocabulary, ordered alphabetically with translation and parts of speech.
- Important definitions, translated and based on the Teacher's Guide.
- Notes on vocabulary, translated and illustrated by examples.
- Illustrated Listening and Reading texts with translation of new vocabulary.
- Tables of Derivatives, Synonyms and Antonyms.
- Comprehensive and clear explanation of Grammar with translation and examples, illustrated by Mind Maps.
- Exercises on each unit (Vocabulary - Grammar - Skills).
- Open General Exercises (Vocabulary & Grammar).
- General Tests on each unit.
- King Lear (Text & Exercises).



16766



L.E.100